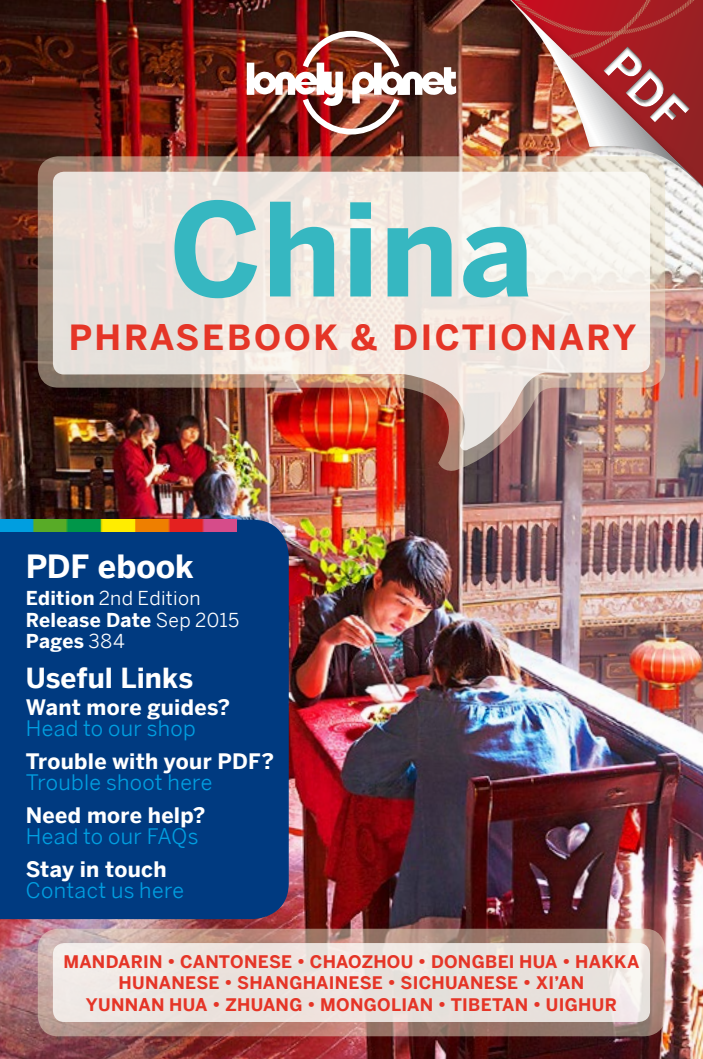

lonely planet
PDF
China
PHRASEBOOK & DICTIONARY
PDF ebook
Edition 2nd Edition
Release Date Sep 2015
Pages 384
Useful Links
Want more guides?
Head to our shop
Trouble with your PDF?
Trouble shoot here
Need more help?
Head to our FAQs
Stay in touch
Contact us here
MANDARIN • CANTONESE • CHAOZHOU • DONGBEI HUA • HAKKA
HUNANESE • SHANGHAINESE • SICHUANESE • XI'AN
YUNNAN HUA • ZHUANG • MONGOLIAN • TIBETAN • UIGHUR

Acknowledgments

Editors Francesca Coles, Laura Crawford, Branislava Vladisavljevic, Tracy Whitmey
Production Support Chris Love
Cartographer Wayne Murphy
Illustrations Yukiyoshi Kamimura
Cover Researcher Naomi Parker

Thanks

James Hardy, Angela Tinson

Published by Lonely Planet Publications Pty Ltd
ABN 36 005 607 983

2nd Edition – September 2015
ISBN 978 1 74321 434 3
Text © Lonely Planet 2015
Cover Image Diners at Yikeyin Lao Fangzi restaurant, Kūnmíng, Yunnan, China/Katie Garrod, AWL
Printed in Singapore 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contact lonelyplanet.com/contact

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except brief extracts for the purpose of review, without the written permission of the publisher. Lonely Planet and the Lonely Planet logo are trade marks of Lonely Planet and are registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and in other countries. Lonely Planet does not allow its name or logo to be appropriated by commercial establishments, such as retailers, restaurants or hotels. Please let us know of any misuses: www.lonelyplanet.com/ip

Although the authors and Lonely Planet try to make the information as accurate as possible, we accept no responsibility for any loss, injury or inconvenience sustained by anyone using this book.

contents

	Man	Can	Cha	Don	Hak	Hun	Sha	Sic	Xi'a	Yun	Zhu	Mon	Tib	Uig
tones	10	36	62	86	110	134	158	182	206	230	254	–	–	–
alphabet	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	278	310	336
introduction	11	37	63	87	111	135	159	183	207	231	255	279	311	337
pronunciation	12	38	64	88	112	136	160	184	208	232	256	280	312	338
language difficulties	13	39	65	89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281	313	339
time & dates	14	40	66	90	114	138	161	186	201	234	258	282	314	340
border crossing	15	40	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
tickets & luggage	15	41	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
transport	16	42	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	315	342
directions	18	43	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	315	342
accommodation	19	44	68	92	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
banking & communications	20	45	69	93	117	141	165	189	213	237	261	286	318	344
sightseeing	21	47	70	94	117	142	166	190	214	238	262	286	319	344
shopping	22	48	70	95	118	142	166	190	215	239	262	288	320	345

Man	Can	Cha	Don	Hak	Hun	Sha	Sic	Xi'a	Yun	Zhu	Mon	Tib	Uig
meeting people													
–	–	71	96	119	143	167	191	215	240	263	289	321	346
photography													
24	50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
making conversation													
24	50	72	96	120	144	168	192	216	241	264	290	322	347
feelings & opinions													
–	–	75	99	123	147	171	194	219	243	267	294	325	350
farewells													
–	–	75	100	123	147	171	195	219	244	268	295	326	351
eating out													
26	52	76	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	268	296	327	352
special diets & allergies													
27	54	79	104	127	151	175	199	223	248	272	300	329	355
emergencies													
28	54	80	104	128	152	175	200	224	248	272	303	329	356
health													
29	55	80	104	128	152	175	200	224	248	272	303	329	356
dictionary													
31	57	81	105	129	153	177	201	225	249	273	305	331	357

culture section 361

history timeline 362
food 366
festivals 370

index 374

China


Russia
Kazakhstan
Uzbekistan
Kyrgyzstan
Tajikistan
Afghanistan
Pakistan
India
Nepal
Bhutan
India
Myanmar
Laos
Thailand
Ürümqi
XINJIANG UIGHUR
GÄNSU
QINGHAI
Xining
TIBET
Lhasa
SICHUAN
Künming
YUNNAN
Mt Everest
Under administration of China
0 500 km
0 250 mi
Mandarin
Cantonese
Chaozhou
Dongbei Hua
Hakka
Hunanese
Shanghainese
Sichuanese
Xi'an
Yunnan Hua


Russia
Mongolia
HĒILÓNGJIĀNG
Hā'ěrbīn
JÍLÍN
Shěnyáng
LIÁONÍNG
INNER MONGOLIA
Hohhot
HĚBĚI
BĚIJĪNG
Bèijing
TIĀNJĪN
Tiānjīn
Sea of Japan (East Sea)
North Korea
South Korea
Japan
Bohai Bay
Yellow Sea
East China Sea
SHĀNXĪ
Tàiyuán
Shíjiāzhuāng
HĚBĚI
Yínchuān
NÍNGXIÀ HUÍ
Lánzhōu
Jǐ'nán
SHĀNDŌNG
GĀNSÙ
Xī'ān
Zhèngzhōu
HÉNÁN
SHAANXI (SHĀNXĪ)
JIĀNGSŪ
ĀNHUĪ
Héféi
Nánjīng
SHĀNGHĀI
Shànghǎi
Chéngdū
Wǔhàn
HÙBĚI
CHÓNGQÌNG
Hángzhōu
ZHÈJIĀNG
PACIFIC OCEAN
Nánchāng
Chángshā
HÚNÁN
JIĀNGXĪ
GUÌZHŌU
Guìyáng
Fúzhōu
FÚJIÀN
GUĀNGXĪ ZHUÀNG
GUĀNGDŌNG
Guǎngzhōu
Nánníng
Macau
Hong Kong
MACAU
HONG KONG
Vietnam
Gulf of Tonkin
Hǎikǒu
HĀINÁN
South China Sea
Zhuang
Mongolian
Tibetan
Uighur
Note: Language areas are approximate only. For more detail see the relevant introduction. The external borders of India have not been authenticated and may not be correct.

china – at a glance

China is home to a mind-boggling 1.3 billion people, who live in such contrasting environments as the fast-paced modern cities of Shànghǎi and Hong Kong, the mountains and forests of the southwest, and the rolling steppes of Inner Mongolia. So it's little wonder that China is also home to a cacophony of languages – more than 200, and counting – and to countless dialects and subdialects.

China's languages are traditionally classified into seven main groups: Gan, spoken in Jiāngxī and adjoining areas; Hakka, spoken across a number of areas but particularly in the south and southeast; Mandarin, spoken in the north, central and western provinces, but with speakers right across the country; Min, which has speakers in Fújiàn and Taiwan; Wu, spoken on the east coast; Xiang (also called Hunanese), mainly spoken in Húnán province; and Yue (also known as Cantonese), a language of the Guǎngdōng area. These are all Sinitic languages within the Sino-Tibetan language family and each one has numerous regional dialects. More than two-thirds of Chinese speakers, for example, speak various dialects of Mandarin. The linguistic variety doesn't stop there, however. Outside these major groups are the many non-Sinitic languages of China's ethnic minorities, including Mongolian and Uighur.

In the early 1900s Chinese authorities sought to reinforce national unity with the promotion of the Běijīng dialect of Mandarin as 'Modern Standard Chinese', mandating its use in education and for official purposes. This is now the official national language of China, as well as one of the official languages of the UN.

did you know?

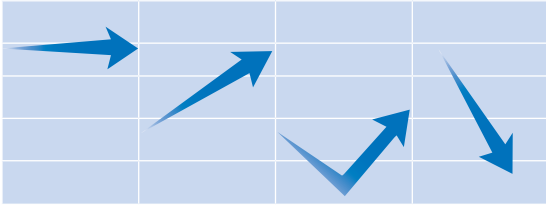
- The writing system common to China's main Sinitic languages (Mandarin and Cantonese) contains more than 50,000 different characters, and this number continues to grow. However, a mere 3000 or so are all you need to read a local newspaper or to make it past senior high school in China.
- Of the more than 80 languages and dialects 'discovered' around the world in recent decades, 30 are native to China. Linguists agree that there are many more yet to be formally documented. Meanwhile, Unesco has listed more than 100 Chinese languages and dialects as in danger of becoming extinct; some of these have fewer than 50 remaining speakers.
- In the lead-up to the 2008 Olympics, Běijīng officials established a committee to rid the city of 'Chinglish', the often perplexing and amusing results of locals' attempts to translate Chinese into English. The committee had replaced more than 4000 occurrences of the offending prose on signs with accepted 'standard' translations. Authorities could only do so much, though, and you can still find fine examples of Chinglish in private businesses throughout the city.

Mandarin

TONES	10
ABOUT MANDARIN	11
PRONUNCIATION	12
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	13
TIME & DATES	14
BORDER CROSSING	15
TICKETS & LUGGAGE	15
TRANSPORT	16
DIRECTIONS	18
ACCOMMODATION	19
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	20
SIGHTSEEING	21
SHOPPING	22
PHOTOGRAPHY	24
MAKING CONVERSATION	24
EATING OUT	26
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	27
EMERGENCIES	28
HEALTH	29
ENGLISH–MANDARIN DICTIONARY	31

tones

Mandarin is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Mandarin is commonly described as having four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, Pinyin (the official system of writing Chinese using the Roman alphabet) uses symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

The tonal quality plays a crucial role in distinguishing the meaning of words in Mandarin. For instance, the table below shows how the same combination of sounds, ma, can have five different meanings depending on the tone.

Tone	Example	Meaning
1st – high	mā	mother
2nd – high rising	má	hemp
3rd – low falling-rising	mǎ	horse
4th – high falling	mà	scold
neutral	ma	question marker

about Mandarin

It may surprise you to learn that the term 'Mandarin' is not really the name of a language. It actually refers to the largest of the various Chinese dialect groups, all members of the Sino-Tibetan language family. The language of this chapter is more accurately described as Modern Standard Chinese and is based on the Běijīng dialect. Whatever you choose to call it, Mandarin (pǔtōnghuà 普通话) has been a powerful force for linguistic and political unity in a country with countless dialects. It's the main language used in official contexts and, aside from its use in mainland China, Mandarin has official status in Taiwan (where it's called *Guóyǔ*) and Singapore (where it's known as *Huáyǔ*). The total number of its speakers worldwide is over 800 million, making Mandarin the most widely spoken 'language' in the world. However, there are two versions of the written language. Simplified Chinese is used in mainland China and has been adopted by Singapore, Malaysia and other Southeast Asian countries. Traditional Chinese is used in Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macau. In this chapter, we've used simplified Chinese characters, along with Pinyin (the official system of writing Chinese using the Roman alphabet) in the pronunciation guides.

mandarin



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Pinyin	**English sound**	**Pinyin**	**English sound**
a (an/ang)	f**a**ther (f**u**n, s**u**ng)	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	c	ha**ts**
ao	n**ow**	ch	**ch**eat
e (en/eng)	h**er** (brok**en**, D**eng**)	d	**d**og
ei	p**ay**	f	**f**at
i (in/ing)	p**ee**l (p**in**, p**ing**)	g	**g**o
i (after c/s/z)	g**ir**l	h	**h**at
i (after ch/sh/zh/r)	like the 'r' in Grrr!	j	**j**oke
ia	**ya**rd	k	**k**it
ian	**yen**	l	**l**ot
iang	**young**	m	**m**an
iao	**yow**l	n	**n**ot
ie	**ye**s	ng	ri**ng**
iong	**Jung**	p	**p**et
iu	**yo**lk	q	**ch**eat
o (ong)	m**o**re (J**ung**)	r	**r**ed
ou	**low**	s	**s**un
u (un)	t**oo**l (t**u**ne)	sh	**sh**ot
ua	**wah**!	t	**t**op
uai	**why**	w	**w**in
uan	**won**	x	**sh**ot
uan (after j/q/x/y)	**went**	y	**y**es
uang	s**wung**	z	soun**ds**
ue	**you wet**	zh	**g**em
ui	**way**		
uo	**war**		
ü (and u or un after j/q/x/y)	'new' pronounced with rounded lips		

In this chapter, the Pinyin is given in blue after each phrase.

For pronunciation of tones, see p10.

essentials		
Yes./No.	是。/不是。	Shì./Bùshì.
Please …	请……	Qǐng …
Hello./Goodbye.	你好。/再见。	Nǐhǎo./Zàijiàn.
Thank you.	谢谢你。	Xièxie nǐ.
Excuse me. (to get past)	借光。	Jièguāng.
Sorry.	对不起。	Duìbùqǐ.

language difficulties

Do you speak English?
你会说英文吗？ Nǐ huìshuō Yīngwén ma?

Do you understand?
你明白吗？ Nǐ míngbai ma?

I (don't) understand.
我(不)明白。 Wǒ (bù) míngbai.

Could you please …?	请你……?	Qǐng nǐ …?
repeat that	再说一遍	zài shuō yībiàn
speak more slowly	慢一点说	màn yīdiǎn shuō

numbers					
0	零	líng	**20**	二十	èrshí
1	一	yī	**30**	三十	sānshí
2	二/两	èr/liǎng	**40**	四十	sìshí
3	三	sān	**50**	五十	wǔshí
4	四	sì	**60**	六十	liùshí
5	五	wǔ	**70**	七十	qīshí
6	六	liù	**80**	八十	bāshí
7	七	qī	**90**	九十	jiǔshí
8	八	bā	**100**	一百	yībǎi
9	九	jiǔ	**1000**	一千	yīqiān
10	十	shí	**1,000,000**	一百万	yībǎiwàn

time & dates

What time is it?
现在几点钟？ Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng?

It's (10) o'clock.
（十）点钟。 (Shí)diǎn zhōng.

Quarter past (10).
（十）点十五分。 (Shí)diǎn shíwǔfēn.

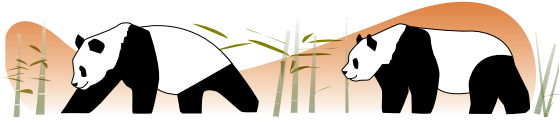
Half past (10).
（十）点三十分。 (Shí)diǎn sānshífēn.

Quarter to (11). (literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)
（十）点四十五分。 (Shí)diǎn sishíwǔfēn.

At what time (does it start)?
什么时候（开始）？ Shénme shíhòu (kāishǐ)?

(It starts) At 10.
十点钟（开始）。 Shídiǎn zhōng (kāishǐ).

It's (18 October).
（十月十八号）。 (Shíyuè shíbā hào).



yesterday	昨天	zuótiān
today	今天	jīntiān
tomorrow	明天	míngtiān
Monday	星期一	xīngqī yī
Tuesday	星期二	xīngqī èr
Wednesday	星期三	xīngqī sān
Thursday	星期四	xīngqī sì
Friday	星期五	xīngqī wǔ
Saturday	星期六	xīngqī liù
Sunday	星期天	xīngqī tiān

border crossing

I'm …	我是……来的。	Wǒ shì … láide.
in transit	过境	guòjìng
on business	出差	chūchāi
on holiday	度假	dùjià
I'm here for …	我要住……	Wǒ yào zhù …
(three) days	(三)天	(sān) tiān
(three) months	(三)个月	(sān)ge yuè
(three) weeks	(三)个星期	(sān)ge xīngqī

I'm going to (Běijīng).
我到(北京)去。 Wǒ dào (Běijīng) qù.

I'm staying at (the Pujiang Hotel).
我住 Wǒ zhù
(浦江宾馆)。 (Pǔjiāng Bīnguǎn).

I have nothing to declare.
我没有东西申报。 Wǒ méiyǒu dōngxi shēnbào.

I have something to declare.
我有东西申报。 Wǒ yǒu dōngxi shēnbào.

That's (not) mine.
那(不)是我的。 Nà (bù)shì wǒde.

tickets & luggage

Where do I buy a ticket?
哪里买票? Nǎli mǎi piào?

Do I need to book?
要先订票吗? Yào xiān dìngpiào ma?

A … ticket	一张到	Yīzhāng dào
to (Dàlián).	(大连)的……票。	(Dàlián) de … piào.
one-way	单程	dānchéng
return	双程	shuāngchéng

I'd like to … my ticket.	我想……票。	Wǒ xiǎng … piào.
cancel	退	tuì
change	改	gǎi
confirm	确定	quèdìng

I'd like a (non)smoking seat.
我想要(不)吸烟的座位。 Wǒ xiǎngyào (bù) xīyān de zuòwèi.

Is there a toilet/air-conditioning?
有厕所/空调吗？ Yǒu cèsuǒ/kōngtiáo ma?

How long does the trip take?
几个小时到站？ Jǐge xiǎoshí dàozhàn?

Is it a direct route?
是直达的吗？ Shì zhídáde ma?

My luggage has been …	我的行李被……了。	Wǒde xíngli bèi … le.
damaged	摔坏	shuāihuài
lost	丢	diū
stolen	偷走	tōuzǒu





transport

Where does flight (BJ8) arrive/depart?
(BJ8)飞机 (bee jay bā) fēijī
在哪里抵达/起飞？ zài nǎli dǐdá/qǐfēi?

Is this the … to (Hángzhōu)?	这个……到(杭州)去吗？	Zhège … dào (Hángzhōu) qù ma?
boat	船	chuán
bus	车	chē
plane	飞机	fēijī
train	火车	huǒchē

When's the …	……(车)	… (chē)
(bus)?	几点走?	jǐdiǎn zǒu?
first	首趟	Shǒutàng
last	末趟	Mòtàng
next	下一趟	Xià yītàng

How long will it be delayed?
推迟多久? Tuīchí duōjiǔ?

Can you tell me when we get to (Hángzhōu)?
到了(杭州) Dàole (Hángzhōu)
请叫我, 好吗? qǐng jiào wǒ, hǎoma?

That's my seat.
那是我的座。 Nà shì wǒde zùo.

I'd like a taxi …	我要订一辆出租车, ……	Wǒ yào dìng yīliàng chūzū chē, …
to depart	(早上9	(zǎoshàng jiǔ
at (9am)	点钟)出发	diǎn zhōng) chūfā
now	现在	xiànzài

How much is it to (the Great Wall)?
到(长城) Dào (Chángchéng)
多少钱? duōshǎo qián?

Please put the meter on.
请打表。 Qǐng dǎbiǎo.

Please take me to (this address).
请带我到 Qǐng dàiwǒ dào
(这个地址)。 (zhège dìzhǐ).

Please stop/wait here.
请在这儿停/等 Qǐng zài zhèr tíng/děng.

I'd like to hire a self-drive car.
我想租一辆轿车。 Wǒ xiǎng zū yīliàng jiàochē.

I'd like to hire a car with a driver.
我想包一辆车。 Wǒ xiǎng bāo yīliàng chē.

How much is it per day/week?
一天/星期多少钱? Yī tiān/xīngqī duōshǎo qián?

directions

Where's a/the …?	……在哪儿?	… zài nǎr?
bank	银行	Yínháng
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	Huàn wàibì de dìfang
post office	邮局	yóujú

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮我找它在地图上的位置。 Qǐng bāngwǒ zhǎo tā zài dìtú shàng de wèizhi.

What's the address?	什么地址?	Shénme dìzhǐ?
How far is it?	有多远?	Yǒu duō yuǎn?
How do I get there?	怎么走?	Zěnme zǒu?
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	Wǎng zuǒ/yòu guǎi.
It's straight ahead.	一直往前。	Yìzhí wǎngqián.

It's …	在……	Zài …
behind …	……的后面	… de hòumian
in front of …	……的前面	… de qiánmian
near …	……附近	… fùjìn
on the corner	拐角	guǎijiǎo
opposite …	……的对面	… de duìmiàn
there	那里	nàli





signs

入口/出口	rù kǒu/chū kǒu	**Entry/Exit**
派出所	pàichūsuǒ	**Police Station**
浴室	yù shì	**Bathroom**
男/女	nán/nǚ	**Male/Female**
不许吸烟	bùxǔ xīyān	**No Smoking**
不许吐痰	bùxǔ tǔtán	**No Spitting**

accommodation

Where's a guest house/hotel?
哪里有宾馆/酒店?
Nǎli yǒu bīnguǎn/jiǔdiàn?

Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?
你能推荐一个便宜/好的地方住吗?
Nǐ néng tuījiàn yīge piányi/hǎo de dìfang zhù ma?

I'd like to book a room.
我想订房间。
Wǒ xiǎng dìng fángjiān.

I have a reservation.
我有预订。
Wǒ yǒu yùdìng.

Do you have a … room?	有没有……房?	Yǒuméiyǒu … fáng?
double (suite)	套	tào
single	单人	dānrén
twin	双人	shuāngrén

How much is it per night/person?
每天/人多少钱?
Měi tiān/rén duōshǎo qián?

For (three) nights.
住(三)天。
Zhù (sān) tiān.

What time is checkout?
几点钟退房?
Jǐdiǎnzhōng tuìfáng?

Could I have my key, please?
能不能给我房间钥匙?
Néngbùnéng gěi wǒ fángjiān yàoshi?

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我能多拿一条(毛毯)吗?
Wǒ néng duōná yītiáo (máotǎn) ma?

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有毛病。
(Kōngtiáo) yǒu máobìng.

Do you have a/an …?	有没有……?	Yǒuméiyǒu …?
elevator	电梯	diàntī
safe	保险箱	bǎoxiǎn xiāng

Could I have	我想拿回	Wǒ xiǎng náhuí
my …, please?	我的……	wǒde …
deposit	押金	yājīn
passport	护照	hùzhào
valuables	贵重物品	guìzhòng wùpǐn

banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	……在哪儿？	… zài nǎr?
ATM	自动取款机	Zìdòng qǔkuǎnjī
public phone	公用电话	Gōngyòng diànhuà
I'd like to …	我要……	Wǒ yào …
change a travellers cheque	换旅行支票	huàn lǚxíng zhīpiào
change money	换钱	huànqián
withdraw money	取现金	qǔ xiànjīn
What's the …?	……是多少？	… shì duōshǎo?
charge for that	手续费	Shǒuxùfèi
exchange rate	兑换率	Duìhuànlǜ





Where's the local internet cafe?
附近有网吧吗？ Fùjìn yǒu wǎngbā ma?

How much is it per hour?
每小时多少钱？ Měi xiǎoshí duōshǎo qián?

I'd like to …	我想……	Wǒ xiǎng …
get internet access	上网	shàngwǎng
use a printer/scanner	打印/扫描	dǎyìn/sǎomiáo
I'd like a …	我想买一……	Wǒ xiáng mǎi yī …
mobile/cell phone	个手机	ge shǒujī
SIM card	张SIM卡	zhāng SIM kǎ

What are the rates?
电话费怎么算？ Diànhuàfèi zěnme suàn?

What's your phone number?
您的电话
号码是多少？ Nín de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo?

The number is …
号码是…… Hàomǎ shì …

I want to …	我想……	Wǒ xiǎng …
buy a phonecard	买一张电话卡	mǎi yīzhāng diànhuà kǎ
call collect	打对方付款的电话	dǎ duìfāng fùkuǎn de diànhuà
call (Singapore)	打电话到（新加坡）	dǎ diànhuà dào (Xīnjiāpō)

I want to buy a/an …	我想买一……	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī …
envelope	个信封	ge xìnfēng
stamp	张邮票	zhāng yóupiào

I want to send a fax.
我想发个传真。 Wǒ xiǎng fā ge chuánzhēn.

I want to send a parcel.
我想寄一个包裹。 Wǒ xiǎng jì yī gè bāoguǒ.

Please send it by airmail/surface mail to (Australia).
请寄航空信/平信到（澳大利亚）。 Qǐng jì hángkōng xìn/píngxìn dào (Àodàliyà).

sightseeing

What time does it open/close?
几点开门/关门？ Jǐdiǎn kāimén/guānmén?

What's the admission charge?
门票多少钱？ Ménpiào duōshǎo qián?

Is there a discount for students/children?
给学生/儿童打折扣吗？ Gěi xuésheng/értóng dǎzhékòu ma?

I'd like a …	我想买一……	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī …
catalogue	本画册	běn huàcè
guide	本指南书	běn zhǐnán shū
(local) map	张（本地）地图	zhāng (běndì) dìtú

I'd like to see …	我想看……	Wǒ xiǎng kàn …
What's that?	那是什么？	Nà shì shénme?
Can I take a photo?	我能拍吗？	Wǒ néng pāima?

When's the next tour?
下一个向导游是什么时候？ Xiàyīge xiàngdǎoyóu shì shénme shíhòu?

How long is the tour?
向导游要多长时间？ Xiàngdǎoyóu yào duōcháng shíjiān?

Is (the) … included?	包括……吗？	Bāokuò … ma?
accommodation	住宿	zhùsù
admission	门票钱	ménpiàoqián
food	饮食	yǐnshí
transport	交通	jiāotōng

sightseeing		
Army of Terracotta Warriors	西安兵马俑	Xī'ān Bīngmǎyǒng
Forbidden City	故宫	Gùgōng
Great Wall	长城	Chángchéng
Guìlín	桂林	Guìlín
Píngyáo (ancient walled city)	平遥	Píngyáo
Tài Shān	泰山	Tàishān
West Lake of Hángzhōu	杭州西湖	Hángzhōu Xīhú

shopping

Where's a …?	……在哪儿?	… zài nǎr?
camera shop	照相店	Zhàoxiàng diàn
market	市场	Shìchǎng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	Jìniànpǐn diàn

I'd like to buy …
我想买…… Wǒ xiǎng mǎi …

Can I look at it?
我能看看吗？ Wǒ néng kànkan ma?

Can I have it sent overseas?
你能寄到国外吗？ Nǐ néng jìdào guówài ma?

Can I have my (camera) repaired here?
你能修我的（照相机）吗？ Nǐ néngxiū wǒde (zhàoxiàngjī) ma?

It's faulty.
有毛病。 Yǒu máobìng.

How much is it?
多少钱？ Duōshǎo qián?

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来。 Qǐng bǎ jiàqián xiěxià lái.

That's too expensive.
太贵了。 Tàiguì le.

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你（五块）钱。 Gěinǐ (wǔkuài) qián.

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单上有问题。 Zhàngdān shàng yǒu wèntí.





Do you accept …?	你们收……吗？	Nǐmen shōu … ma?
credit cards	信用卡	xìnyòng kǎ
debit cards	借记卡	jièjìkǎ
travellers cheques	旅行支票	lǚxíng zhīpiào
I'd like …, please.	可以……吗？	Kěyǐ … ma?
a bag	一个袋子	yīge dàizi
a receipt	发票	fāpiāo
a refund	退钱	tuì qián
my change	找零钱	zhǎo língqián
less	少	shǎo
enough	足够	zúgòu
more	多	duō

photography

Can you burn a CD from my memory card?
能不能帮我从内存卡刻录到CD光盘?
Néng bù néng bāng wǒ cóng nèi cún kǎ ke lu dào CD guāng pán?

Can you develop this film?
能洗这个胶卷吗?
Néng xǐ zhège jiāojuǎn ma?

I need a memory card for this camera.
我需要一张用于这部相机的内存卡。
Wǒ xūyào yī zhāng yòng yú zhè bù xiāng jī de nèi cún kǎ.

I want to buy a film for this camera.
我想买这个机子的胶卷。
Wǒ xiǎng mǎi zhège jīzi de jiāojuǎn.

When will it be ready?
什么时候来取?
Shénme shíhòu lái qǔ?

making conversation

Hello. (general)	你好。	Nǐhǎo.
Hello. (Běijīng)	您好。	Nínhǎo.
Goodbye.	再见。	Zàijiàn.
Good night.	晚安。	Wǎn'ān.
Mr	先生	xiānsheng
Mrs	女士	nǚshì
Ms/Miss	小姐	xiǎojiě
How are you? (general)	你好吗?	Nǐhǎo ma?
How are you? (Běijīng)	您好吗?	Nínhǎo ma?
Fine.	好。	Hǎo.
And you?	你呢?	Nǐ ne?
What's your name?	你叫什么名字?	Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
My name is …	我叫……	Wǒ jiào …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	Xìnghuì.

This is my …	这是我的……	Zhè shì wǒde …
brother	兄弟	xiōngdì
daughter	女儿	nǚ'ér
father	父亲	fùqīn
friend	朋友	péngyou
husband	丈夫	zhàngfu
mother	母亲	mǔqīn
partner (intimate)	对象	duìxiàng
sister	姐妹	jiěmèi
son	儿子	érzi
wife	太太	tàitai



Here's my (address).
给你我的(地址)。 Gěi nǐ wǒde (dìzhǐ).

What's your (email)?
你的(网址)是什么？ Nǐde (wǎngzhǐ) shìshénme?

Where are you from?
你从哪儿来？ Nǐ cóngnǎr lái?

I'm from …	我从……来。	Wǒ cóng … lái.
Australia	澳大利亚	Àodàlìyà
Canada	加拿大	Jiānádà
England	英国	Yīngguó
New Zealand	新西兰	Xīnxīlán
the USA	美国	Měiguó
What's your occupation?	你做什么工作？	Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò?
I'm a/an …	我当……	Wǒ dāng …
businessperson	商人	shāngrén
office worker	白领	báilǐng
tradesperson	工匠	gōngjiàng

Do you like …?	你喜欢……吗？	Nǐ xǐhuān … ma?
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢……	Wǒ (bù) xǐhuān …
art	艺术	yìshù
films	看电影	kàn diànyǐng
music	听音乐	tīngyīnyuè
reading	看书	kànshū
sport	体育	tǐyù

eating out

Can you	你可以推荐	Nǐ kěyǐ tuījiàn
recommend a …?	一个……吗？	yīge … ma?
bar	酒吧	jiǔbā
dish	盘	pán
restaurant	饭馆	fànguǎn
I'd like a/the …	我要……	Wǒ yào …
bill	帐单	zhàngdān
drink list	酒水单	jiǔshuǐ dān
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	yīge dìfāng tèsè cài
menu	菜单	càidān
(non)smoking table	(不)吸烟的桌子	(bù)xīyān de zhuōzi
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	yīzhāng (wǔge rén de) zhuōzi
I'll have that.	来一个吧。	Lái yīge ba.
breakfast	早饭	zǎofàn
lunch	午饭	wǔfàn
dinner	晚饭	wǎnfàn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jiǔ
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yǐnliào
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡……	(yībēi) kāfēi …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶……	(yībēi) chá …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	jiā (niúnǎi)
without (sugar)	不加(糖)	bù jiā (táng)

(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chéng) zhī
soft drink	汽水	qìshuǐ

I'll have boiled/still mineral water.
我来一个开/矿泉水。 Wǒ lái yīge kāi/kuàngquán shuǐ.

What are you drinking?
喝什么？ Hē shénme?

I'll buy you one.
我请客。 Wǒ qǐng kè.

What would you like to drink?
你想喝什么？ Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?

a … of beer	一……啤酒	yī … píjiǔ
glass	杯	bēi
large bottle	大瓶	dàpíng
small bottle	小瓶	xiǎopíng
a shot of (whisky)	一樽(威士忌)	yīzūn (wēishìjì)
a bottle/glass of … wine	一瓶/一杯…… 葡萄酒	yīpíng/yībēi … pútáo jiǔ
red	红	hóng
white	白	bái





special diets & allergies

Do you have …	有没有……	Yǒuméiyǒu …
food?	食品？	shípǐn?
halal	清真	qīngzhēn
kosher	犹太	yóutài
vegetarian	素食	sùshí

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能不能做一个不放……的菜？ Néngbùnéng zuòyīge bùfàng … de cài?

I'm allergic to …	我对……过敏。	Wǒ duì … guòmǐn.
dairy produce	奶制品	nǎizhìpǐn
eggs	鸡蛋	jīdàn
meat	肉	ròu
nuts	果仁	guǒrén
seafood	海鲜	hǎixiān



emergencies

Help!	救命！	Jiùmìng!
Stop!	站住！	Zhànzhù!
Go away!	走开！	Zǒukāi!
Thief!	小偷！	Xiǎotōu!
Fire!	着火啦！	Zháohuǒ la!
Watch out!	小心！	Xiǎoxīn!

Call a doctor!
请叫医生来！ Qǐng jiào yīshēng lái!

Call an ambulance!
请叫一辆 Qǐng jiào yīliàng
急救车！ jíjiù chē!

Could you please help?
你能帮我吗？ Nǐ néng bāngwǒ ma?

Can I use your phone?
我能借用 Wǒ néng jièyòng
你的电话吗？ nǐde diànhuà ma?

I'm lost.
我迷路了。 Wǒ mílù le.

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪儿？ Cèsuǒ zài nǎr?

Where's the police station?
派出所 Pàichūsuǒ
在哪里? zài nǎli?

I want to contact my embassy/consulate.
我要联系我的 Wǒ yào liánxì wǒde
大使馆/领事馆。 dàshǐguǎn/lǐngshìguǎn.

I've been …	我被……了。	Wǒ bèi … le.
assaulted	侵犯	qīnfàn
raped	强奸	qiángjiān
robbed	抢劫	qiǎngjié
I've lost my …	我的……丢了。	Wǒde … diū le.
My … was/were stolen.	我的……被偷了。	Wǒde … bèitōu le.
bags	行李	xíngli
credit card	信用卡	xìnyòng kǎ
money	钱	qián
passport	护照	hùzhào
travellers cheques	旅行支票	lǚxíng zhīpiào

health

Where's the nearest …?	最近的…… 在哪儿?	Zuìjìnde … zài nǎr?
dentist	牙医	yáyī
doctor	医生	yīshēng
hospital	医院	yīyuàn
pharmacist	药房	yàofáng

I need a doctor (who speaks English).
我要看(会说 Wǒ yào kàn (huìshuō
英文的)医生。 Yīngwénde) yīshēng.

Could I see a female doctor?
最好要看一位 Zuìhǎo yàokàn yīwèi
女医生。 nǚyīshēng.

I've run out of my medication.
我用完了我的 Wǒ yòngwánle wǒde
处方药。 chǔfāngyào.

It hurts here.	这里痛。	Zhèlǐ tòng.
I have (a) …	我有……	Wǒ yǒu …
asthma	哮喘	xiàochuǎn
constipation	便秘	biànmì
diarrhoea	拉稀	lāxī
fever	发烧	fāshāo
heart condition	心脏病	xīnzàngbìng
nausea	反胃	fǎnwèi
I'm allergic to …	我对……过敏。	Wǒ duì … guòmǐn.
antibiotics	抗菌素	kàngjūnsù
anti-inflammatories	抗炎药	kàngyányào
aspirin	阿斯匹林	āsīpǐlín
bees	蜜蜂	mìfēng
codeine	可待因	kědàiyīn

english–mandarin dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), adv (adverb), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident 事故 shìgù
accommodation 住宿 zhùsù
adaptor 双边插座 shuāngbiān chāzuò
address n 地址 dìzhǐ
after 以后 yǐhòu
air-conditioned 有空调的 yǒu kōngtiáo de
airplane 飞机 fēijī
airport 飞机场 fēijī chǎng
alcohol 酒精 jiǔjīng
all 所有的 suǒyǒu de
allergic 过敏 guòmǐn
ambulance 急救车 jíjiù chē
and 和 hé
ankle 脚踝 jiǎohuái
antibiotics 抗菌素 kàngjūnsù
arm 胳膊 gēbo
ATM 自动取款机 zìdòng qǔkuǎnjī

B

baby n 小娃娃 xiǎo wáwa
back (body) 背 bèi
backpack 背包 bèibāo
bad 坏 huài
bag 包 bāo
baggage claim 行李领取处 xíngli lǐngqǔ chù
bank (money) 银行 yínháng
bar 酒吧 jiǔbā
bathroom 浴室 yù shì
battery 电池 diànchí
beautiful 美丽 měilì
bed 床 chuáng
beer 啤酒 píjiǔ
before 以前 yǐqián
behind 背面 bèimiàn
bicycle n 自行车 zìxíngchē
big 大 dà
bill (restaurant etc) n 帐单 zhàngdān
blanket 毛毯 máotǎn
blood group 血型 xuèxíng
boat 船 chuán
book (make a booking) v 定 dìng
bottle 瓶子 píngzi
boy 男孩子 nán háizi
brakes 车闸 chēzhá
breakfast 早饭 zǎofàn
broken 坏了 huài le
bus (city) 大巴 dàbā
bus (intercity) 长途车 chángtú chē
business n 生意 shēngyì
buy v 买 mǎi

C

camera 照相机 zhàoxiàngjī
cancel 取消 qǔxiāo
car 轿车 jiàochē
cash n 现金 xiànjīn
cash (a cheque) v 兑现 duìxiàn
cell phone 手机 shǒujī
centre 中心 zhōngxīn
change (money) v 换钱 huànqián
cheap 实惠 shíhuì
check (bill) n 账单 zhàngdān
check-in (desk) 登记台 dēngjì tái
chest (body) 胸 xiōng
child 孩子 háizi
cigarette 香烟 xiāngyān
city 城市 chéngshì
clean a 干净 gānjìng
closed 关门 guānmén
cold a 冷 lěng
collect call 对方付款电话 duìfāng fùkuǎndiànhuà
come 来 lái
computer 电脑 diànnǎo
condom 避孕套 biyùntào
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yǐnxíng yǎnjìng
cook v 炒菜 chǎocài
cost (price) n 价格 jiàgé
credit card 信用卡 xìnyòng kǎ
currency exchange 货币兑换 huòbì duìhuàn
customs (immigration) 海关 hǎiguān

D

dangerous 危险 wēixiǎn
date (day) n 日期 rìqī

day 白天 báitiān
delay 往后退 wǎnghòutuì
dentist 牙医 yáyī
depart (leave) 离开 líkāi
diaper 尿裤 niàokù
dinner 晚饭 wǎnfàn
direct 直接 zhíjiē
dirty 脏 zāng
disabled 残疾 cánjí
discount 折扣 zhékòu
doctor 医生 yīshēng
double bed 双人床 shuāngrén chuáng
double room 双人间 shuāngrén jiān
drink (alcoholic) n 酒 jiǔ
drink (nonalcoholic) n 饮料 yǐnliào
drive v 开车 kāichē
driving licence 驾照 jiàzhào
drug (illicit) 毒品 dúpǐn

E

ear 耳朵 ěrduo
east 东方 dōngfāng
eat 吃饭 chīfàn
economy class 经济舱 jīngjì cāng
electricity 电 diàn
elevator 电梯 diàntī
email n 电子邮件 diànzǐ yóujiàn
embassy 大使馆 dàshǐguǎn
emergency 出事 chūshì
English 英文 Yīngwén
evening 晚上 wǎnshàng
exit n 出口 chūkǒu
expensive 贵 guì
eye(s) 眼睛 yǎnjīng

F

far 远 yuǎn
fast 快 kuài
father 父亲 fùqīn
film (for camera) 胶卷 jiāojuǎn
finger 指头 zhǐtou
first-aid kit 急救装备 jíjiù zhuāngbèi
first class 头等 tóuděng
fish n 鱼 yú
food n 食品 shípǐn
foot 脚 jiǎo
free (no charge) 免费 miǎnfèi
friend 朋友 péngyou
fruit 水果 shuǐguǒ
full 满 mǎn

G

gift 礼物 lǐwù
girl 女孩子 nǚháizi
glass (drinking) 玻璃杯 bōli bēi
glasses (spectacles) 眼镜 yǎnjing
go 去 qù
good 好 hǎo
guide (person) 导游 dǎoyóu

H

half 半个 bànge
hand 手 shǒu
happy 快乐 kuàilè
have 有 yǒu
he 他 tā
head 头 tóu
heart 心脏 xīnzàng
heavy 重 zhòng
help 帮助 bāngzhù
here 这里 zhèlǐ
high 高 gāo
highway 高速公路 gāosù gōnglù
hike v 步行 bùxíng
holiday 度假 dùjià
homosexual 同性恋 tóngxìng liàn
hospital 医院 yīyuàn
hot 热 rè
hotel 酒店 jiǔdiàn
hungry (to be) 饿 è
husband 丈夫 zhàngfu

I

I 我 wǒ
identification card (ID) 身份证 shēnfèn zhèng
ill 有病 yǒubìng
important 重要 zhòngyào
injury 伤害 shānghài
insurance 保险 bǎoxiǎn
internet 因特网 yīntèwǎng
interpreter 翻译 fānyì

J

jewellery 首饰 shǒushì
job 工作 gōngzuò

K

key 钥匙 yàoshi
kilogram 公斤 gōngjīn
kitchen 厨房 chúfáng
knife 刀 dāo

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 xǐyīdiàn
lawyer 律师 lǜshī
left (direction) 左边 zuǒbian
leg 腿 tuǐ
lesbian 女同性恋 nǚ tóngxìng liàn
less 少 shǎo
letter (mail) 信 xìn
light 光 guāng
like adv 同……一样 tóng … yīyàng
lock n 锁 suǒ
lock v 锁上 suǒshàng
long a 长 cháng
lost (one's way) 迷路 mílù
love v 爱 ài
luggage 行李 xíngli
lunch 午饭 wǔfan

M

mail n 来信 láixìn
man 男人 nánrén
map 地图 dìtú
market 市场 shìchǎng
matches (for lighting) 火柴 huǒchái
meat 肉 ròu
medicine (medication) 医药 yīyào
message 信息 xìnxī
milk 牛奶 niúnǎi
minute 分钟 fēnzhōng
mobile phone 手机 shǒujī
money 钱 qián
month 月 yuè
morning (after breakfast) 早上 zǎoshang
morning (before lunch) 上午 shàngwǔ
mother 母亲 mǔqin
motorcycle 摩托车 mótuō chē
mouth 口 kǒu

N

name n 名字 míngzi
near 近 jìn
new 新 xīn
newspaper 报纸 bàozhǐ
night 晚上 wǎnshang
no 不对 bùduì
nonsmoking 不吸烟 bù xīyān
north 北边 běibiān
nose 鼻子 bízi
now 现在 xiànzài
number 号码 hàomǎ

O

old 老 lǎo
one-way (ticket) 单程（票） dānchéng (piào)
open a 开放 kāifàng
outside 外面 wàimian

P

passport 护照 hùzhào
pay v 付 fù
pharmacy 西药房 xīyào fáng
phone card 电话卡 diànhuà kǎ
photo 照片 zhàopiàn/zhàopiānr
police 警察局 jǐngchájú
postcard 明信片 míngxìnpiàn
price 价格 jiàgé

Q

quiet 安静 ānjing

R

rain n 下雨 xiàyǔ
razor 剃刀 tìdāo
receipt 发票 fāpiào
refund n 退钱 tuì qián
registered (mail) 挂号 guàhào
rent 租赁 zūlìn
repair 修理 xiūlǐ
reservation (booking) 预定 yùdìng
restaurant 饭馆 fànguǎn
return (come back) 回来 huílái
return (ticket) 双程（票） shuāngchéng (piào)
right (direction) 右边 yòubiān
road 道路 dàolù
room 房间 fángjiān

S

safe 安全 ānquán
sanitary napkin 卫生巾 wèishēngjīn
seat (hard; on train) 硬座 yìngzuò
seat (place) 座位 zuòwèi

seat (soft; on train) 软座 ruǎnzuò
send 寄送 jìsòng
sex 男女事 nánnǚ shì
shampoo 洗发膏 xǐfàgāo
share 公用 gōngyòng
she 她 tā
sheet (bed) 床单 chuángdān
shirt 衬衫 chènshān
shoes 鞋子 xiézi
shop n 店 diàn
short (height) 矮 ǎi
short (length) 短 duǎn
shower 浴室 yùshì
single room 单人间 dānrén jiān
skin 皮肤 pífū
skirt 裙子 qúnzi
sleep 睡觉 shuìjiào
slowly 慢慢地 mànmande
small 小 xiǎo
soap 肥皂 féizào
some 一些 yīxiē
soon 快 kuài
south 南 nán
souvenir shop 纪念品店 jìniànpǐn diàn
stamp 邮票 yóupiào
stand-by ticket 站台票 zhàntái piào
station 车站 chēzhàn
stomach 肚子 dùzi
stop (bus, tram) n 停 tíng
stop v 停止 tíngzhǐ
street 街头 jiētóu
student 学生 xuéshēng
sun 太阳 tàiyáng
sunblock 防晒油 fángshài yóu
swim 游泳 yóuyǒng

T

tampon 棉条 miántiáo
teeth 牙齿 yáchǐ
telephone n 电话 diànhuà
temperature (weather) 温度 wēndù
that (one) 那个 nàge
they 他们 tāmen
thirsty (to be) 渴 kě
this (one) 这个 zhège
throat 脖子 bózi
ticket 票 piào
time 时间 shíjiān
tired 累 lèi
tissues 纸巾 zhǐjīn
toilet 厕所 cèsuǒ
tomorrow 明天 míngtiān
tonight 今天晚上 jīntiān wǎnshàng
toothbrush 牙刷 yáshuā
toothpaste 牙膏 yágāo
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 shǒudiàntǒng
tour 向导游 xiàngdǎo yóu
tourist office 旅行店 lǚxíng diàn
towel 毛巾 máojīn
train 火车 huǒchē
translate 翻译 fānyì
travel agency 旅行社 lǚxíng shè
travellers cheque(s) 旅行支票 lǚxíng zhīpiào
trousers 休闲裤 xiūxián kù
twin room 双人房 shuāngrén fáng

U

underwear 内衣 nèiyī
urgent 要紧 yàojǐn

V

vacant 有空 yǒukòng
vegetable 蔬菜 shūcài
vegetarian 吃素的 chīsù de
visa 签证 qiānzhèng

W

walk 走路 zǒulù
wallet 钱包 qiánbāo
wash 洗 xǐ
watch n 手表 shǒubiǎo
water 水 shuǐ
we 我们 wǒmen
weekend 周末 zhōumò
west 西 xī
wheelchair 轮椅 lúnyǐ
when 什么时候 shénme shíhòu
where 哪里 nǎli
who 谁 shéi
why 为什么 wèi shénme
wife 老婆 lǎopo
with 跟 gēn
without 以外 yǐwài
woman 女人 nǚrén

Y

yes 是 shì
yesterday 昨天 zuótiān
you sg inf 你 nǐ
you sg pol 您 nín
you pl 你们 nǐmen

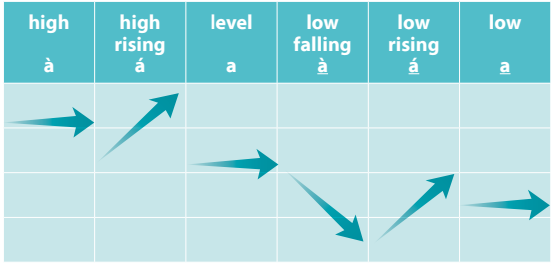
Cantonese

TONES	36
ABOUT CANTONESE	37
PRONUNCIATION	38
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	39
TIME & DATES	40
BORDER CROSSING	40
TICKETS & LUGGAGE	41
TRANSPORT	42
DIRECTIONS	43
ACCOMMODATION	44
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	45
SIGHTSEEING	47
SHOPPING	48
PHOTOGRAPHY	49
MAKING CONVERSATION	50
EATING OUT	52
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	54
EMERGENCIES	54
HEALTH	55
ENGLISH–CANTONESE DICTIONARY	57

tones

Cantonese is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Tones in Cantonese fall on vowels and on n. The same combination of sounds pronounced with different tones can have a very different meaning, eg gwa̱t 掘 means 'dig up' and gwàt 骨 means 'bones'.

Cantonese has between six and 10 tones, depending on which definition you use. In our pronunciation guide they've been simplified to five tones, indicated with accents or underscores on the symbol letters (as shown in the tables below for the vowel 'a'), in addition to a sixth, level tone. Higher tones involve tightening the vocal cords to get a higher sounding pitch, while lower tones are made by relaxing the vocal cords to get a lower pitch. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.



Symbol	Tone	Example	
à	high	睇	tái
á	high rising	嬲	nàu
a	level	角	gawk
a̱	low falling	人	yàn
á	low rising	被	páy
a̱	low	問	ma̱n

about Cantonese

Cantonese is the official language of Hong Kong and Macau, and in mainland China it's the local language of the southeast, including most of the province of Guǎngdōng. Standard Cantonese is based on the language spoken in the city of Guǎngzhōu (Canton), and it's colloquially known as gwáwng·dùng·wáa 廣東話 (Guǎngdōng speech), while its more formal name is yue yu 粵语 (Yue language). Cantonese has over 70 million speakers, as it's also spoken among minority groups in Southeast Asia, most notably in Singapore, and by emigrant communities worldwide. For over 50 years, official Chinese policy has encouraged the use of Mandarin as the national language of China. However, Cantonese speakers have persisted in using their native language, a key part of their pride and cultural identity. Today's Cantonese can trace its history back over 2000 years to the Qin Dynasty (221–206 BC). Both Cantonese and Mandarin belong to the Sino-Tibetan language family and have developed from the same tongue, but Cantonese has preserved certain intricate elements of Middle Chinese (AD 581–907), which Mandarin has lost. Various systems have been developed to show Cantonese sounds in Roman script. In this chapter, we've used a slightly simplified version of the widely accepted Yale system.

cantonese



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	r**u**n	b	**b**ed
aa	f**a**ther	ch	**ch**eat
aai	**ai**sle (long)	d	**d**og
aau	n**ow** (long)	f	**f**at
ai	**ai**sle (short)	g	**g**o
au	n**ow** (short)	h	**h**at
aw	l**aw**	j	**j**oke
ay	s**ay**	k	**k**it
e	b**e**t	l	**l**ot
eu	n**ur**se	m	**m**an
eui	eu followed by i	n	**n**ot
ew	i pronounced with rounded lips	ng	ri**ng**
i	s**ee**	p	**p**et
iu	**you**th	s	**s**un
o	n**o**te	t	**t**op
oy	**toy**	w	**w**in
u	p**u**t	y	**y**es
ui	**wi**th		

In this chapter, the Cantonese pronunciation is given in turquoise after each phrase.

The sound ng (found in English at the end or in the middle of words, eg 'ringing') can appear at the start of words in Cantonese or as a word on its own. Note that words ending with the sounds p, t and k must be clipped, eg in English the p sound is much shorter in 'tip' than in 'pit'. For pronunciation of tones, see p36.

Syllables within a word are separated by a dot, for example:
多謝。 dàw·je

essentials		
Yes./No.	係。/唔係。	hai/ńg·hai
Please …	唔該……	ńg·gòy …
Hello./Goodbye.	哈佬。/再見。	hàa·ló/joy·gin
Thank you (very much).	多謝(你)。	dàw·je (láy)
You're welcome.	唔駛客氣。	ńg·sái haak·hay
Excuse me. (to get past)	唔該借借。	ńg·gòy je·je
Sorry.	對唔住。	deui·ńg·jew

language difficulties

Do you speak English?
你識唔識講英文啊？ láy sìk·ńg·sìk gáwng yìng·mán aa

Do you understand?
你明唔明啊？ láy mìng·ńg·mìng aa

I (don't) understand.
我(唔)明白。 ngáw (ńg) mìng·baak

Could you please …?	唔該你……?	ng·gòy láy …
repeat that	再講一次	joy gáwng yàt chi
speak more slowly	講慢啲	gáwng maan dì

numbers					
0	零	lìng	**20**	二十	yi·sap
1	一	yàt	**30**	三十	sàam·sap
2	二	yi	**40**	四十	say·sap
3	三	sàam	**50**	五十	ńg·sap
4	四	say	**60**	六十	luk·sap
5	五	ńg	**70**	七十	chàt·sap
6	六	luk	**80**	八十	baat·sap
7	七	chàt	**90**	九十	gáu·sap
8	八	baat	**100**	一百	yàt·baak
9	九	gáu	**1000**	一千	yàt·chìn
10	十	sap	**1,000,000**	一百萬	yàt·baak·maan

time & dates

What time is it?	而家幾點鐘？	yi·gàa gáy·dím·jùng
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)點鐘。	(sa̱p)·dím·jùng
Quarter past (10).	(十)點三。	(sa̱p)·dím sàam
Half past (10).	(十)點半。	(sa̱p)·dím bun
Quarter to (11).	(十)點九。	(sa̱p)·dím gáu
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)		
At what time?	幾時開始?	gáy·sì hòy·chí
At …	夜晚……	ye̱·máan …
It's (18 October).	(十月十八)號。	(sa̱p·ye̱wt sa̱p·baat) ho̱
yesterday	寢日	kàm·ya̱t
today	今日	gàm·ya̱t
tomorrow	听日	tìng·ya̱t
Monday	星期一	sìng·kày·yàt
Tuesday	星期二	sìng·kày·yi̱
Wednesday	星期三	sìng·kày·sàam
Thursday	星期四	sìng·kày·say
Friday	星期五	sìng·kày·ńg
Saturday	星期六	sìng·kày·lu̱k
Sunday	星期日	sìng·kày·ya̱t



border crossing

I'm …	我係……	ngáw ha̱i …
in transit	過境	gaw·gíng
on business	出差嚟嘅	chèut·chàai lái ge
on holiday	嚟度假嘅	lái do̱·gaa ge
I'm here for …	我要住……	ngáw yiu je̱w …
(two) days	(二)天	(yi̱) ya̱t
(four) weeks	(四)個星期	(say) gaw sìng·kày
(three) months	(三)個月	(sàam) gaw ye̱wt

I'm going to (Shēnzhèn).
我要去(深圳)。 ngáw yiu heui (sàm·jan)

I'm staying at (the China Hotel).
我住(中國大酒店)。 ngáw jew (jùng·gawk dàai jáu·dim)

I have nothing to declare.
我冇嘢報。 ngáw móu yéh bo

I have something to declare.
我有嘢報。 ngáw yáu yéh bo

That's (not) mine.
(唔)係我嘅。 (ňg) hai ngáw ge

tickets & luggage

Where do I buy a ticket?
去邊度買飛？ heui bìn·do máai fày

Do I need to book?
駛唔駛定飛先呀？ sái·ňg·sái dehng·fày sìn a

A … ticket to (Panyu).	一張去(番禺)嘅……飛。	yàt jèung heui (pùn·yéw) ge … fày
one-way	單程	dàan·chìng
return	雙程	sèung·chìng
I'd like to … my ticket, please.	唔該，我想……飛。	ňg·gòy ngáw séung … fày
cancel	退	teui
change	改	góy
confirm	確定張	kawk·dìng jèung

I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat.
有冇吸煙/不吸煙位？ yáu·móu kàp·yìn/bàt·kàp·yìn wái

Is there a toilet/air conditioning?
有冇廁所/空調呀？ yáu·móu chi·sáw/hùng·tìu aa

How long does the trip take?
幾多個鐘頭到？ gáy·dàw gaw jùng·tàu do

Is it a direct route?
係唔係直達嘅？ hai·ňg·hai jik·daat ge

My luggage has been …	我嘅行李……	ngáw ge hàng·láy …
damaged	爛咗	laan·jáw
lost	唔見咗	ǹg·gin·jáw
stolen	俾人偷咗	báy·yán tàu·jáw

transport

Where does flight (12) arrive/depart?
(十二)號飛機喺邊度起飛／降落？ (sap·yi) hó fày·gày hái bìn·dó háy·fày/gawng·láwk

Is this the … to (Guǎngzhōu)?	呢班……係唔係去(廣州)㗎？	lày bàan … hái·ǹg·hai heui (gwáwng·jàu) gaa
boat	船	sèwn
bus	巴士	bàa·sí
plane	飛機	fày·gày
train	火車	fáw·chè
When's the … (bus)?	……(巴士)幾點開？	… (bàa·sí) gáy dím hòy
first	頭班	tàu·bàan
last	尾班	máy·bàan
next	下一班	haa·yàt·bàan

How long will it be delayed?
推遲幾耐？ tèui·chì gáy·loy

Please tell me when we get to (Guǎngzhōu).
到(廣州)嘅時候，唔該叫聲我。 do (gwáwng·jàu) ge sì·hau ǹg·gòy giu sèng ngáw

That's my seat.
呢個係我個位。 lày·gaw hai ngáw gaw wái

I'd like a taxi at (9am).
我想(9點鐘)坐的士。 ngáw séung (gáu dím·jùng) cháw dìk·sí

I'd like a taxi now.
我想坐的士而家。 ngáw séung cháw dìk·sí yì·gàa

How much is it to …?
去……幾多錢？ heui … gáy·dàw chín

Please put the meter on.
唔該打咪表。 ńg·gòy dáa mài·biù

Please take me to (this address).
唔該帶我去 ńg·gòy daai ngáw heui
(呢個地址)。 (lày gaw day·jí)

Please stop/wait here.
唔該喺呢度/等。 ńg·gòy hái lày·do tíng/dáng

I'd like to hire a 4WD/car (with a driver).
我想租 ngáw séung jò gaa
架4WD/車(有司機)。 fàw·wiù·jàai·fù/chè (yáu sì·gày)

How much for … hire?	租……幾多錢？	jò … gáy·dàw chín
daily	一日	yàt yat
weekly	一個禮拜	yàt gaw lái·baai





directions

Where's a/the …?	……喺邊度？	… hái·bìn·do
bank	銀行	ngàn·hàwng
foreign	換外幣	wun ngoy·bai
exchange office	嘅地方	ge day·fàwng
post office	郵局	yàu·gúk

Can you show me (on the map)?
你可唔可以(喺地圖度) láy háw·ńg·háw·yí (hái day·to do)
指俾我睇我喺邊度？ jí báy ngáw tái ngáw hái bìn·do

What's the address?	地址係？	day·jí hai
How far is it?	有幾遠？	yáu gáy yéwn
How do I get there?	點樣去？	dím·yéung heui
Turn left/right.	向左/右轉。	heung jáw/yau jewn

It's …	喺……	hái …
behind …	……嘅後面	… ge hau·min
in front of …	……嘅前面	… ge chìn·min
near …	……附近	… fu·gan
on the corner	十字路口	sap·ji·lo·háu
opposite …	……嘅對面	… ge deui·min
straight ahead	前面	chìn·min
there	嗰度	gáw·do

signs		
入口/出口	yap·háu/chèut·háu	**Entry/Exit**
有房	yáu fáwng	**Vacancy**
冇房	mó fáwng	**No Vacancy**
派出所	paai·chèut·sáw	**Police Station**
廁所	chi·sáw	**Bathroom**
男	laam	**Male**
女	léui	**Female**

accommodation

Where's a guest house/hotel?		
邊度有賓館/酒店?		bìn·do yáu bàn·gún/jáu·dim
Can you recommend somewhere …?	你可唔可以推薦個……嘅地方住呀?	láy háw·ńg·háw·yí tèui·jin gaw … ge day·fàwng jew a
cheap	平	peng
good	好	hó

I'd like to book a room, please.
我想定房。 ngáw séung deng fàwng

I have a reservation.
我預定咗。 ngáw yew·deng jáw

Do you have a … room?	有冇……房?	yáu·mó … fáwng
double	雙人	sèung·yàn
single	單人	dàan·yàn
twin	雙人	sèung·yàn

How much is it per …?	一……幾多錢？	yàt … gáy·dàw chín
night	晚	máan
person	個人	gaw yàn

For (three) nights.
住(三)日。 jew (sàam) yat

Could I have my key, please?
可唔可以 háw·ǹg·háw·yí
俾條門匙我？ báy tiù mùn sì ngáw

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我可唔可以攞 ngáw háw·ǹg·háw·yí láw
多張(氈)呀？ dàw jèung (jin) aa

The (air-conditioning) doesn't work.
(空調)壞咗。 (hùng·tiù) waai·jáw

Do you have an elevator/a safe?
有冇電梯/甲萬？ yáu móu din·tài/gàap·maan

What time is checkout?
幾點鐘退房？ gáy dím·jùng teui·fáwng

Could I have my …, please?	唔該，我嚟攞……	ǹg·gòy ngáw lày láw …
deposit	押金	ngaat·gàm
passport	護照	wu·jiu
valuables	貴重物品	gwai·jung mat·bán

banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	……喺邊度？	… hái bìn·dou
ATM	自動提款機	ji·dung tài·fún·gày
public phone	公眾電話	gùng·jung din·wáa
I'd like to …	我要……	ngáw yiu …
change a travellers cheque	換旅行支票	wun léui·hàng jì·piu
change money	換錢	wun chín
withdraw money	攞現金	láw yin·gàm

What's the …?	……係乜嘢？	… hai gáy·dàw
charge for that	手續費	sáu·juk·fai
exchange rate	兌換率	deui·wun·léut

Where's the nearest public phone?

呢度附近有冇公眾電話呀？	lày·do fu·gan yáu·mó gung·jung din·wáa aa

Where's the local internet cafe?

附近有冇網吧？	fu·gan yáu·mó máwng·bàa

How much is it per hour?

每個鐘幾多錢？	muí gaw jung gáy·dàw chín

I'd like to …	我想……	ngáw séung …
get internet access	上網	séung·máwng
use a printer/scanner	打印/掃描	dáa·yan/so·miù

I'd like a …	我想買個……	ngáw séung máai gaw …
mobile/cell phone for hire	出租手機	chèut·jò sáu·gày
SIM card for your network	你地網絡用嘅SIM卡	láy·day máwng·làwk yung ge sím·kàat





What are the rates?

電話費點計？	din·wáa·fai dím gai

What's your phone number?

你嘅電話號碼係幾多號？	láy ge din·wáa ho·máa hai gáy·dàw ho

The number is …

號碼係……	ho·máa hai …

I want to …	我想……	ngáw séung …
buy a phonecard	買張電話卡	máai jèung din·wáa·kàat
call collect	打對方付款嘅電話	dáa deui·fàwng fu·fún ge din·wáa
call (Singapore)	打電話去(新加坡)	dáa din·wáa heui (sàn·gaa·bàw)

I want to send a …	我想……	ngáw séung …
fax	發傳真	faat chèwn·jàn
parcel	寄包裹	gay bàau·gwáw
I want to buy a/an …	我想買……	ngáw séung máai …
envelope	個信封	gaw seun·fùng
stamp	張郵票	jèung yàu·piu

Please send it by airmail to (Australia).
唔該寄航空去(澳大利亞)。
ǹg·gòy gay hàwng·hùng heui (ngo·dàai·lày·a)

sightseeing

What time does it open/close?
幾點開/關門？ gáy dím hòy/gwàan·mùn

What's the admission charge?
入場券幾多錢？ yàp·chèung·gewn gáy·dàw chín

Is there a discount for children/students?
有冇小童/學生折扣呀？ yáu·mó siú·tùng/hàwk·sàang ji·kau aa

I'd like a …	我想買……	ngáw séung máai …
catalogue	目錄	muk·luk
guide	指南	jí·làam
(local) map	(本地)地圖	(bún·day) day·tò

I'd like to see …
我想睇下…… ngáw séung tái háa …

What's that?
嗰啲係乜嘢？ gáw dì hai màt·yé

Can I take a photo?
我可唔可以影嘅像呀？ ngáw háw·ǹg·háw·yí yíng ge séung aa

When's the next tour?
下個旅遊團係幾時？ haa·gaw léui·yàu·tèwn hai gáy·sì

How long is the tour?
呢團要幾長時間？ lày tèwn yiu gáy chèung sì·gaan

Is (the) … included?	包唔包……呀？	bàau·n̄g·bàau … aa
accommodation	住宿	jew·sùk
admission	票價	piu·gaa
food	飲食	yúm·sīk
transport	交通	gàau·tùng

sightseeing		
garden	花園	fàa·yéwn
Great Wall	長城	chèung·sìng
palace	宮殿	gùng·dīn
ruins	廢墟	ai·hèu
square (town)	廣場	gwáwng·chèung
temple (shrine)	廟	miú

shopping

Where's a …?	……喺邊度？	… hái·bìn·dō
camera shop	相機鋪	séung·gày·pó
market	街市	gàai·sí
souvenir shop	紀念品店	gay·līm·bán·dim

Where can I buy locally produced goods/souvenirs?
邊度可以買倒本地製品/紀念品？ bìn·dō háw·yí máai·dó bún·day jai·bán/gáy·līm·bán

What's this made from?
係乜嘢做㗎？ hai màt·yé jō gaa

I'd like to buy …
我想買…… ngáw séung máai …

Can I look at it?
我可唔可以睇下？ ngáw háw·n̄g·háw·yí tái hàa

Can I have it sent abroad?
可唔可以寄出國外啊？ háw·n̄g·háw·yí gay chèut gawk·ngoy aa

Can I have my (camera) repaired here?
你可唔可以修好我個(相機)呀？ láy háw·n̄g·háw·yí sàu·hó ngáw gaw (séung·gày) aa

It's faulty.
壞咗。 waai·jáw

How much is it?
幾多錢？ gáy·dàw chín

Can you write down the price?
唔該寫低個价錢。 ńg·gòy sé dài gaw gaa·chìn

That's too expensive.
太貴啦。 taai gwai laa

I'll give you (five RMB).
俾(五百蚊人民幣)你。 báy (ńg baak màn yàn·màn·bāi) láy

There's a mistake in the bill.
帳單錯咗。 jeung·dàan chaw jáw

Do you accept …?	你地收唔收……呀？	láy·day sàu·ńg·sàu … aa
credit cards	信用卡	seun·yung·kàat
debit cards	提款卡	tài·fún·kàat
travellers cheques	旅行支票	léui·hàng jì·piu
I'd like …, please.	唔該，我要……	ńg·gòy ngáw yiu …
a bag	個袋	gaw dóy
a receipt	張單	jèung dàan
a refund	退錢	teui·chín
my change	找錢	jáau·chín
less/enough/more	少/夠/多	siú/gau/dàw





photography

Can you …?	可唔可以……呀？	háw·ńg·háw·yí … aa
develop	沖晒呢	chùng·saai lày
this film	筒菲林	tung fày·lám
transfer photos	幫我	bàwng ngáw
from my	將相機	jèung séung·gày
camera to CD	啲相	dì séung
	轉落CD	jewn lawk sì·dì

Do you have …	你有冇啱呢部	láy yáu·mó ngàam
for this camera?	相機嘅……？	làybō séung·gày ge …
batteries	電池	dìn·chìh
memory cards	儲存卡	chéw·chèwn·kàat

I need film for this camera.
我想買呢架相機嘅 — ngáw séung máai lày gaa séung·gày ge

When will it be ready?
幾時嚟攞？ — gáy·sìh lày láw





making conversation

In Cantonese, titles are attached to the end of the surname.

Hello.	哈佬。	hàa·ló
Goodbye.	再見。	joy·gin
Good night.	晚安。	máan·ngàwn
Mr/Sir	先生	·sìn·sàang
Ms	小姐	·siú·jé
Mrs	太太	·taai·táai
Madam	女士	·léui·sìh

How are you?
你幾好啊嗎？ — láy gáy hó à maa

Fine. And you?
幾好。你呢？ — gáy hó láy lè

What's your name?
你叫乜嘢名？ — láy giu màt·yé méng aa

My name is …
我叫…… — ngáw giu …

I'm pleased to meet you.
幸會！ — hàng·wuì

This is my …	呢個係我嘅……	làygawhaingáwge …
brother (older)	哥哥	gàw·gàw
brother (younger)	細佬	sai·ló
daughter	女	léui
father	爸爸	baa·bàa
friend	朋友	pàng·yáu
husband	老公	lóu·gùng
mother	媽媽	màa·màa
partner (intimate)	伴	pún
sister (older)	家姐	gàa·jè
sister (younger)	妹妹	mui·muí
son	仔	jái
wife	老婆	lóu·pòu

Here's my (address).
呢個係我嘅(地址)。 lày·gaw hai ngáw ge (day·jí)

What's your (email)?
你嘅(電子郵箱)呢？ láy ge (din·jí yàu·sèung) lè

Where are you from?
你係邊度人？ láy hai bìn·dou yàn

I'm from …	我係喺……嚟嘅。	ngáw hai hái … lài ge
Australia	澳大利亞	ngòu·daai·lay·aa
Canada	加拿大	gàa·làa·daai
England	英國	ying·gawk
New Zealand	新西蘭	sàn·sài·làan
the USA	美國	máy·gawk
What's your occupation?	你做邊行㗎?	láy jou bìn hàwng gaa
I'm a/an …	我係……	ngáw hai …
businessperson	生意人	sàang·yi·yàn
office worker	白領	baak·líng
tradesperson	技工	gay·gùng

Do you like …?	你鍾唔鍾意……啊？	láy jùng·ńg·jùng·yi … aa
I (don't) like …	我(唔)鍾意……	ngáw (ńg·)jùng·yi …
art	藝術	ngai·seut
films	睇戲	tái·hay
music	聽音樂	tèng yàm·ngawk
reading	睇書	tái·sèw
sport	體育	tái·yuk

I'd like to learn some of your local dialects.
我想學啲你地嘅本地話。 ngáw séung hawk dì láy·day ge bún·day wáa

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你想不想我教你學啲英文？ láy séung·ńg·séung ngáw gaau láy hawk dì yìng·mán

Is this a local or national custom?
呢啲係唔係本地嘅或者係全國嘅風俗？ lày·dì hai·ńg·hai bún·day ge waak·jé hai chèwn·gwawk ge fùng·juk

eating out

Can you recommend a …?	有乜好……介紹？	yáu màt hó … gaai·xiu
bar	酒吧	jáu·bàa
dish	碟	díp
restaurant	茶樓	chàa·làu
I'd like a/the…, please.	唔該我要……	ńg·gòy ngáw yiu …
bill	埋單	màai·dàan
drink list	酒料單	jáu·liú·dàan
menu	菜單	choy·dàan
(non)smoking table	(不)吸煙嘅檯	(bàt)·kàp·yìn ge tóy
table for (five)	(五位)嘅檯	(ńg wái) ge tóy

I'd like …	我想食……	ngáw séung sik …
a local	地方	day·fàwng
speciality	風味菜	fùng·may choy
that dish	嗰個菜	gáw gaw choy
breakfast	早餐	jó·chàan
lunch	午餐	ńg·chàan
dinner	晚飯	máan·faan
drinks	飲料	yám·liu
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡……	(yàt buì) gaa·fè …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶……	(yàt buì) chàa …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	gàa (ngàu·láai)
without (sugar)	唔加(糖)	ńg gàa (tàwng)
orange juice	橙汁	cháang·jàp
soft drink	汽水	hay·séui
… water	……水	….séui
boiled	滾	gún
cold	凍滾	dung·gún
sparkling mineral	礦泉氣	kawng·chèwn·hay
still mineral	礦泉	kawng·chèwn

I'll buy you a drink.
飲乜嘢我請。 yám màt·yé ngáw chéng

What would you like?
你想飲乜嘢？ láy séung yám màt·yé

a … of beer	一……啤酒	yàt … bè·jáu
glass	杯	buì
small bottle	細樽	sai jèun
large bottle	樽	jèun
a shot of (whisky)	一杯(威士忌)	yàt buì (wài·sì·gáy)
a bottle/glass	一樽/杯……	yàt jèun/buì …
of … wine	葡萄酒	pò·tò·jáu
red	紅	hung
white	白	baak

special diets & allergies

Do you have … food?	有冇……食品？	yáu·mó … sik·bán
halal	清真	chìng·jàn
kosher	猶太	yàu·tàai
vegetarian	齋	jàai
Could you prepare a meal without …?	可唔可以煮味餸唔落……㗎？	háw·ńg·háw·yí jéw may sung ńg lawk … gaa
I'm allergic to …	我對……	ngáw deui …
dairy produce	奶製品	láai·jai·bán
eggs	雞蛋	gài·dáan
meat	肉	yuk
nuts	果仁	gwáw·yàn
seafood	海鮮	hóy·sìn



emergencies

Help!	救命！	gau·meng
Stop!	企喺度！	káy hái·do
Go away!	走開！	jáu·hòy
Thief!	有賊啊！	yáu cháat aa
Fire!	火燭啊！	fó·jùk aa
Watch out!	小心！	siú·sàm
Call …!	快啲叫……！	faai·dì giu …
a doctor	醫生	yì·sàng
an ambulance	救傷車	gau·sèung·chè

the police	警察	gíng·chaat

Could you please help?
唔該幫幫忙。 ńg·gòy bàwng bàwng màwng

Can I use your phone?
唔該借個電話用下。 ńg·gòy je gaw dín·wáa yung háa

I'm lost.
我蕩失路。 ngáw dawng·sàk·lo

Where are the toilets?
廁所喺邊度？ chi·sáw hái bìn·do

Where's the police station?
警察局喺邊度？ gíng·chaat·gúk hái·bìn·do

I want to contact my embassy.
我要聯繫我嘅大使館。 ngáw yiu lèwn·hai ngáw ge daai·si·gún

I've been …	有人……我。	yáu·yàn … ngáw
assaulted	打	dáa
raped	強奸	kèung·gàan
robbed	打劫	dáa·gip
I've lost my …	我……唔見咗。	ngáw … ńg·gin·jáw
My … was/were stolen.	我……俾人偷咗。	ngáw … báy·yàn tàu·jáw
bags	啲行李	dì hang·láy
credit card	張信用卡	jèung seun·yung·kàat
money	啲錢	dì chín
passport	個護照	gaw wu·jiu
travellers cheques	啲旅行支票	dì léui·hang jì·piu

health

Where's the nearest …?	最近嘅……喺邊度？	jeui kán ge … hái bìn·do
dentist	牙醫	ngàa·yì
doctor	醫生	yì·sàng

hospital	醫院	yì·yéwn
pharmacist	藥房	yeuk·fa̲wng

I need a doctor (who speaks English).
我要睇(識講英文嘅)醫生。 ngáw yiu tái (sìk gáwng yìng·mán ge) yì·sàng

Could I see a female doctor?
最好睇個女醫生。 jèui·hó tái gaw lé̲ui yì·sàng

I've run out of my medication.
我啲藥用完啦。 ngáw dì ye̲uk yu̲ng yèwn laa

It hurts here.
呢度痛。 lày·do̲ tung

I have (a) …	我有……	ngáw yáu …
asthma	哮喘	hàau·chéwn
constipation	便秘	bi̲n·bay
diarrhoea	肚瀉	tó̲·ngàw
fever	發燒	faat·siù
heart condition	心臟病	sàm·ja̲wng·be̲ng
nausea	作嘔	jawk·ngáu

I'm allergic to …	我對……過敏。	ngáw deui … gaw·mán
antibiotics	抗菌素	kawng·kún·so
anti-inflammatories	消炎藥	siù·yi̲m ye̲uk
aspirin	阿斯匹林	àa·si·pàt·la̲m
bees	蜜蜂	ma̲t·fùng
codeine	可待因	háw·do̲y·yàn

english–cantonese dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

A

accident 意外 yi-ngoy
accommodation 住宿 jew-sùk
adaptor 轉換插頭 jéwn-wun chaap-tàu
address 地址 day-jí
after 以後 yi-hàu
air-conditioned 有冷氣嘅 yáu làang-hay ge
airplane 飛機 fay-gày
airport 飛機場 fay-gày-chèung
alcohol 酒精 jáu-jing
all 所有嘅 sáw-yáu-ge
allergic 過敏 gaw-mán
ambulance 急傷車 gau-sèung-chè
and 同埋 tùng-mài
ankle 腳踭 geui-jàang
antibiotics 抗菌素 kawng-kún-so
arm 胳膊 sáu-bay
ATM 自動提款機 ji-dung tài-fún-gày

B

baby BB仔 bi-bi-jái
back (body) 背脊 bui-jek
backpack 背囊 bui-làwng
bad 壞 wàai
bag 包 bàau
baggage claim 行李認領處 hàng-láy ying-líng-chew
bank n 銀行 ngàn-hàwng
bar 酒吧 jáu-bàa
bathroom 廁所 chi-sáw
battery 電池 din-chì
beautiful 美麗 máy-lai
bed 床 chàwng
beer 啤酒 bē-jáu
before 以前 yí-chìn
behind 後面 hàu-mìn
bicycle 單車 dàan-chè
big 大 dàai
bill (restaurant etc) 單 dàan
blanket 氈 jin
blood group 血型 hewt-ying
boat 船 sèwn
book v 訂 deng
bottle 樽 jèun
boy 男仔 làam-jái
brakes 逼力 bìk-lik
breakfast 早餐 jó-chàan
broken 壞咗 wàai-jáw
bus (intercity) 長途汽車 chèung-tù hay-chè
bus (local) 公共汽車 gùng-gung hay-chè
business 生意 sàang-yi
buy 買 màai

C

camera 相機 séung-gày
cancel 取消 chéui-siù
car 車 chè
cash n 現金 yin-gàm
cash (a cheque) v 兌現 deui-yin
cell phone 手機 sáu-gày
change (money) v 換錢 wun chín
cheap 平 pèng
check (bill) 單 dàan
check-in (desk) 登記（台） dàng-gay-(tóy)
chest (body) 胸 hùng
child 細路仔 sai-lo-jái
cigarette 香煙 hèung-yin
city 城市 sìng-sí
clean a 乾淨 gàwn-jeng
closed 關門 gwàan-mùn
cold a 凍 dung
collect call 對方付款 deui-fàwng fu-fún
come 嚟 làai
computer 電腦 din-ló
condom 避孕套 bay-yan-to
contact lens 隱形眼鏡 yán-yìng ngáan-géng
cook v 煮飯 jéw-faan
cost (price) n 價錢 gaa-chìn
credit card 信用卡 seun-yung-kàat
currency exchange 外幣兌換 ngoy-bai deui-wun
customs (immigration) 海關 hóy-gwàan

D

dangerous 危險 ngài-hím
date (calendar) n 日期 yat-kày
day 日頭 yat-tàu
delay n 推遲 tuì-chì

dentist 牙科 ngàa-fò
depart 離開 lày-hoy
diaper 尿片 liu-pín
dinner 晚飯 máan-faan
direct 直接 jik-jip
dirty 污糟 wù-jò
disabled 傷殘 sèung-chàan
discount 折扣 jit-kau
doctor 醫生 yì-sàng
double bed 雙人床 sèung-yàn-chàwng
double room 雙人房 sèung-yàn-fáwng
drink n 飲料 yám-liu
drive v 開車 hòy-chè
driving licence 駕駛執照 gaa-sái jàp-jiu
drug(s) 毒品 duk-bán

E

ear 耳仔 yí-jái
east 東方 dùng-fawng
eat 食 sik
economy class 經濟艙 ging-jai-chàwng
electricity 電 din
elevator 電梯 din-tài
email n 電子郵件 din-jí yàu-gín
embassy 大使館 daai-sí-gún
emergency 緊急意外 gán-gàp yi-ngoy
English 英文 ying-màn
evening 夜晚 ye-máan
exit n 出口 chèut-háu
expensive 貴 gwai
eye 眼睛 ngáan-jing

F

far 遠 yéwn
fast a 快 faai
father 爸爸 bàa-bàa
film (for camera) 菲林 fày-lám
finger 手指 sáu-jí
first-aid kit 救傷用品 gau-sèung yung-bán
first class 頭等艙 tàu-dáng-chàwng
fish n 魚 yéw
food 食物 sik-mat
foot 腳 geui
free (no charge) a 免費 mín-fai
friend 朋友 pàng-yáu
fruit 水果 séui-gwáw
full 滿 mún

G

gift 禮物 lái-mat
girl 女仔 léui-jái
glass (drinking) 杯 bui
glasses (spectacles) 眼鏡 ngáan-géng
go 去 heui
good 好 hó
guide (person) n 導游 dò-yàu

H

half 半 bun
hand n 手 sáu
happy 快樂 faai-làwk
have 有 yáu
he 佢 kéui
head 頭 tàu
heart 心臟 sàm-jàwng
heavy 重 chúng
help n 幫助 bàwng-jaw
here 呢度 lày-dò
high 高 gò
highway 高速公路 gò-chùk gùng-lò
hike 遠足 yéwn-jùk
holiday(s) 假期 gaa-kày
homosexual 同性戀 tung-sing-léwn
hospital 醫院 yì-yéwn
hot 熱 yit
hotel 酒店 jáu-dim
hungry 餓 ngaw
husband 老公 lò-gùng

I

I 我 ngáw
identification card (ID) 身份證 sàn-fán-jing
ill 有病 yáu-bèng
important 重要 jung-yiu
injury 傷 sèung
insurance 保險 bó-hím
internet 互聯網 wu-lèwn-máwng
interpreter 翻譯 faan-yik

J

jewellery 首飾 sáu-sik
job 工作 gùng-jawk

K

key 鑰匙 sáw-sì
kilogram 公斤 gùng-gàn
kitchen 廚房 chèw-fáwng
knife 刀 dò

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 sái-yì-dim
lawyer 律師 lèut-sì
left (direction) 左邊 jáw-bìn
leg 腿 téui
lesbian n 女同性戀 léui tung-sing-léwn
less 少 siú
letter (mail) 信 seun
light n 光 gwàwng
like v 同……一樣 tung … yàt-yeung
lock n 鎖 sáw
long 長 chèung
lost (one's way) 蕩失路 dàwng-sàt-lò
love v 愛 ngoy
luggage 行李 hàng-láy
lunch 午餐 ńg-chàan

M

mail n 信 seun
man (male person) 男人 làam-yán
map 地圖 day-tò
market 街市/市場 gàai-sí/ sí-chèung HK/China
matches (for lighting) 火柴 fó-chàai
meat 肉 yuk
medicine (medication) 醫藥 yì-yeuk
message 口信 háu-seun
milk 牛奶 ngàu-láai
minute 分鐘 fàn-jùng
mobile phone 手機 sáu-gày
money 錢 chín
month 月 yewt
morning 朝早 jiù-jó
mother 媽媽 màa-màa
motorcycle 電單車 dìn-dàan-chè
mouth 口 háu

N

name 名 méng
near 近 kán
new 新 sàn
newspaper 報紙 bo-jí
night 夜晚 ye-maan
no 唔得 ńg-dàk
noisy 嘈 chò
nonsmoking 不吸煙 bàt-kàp-yìn
north 北邊 bàk-bìn
nose 鼻 bày
now 而家 yì-gàa
number 號碼 hò-máa

O

old 老 lóu
one-way (ticket) 單程（飛） dàan-chìng (fày)
open a 開放 hòy-fawng
outside 外面 ngoy-mìn

P

passport 護照 wù-jiu
pay v 俾錢 báy-chín
pharmacy 藥房 yeuk-fáwng
phonecard 電話卡 dìn-wáa-kàat
photo 相 séung
police (officer) 警察 gíng-chaat
postcard 明信片 ming-seun-pín
post office 郵局 yàu-gúk
pregnant 懷孕 wàai-yan
price 價錢 gaa-chìn

Q

quiet 安靜 ngàwn-jing

R

rain n 落雨 làwk-yéw
razor 剃刀 tai-dò
receipt 收據 sàu-geui
refund n 退錢 teui-chín
(by) registered mail 掛號 gwaa-hò
rent v 租 jò
repair v 修理 sàu-láy
reservation (booking) 預定 yew-dèng
restaurant 酒樓 jáu-làu
return (come back) v 返嚟 fàan-lày
return (ticket) 雙程（飛） sèung-chìng (fày)
right (direction) 右邊 yau-bìn
road 路 lò
room 房 fáwng

S

safe a 安全 ngàwn-chèwn
sanitary napkin 衛生巾 wai-sàng-gàn
seat (hard; on train) 硬座 ngaang-jàw
seat (place) 座位 jàwk-wái
seat (soft; on train) 軟座 yéwn-jàw
send 寄 gay
sex 性 sing

shampoo n 洗頭水 sái-tàu-séui
share v 公用 gùng-yụng
she 佢 kḛui
sheet (bed) 床單 chàwng-dàan
shirt 恤衫 sèut-sàam
shoe(s) 鞋 hàai
shop n 店 dim
short (height) 矮 ngái
shower 沖涼室 chūng-lèung-fáwng
single room 單人房 dàan-yàn-fáwng
skin 皮膚 pày-fù
skirt 裙 kùn
sleep v 瞓覺 fan-gaau
slowly 慢慢 mạan-máan
small 細 sai
soap 肥皂 fày-jo
some 一啲 yàt-đi
soon 快 faai
south 南 làam
souvenir shop 紀念品店 gay-lịm-bán-dim
stamp n 郵票 yàu-piu
stand-by ticket 月台票 yewt-tòy-piu
station 車站 chḛ-jaam
stomach 肚 tó
stop (bus, tram etc) 停 tịng
stop (cease) 停止 tịng-jí
street 街 gàai
student 學生 hạwk-sàang
sun 太陽 taai-yèung
sunblock 防曬油 fàwng-saai-yàu
swim v 游水 yàu-séui

T

tampon 棉塞 mịn-sàk
teeth 牙齒 ngàa-chí
telephone n 電話 dịn-wáa
temperature (weather) 溫度 wàn-dọ
that (one) 嗰個 gáw-gaw
they 佢地 kḛui-dạy
thirsty (to be) 口渴 géng-hawt
this (one) 呢個 lày-gaw
throat 喉嚨 hàu-lụng
ticket 票 piu
time n 時間 sì-gaan
tired 匱 gui
tissues 紙巾 jí-gàn
today 今日 gàm-yạt
toilet 廁所 chì-sáw
tomorrow 听日 tìng-yạt
tonight 今晚 gàm-mạan
toothbrush 牙刷 ngàa-cháat
toothpaste 牙膏 ngàa-gò
torch (flashlight) 電筒 dịn-túng
tour n 旅游團 léui-yàu-tḛ̀wn
tourist office 旅行社 léui-hàng-sḛ́
towel 毛巾 mò-gàn
train n 火車 fó-chḛ
translate 翻譯 fàan-yìk
travel agency 旅行社 léui-hàng-sḛ́
travellers cheque 旅行支票 léui-hàng jì-piu
trousers 褲 fu
twin room 雙人房 sèung-yàn-fáwng

U

underwear 底衫褲 đái-sàam-fu
urgent 緊要 gán-yiu

V

vacant 有空關 yáu hùng-kewt
vegetable n 蔬菜 sàw-choy
vegetarian a 食齋嘅 sịk-jàai ge
visa 簽證 chìm-jing

W

walk v 行路 hàang-lọ
wallet 個銀包 gaw ngàn-bàau
wash 洗 sái
watch n 手錶 sáu-biù
water 水 séui
we 我地 ngáw-dạy
weekend 週末 jàu-mut
west 西 sài
wheelchair 輪椅 lèun-yí
when 幾時 gáy-sì
where 邊度 bìn-dọ
who 邊個 bin-gaw
why 點解 dím-gáai
wife 老婆 ló-pò
window 窗 chèung
with 同埋 tùng-màai
without 之外 jì-ngọy
woman 女人 léui-yán
write 寫 sé

Y

yes 係 hại
yesterday 寻日 kàm-yạt
you sg 你 lày
you pl 你地 lày-dạy

Chaozhou

TONES	62
ABOUT CHAOZHOU	63
PRONUNCIATION	64
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	65
TIME & DATES	66
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	67
ACCOMMODATION	68
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	69
SIGHTSEEING	70
SHOPPING	70
MEETING PEOPLE	71
MAKING CONVERSATION	72
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	75
FAREWELLS	75
EATING OUT	76
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	79
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	80
ENGLISH–CHAOZHOU DICTIONARY	81

tones

Chaozhou is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Tones in Chaozhou fall on vowels, on n and on m when it appears as a word on its own. The same combination of sounds pronounced with different tones can have a very different meaning.

Chaozhou has eight tones. In our pronunciation guide they've been simplified to seven tones, indicated with accents or underscores on the letters, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Note that we haven't indicated the tone on m when it appears as a word on its own – in all these instances it carries a low falling tone.

Higher tones involve tightening the vocal cords to get a higher sounding pitch, while lower tones are made by relaxing the vocal cords to get a lower pitch. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg high tones are pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high flat & short high flat	high falling	high rising	mid flat	low falling	low falling-rising	low flat & short low flat
ā	â	á	a	à	ǎ	a̲
						
						
						

about Chaozhou

Chaozhou (tio tsiu ue 潮州話) is a southern dialect of Chinese and is also known as Teochiu. It's spoken in the eastern part of Guǎngdōng province, centring on the old cultural capital Cháozhōu and the port city of Shàntóu, but also in many overseas Chinese communities, including in Thailand, Hong Kong, Singapore, Malaysia, Cambodia, Indonesia, Vietnam and the Philippines. The total number of speakers within the Cháozhōu-Shàntóu region is about 12 million, with an almost equal number of speakers internationally. Linguistically, the dialect is closely related to those of southern Fújiàn. There was once a distinctive literary language based on Chaozhou speech. This fell into disuse in the 20th century but there have been local efforts to revive it. In recent decades the language has been enriched by new vocabulary reflecting scientific and technical advances. Chaozhou dialect varies from place to place but local varieties are mutually intelligible. The dialect on which this chapter is based is that of Jiēyáng, a county halfway between Cháozhōu and Shàntóu.

chaozhou



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
e	b**e**t	g	**g**ood
ew	as the 'oo' in 'soon' with the lips spread widely	h	**h**at
i	b**i**t (in syllables ending in -k, -m, -ng, -p); mach**i**ne (in syllables ending in a vowel)	k	ti**ck**le; like English g but unvoiced
		k'	**k**it
o	**ou**ght	l	**l**ot
u	r**u**le	m	**m**an
In this chapter, the Chaozhou pronunciation is given in green after each phrase. In Chaozhou vowels can appear in combinations of two (diphthongs) or three (triphthongs). All vowels in combinations are always pronounced – they are simply pronounced in series. Some vowels in Chaozhou are nasalised (pronounced with air escaping through the nose). In our pronunciation guides the nasalised vowels are indicated with ng after the vowel. For pronunciation of tones, see p62.		n	**n**ot
		ng	ri**ng** (both at the start and at the end of words)
		p	ni**pp**le; like English b but unvoiced
		p'	**p**et
		q	glottal stop (the sound heard between 'uh-oh')
		s	**s**un
		t	li**tt**le; like English d but unvoiced
		t'	**t**op
		ts	ca**ts**
		ts'	like ts, but with a strong puff of air following
		z	**z**ero

essentials

Yes.	是 。	sí
No.	不是 。	m sí
Please …	请 …	ts'iăng …
Hello.	你好 。	lêw chô
Goodbye.	再见 。	tsâi kiăng
Thank you.	谢谢你 。	tsọi siạ léw
Excuse me. (to get past)	借光 。	tuî m tsú
Excuse me. (asking for directions/assistance)	请问 。	ts'iáng mụng
Sorry.	对不起 。	tuî m tsú

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?	你会说(英文)吗?	lêw òi tâng (eng būng) bòi
Do you understand?	你明白吗?	lêw òi ts'eng ts'ô bòi
I (don't) understand.	我(不)明白 。	uâ (m) mẹng pēk
I (don't) speak Chaozhou.	我(不)会潮州話 。	uâ (bòi) tâng tịo tsiu uẹ
Could you please …?	请你 …?	ts'iáng léw …
repeat that	再说一遍	tsâi tâng ke kuê
speak more slowly	慢一点说	tâng mạng tịq kiăng

numbers

0	零	lēng	**20**	二十	zí tsāp
1	一	tsēk	**30**	三十	sang tsāp
2	二/两	nó	**40**	四十	sí tsāp
3	三	sang	**50**	五十	ngóung tsāp
4	四	sĭ	**60**	六十	lak tsāp
5	五	ngóung	**70**	七十	ts'ẹq tsāp
6	六	lāk	**80**	八十	poiq tsāp
7	七	ts'ẹq	**90**	九十	káu tsāp
8	八	poiq	**100**	一百	tsek peq
9	九	kâu	**1000**	一千	tsek ts'aing
10	十	tsāp	**1,000,000**	一百万	tsek peq buạng

time & dates

What time is it?	现在几点钟?	hèng tsái kúi tiâm
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点钟 。	(tsa̱p) tiâm
Quarter past (10).	(十)点十五分 。	(tsa̱p) tiâm tsa̱p ngòung hung
Half past (10).	(十)点三十分 。	(tsa̱p) tiâm puǎng
Quarter to (11).	(十)点四十	(tsa̱p) tiâm sí tsa̱p
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)	五分 。	ngòung hung

At what time (does it start)?
什么时候(开始)? ti̱ tiang si̱ (k'ai sî)

(It starts) At 10.
十点钟(开始) 。 tsa̱p tiâm (k'ai sî)

It's (18 October).
(十月十八号) 。 (tsa̱p gue̱q tsa̱p poiq ho̱)

yesterday	昨天	tsau zēk
today	今天	kim zēk
now	现在	hēng tsái
tonight	今晚	kim mē
tomorrow	明天	mâ zēk
sunrise	日出	zēk ts'u̱q
morning (after breakfast)	早上	tsá sēng
morning (before lunch)	上午	tsìong ngôung
afternoon	下午	è kuǎ
sunset	日落	zēk lōq
spring	春天	ts'ung ting
summer	夏天	he̱ ting
autumn	秋天	ts'iu ting
winter	冬天	tang ting
Monday	星期一	ts'eng k'i̱ e̱k
Tuesday	星期二	ts'eng k'i̱ zí
Wednesday	星期三	ts'eng k'i̱ sang
Thursday	星期四	ts'eng k'i̱ sí
Friday	星期五	ts'eng k'i̱ ngóung
Saturday	星期六	ts'eng k'i̱ lāk
Sunday	星期天	ts'eng k'i̱ zēk

January	一月	ek gue
February	二月	zí gue
March	三月	sang gue
April	四月	sǐ gue
May	五月	ngóung gue
June	六月	lāk gue
July	七月	ts'eq gue
August	八月	poiq gue
September	九月	kāu gue
October	十月	tsāp gue
November	十一月	tsap ek gue
December	十二月	tsap zí gue

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Zhōngshān Park)?	这个 … 是不是去(中山公园)?	tsí tsiaq … sì m sì kêw (tong suang kong hñg)
boat	船	tsūng
bus	公共汽车	kong kang k'ǐ ts'ia
train	火车	hué ts'ia
Where's a/the …?	… 在哪儿?	… tò tị kŏ
bank	银行	ngeng hang
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	uang guà pí kai tị hng
post office	邮局	iu kēq

Is this the road to (Haibin Park)?
这条路是不是去(海边公园)?
tsí tiau lou sì m sì k'êw (hai piang kong hñg)

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮我找它在地图上的位置 。
lau lêw kai uá tò tị tōu sìong ts'ue i kai ui tǐ

What's the address?	什么地址?	tị tsǐ sì meq kāi
How far is it?	有多远 ?	ù zioq hńg
How do I get there?	怎么走?	tsô nị kiāng
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐 。	hiāng tsô/íu
It's straight ahead.	一直往前 。	tsek tēk hiāng tsaing kiāng
Can I get there on foot?	可以走路过去吗?	kiang lou òi kău bòi

It's …	在 …	tó …
behind …	… 的后面	… kai àu pāing
in front of …	… 的前面	… kai tsaing meng
near …	… 附近	… kai hû kéng
on the corner	拐角	tsuáng uang kai kaq lōk
opposite …	… 的对面	… kai tuî meng
there	那里	hió kŏ

accommodation

Where's a guest house?
哪里有宾馆? ti kô ù piang kuâng

Where's a hotel?
哪里有酒店? ti kô ù tsíu tiàm

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你能推荐一个便宜的地方住吗? lēw k'ó m k'ó í kai uá kâi siàu kai p'íng kai li tiăm k'iá

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你能推荐一个好的地方住吗? lēw k'ó m k'ó í kai uá kâi siàu kai hô kai li tiăm k'iá

I'd like to stay at a locally run hotel.
我想住在本地人开的旅馆 。 uâ sìong k'ià tsek kaing púng ti nāng k'ui kai lí kuâng

I'd like to book a room.
我想订房间 。 uâ âing tiang pang kaing

I have a reservation.
我有预订 。 uá ú éw tiang

Do you have a … room?	有没有 … 房?	ù … pāng bo
double (suite)	套	t'âu
single	单人	tuang nāng
twin	双人	sang nāng

How much is it per night/person?
每天/人多少钱? tsek nāng/zēk zioq tsoi tsîng

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
住(三)天 。 uâ âing k'ià (sang) zēk

Could I have my key, please?
能不能给我房间钥匙?
hó mó k'eq uá pang kaing kai só sī

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我能多拿一条(毛毯吗)?
uâ hó mó k'ioq ke tiao (mo t'âng)

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有毛病 。
(k'ong t'iāu) ù mung toī

What time is checkout?
几点钟退房?
kuí tiám tseng t'ô pāng

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿回我的 …	uâ hó mó k'ioq tńg uá kai …
deposit	押金	âng kim
passport	护照	hù tsiŏ



banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪儿?	… tò ti kô
ATM	自动取款机	tsew tóng ts'uq k'uáng ki
public phone	公用电话	kong eng tiàng ue

Where's the local internet cafe?
附近有网吧吗 ?
hû kéng ù màng pa bo

I'd like to …	我想 …	uâ âing …
get internet access	上网	tsìo máng
use a printer	打印	eng hoq êng ki
use a scanner	扫描	sâu miau ki

What's your phone number?
您的电话号码是多少?
lêw kai tiàng ue ho bê sì zioq tsoi

The number is …
号码是 …
tiàng ue ho mê sì …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想看一些有特色的景点 。 uâ âing t'óing tńg tí kāi tsēk seng kéng tiâm

I'd like to see …
我想看 … uâ siò âing t'óing …

What's that?
那是什么? hiá kāi sì mēq kāi

Can I take a photo?
我能拍吗? uâ hó p'ak sîong p'iăng mē

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想看一些旅客较少的地方 。 uâ siò lái k'êw t'óing lạng kāi iu k'ēq tsío kěw kāi tị hńg

How long is the tour?
向导游要多长时间? kiạng tiāng tioq zioq tsōi sị kang

sights

Haimen Lotus Blossom Hill	海门莲花峰	hái mēng nāi hue hong
Lin Baixin International Convention Centre	林百欣国际会议中心	lim peq heng koq tsī huè ị tong sim
Seaview Promenade	观海长廊	kuang hâi ts'iạng lāng
Shàntóu University	汕头大学	suang t'āu tài hāq
Temple of Matsu	老妈宫	làu ma keng
Zhōngshān Park	中山公园	tong suang kong hñg
Zhōngxin Tourist Resort	中信度假村	tong sêng tōu kiáng ts'ng

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪儿?	… tò tị kŏ
camera shop	照相店	tsiô siông tiăm
market	市场	ts'ì tiōng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	kî niàm p'éng tiăm

Where can I buy locally produced goods?
哪里可以买当地生产的产品? tò ti kô hó pói tiōq t'óu teq suâng

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?
哪里可以买当地生产的纪念品? tò tị kô hó pói tiōq kĩ niàm p'êng

What's this made from?
这是用什么材料做的? tsiá kāi sì meq kai tsŏ kai

I'd like to buy …
我想买 … uâ âing bói …

Can I look at it?
我能看看吗? uâ hó mó t'ói t'ôi tse

How much is it?
多少钱? zioq tsoi tsīng

That's too expensive.
太贵了 。 k'aq kuĭ

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来 。 ts'iang tsiang kê tsīng siâ lok lai

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱 。 k'eq lew (ngòu kai) ngēng

Do you accept credit cards?
你们收信用卡吗? nêng ù siu sêng êng k'â bò

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单上有问题 。 tiô tuang ù ts'uq zīp

less	少	tsiô
enough	足够	ngam ngam
more	多	tsoi
bigger	更大	tsoi
smaller	更小	sŏi

meeting people

Hello.	你好 。	lêw hô
Goodbye.	再见 。	tsâi kiăng
Goodbye. (to person leaving)	再见 。	k'uang kiăng

Mr	先生	seng seng
Mrs	女士	ńg séw
Ms/Miss	小姐	siáu tsê
How are you?	你好吗?	lêw tsuê kéng tsai seng
Fine. And you?	好 。你呢?	hô hô, lêw ne
What's your name?	你叫什么名字?	lêw kìo meq miãng
My name is …	我叫 …	uâ kîo …
This is my …	这是我的 …	tsí kai/ui sì uá kai … inf/pol
brother	兄弟	hiang tí
child	孩子	nou kiâng
daughter	女儿	tsáu kiâng
father	父亲	pèq ts'eng
friend	朋友	p'eng îu
husband	老公	ang/tsiàng hu inf/pol
mother	母亲	bó ts'eng
partner (intimate)	对象	tuî siáng
sister (older/younger)	姐/妹	tsé/mue
son	儿子	kiâ
wife	太太	lâu p'uā/t'āi t'āi inf/pol

making conversation

Do you live here?	你住这里吗?	lêw sì m sì k'ià to tsío kŏ
Where are you going?	上哪儿去?	lêw âing k'êw ti kŏ
Do you like it here?	喜欢这里吗?	lêw oì hí huang tsío kŏ bòi
I love it here.	我很喜欢这里 。	uâ hoq hí huang tsío kŏ
Have you eaten?	吃饭了吗?	tsiak pung bue
Are you here on holiday?	你来这里旅游吗?	lêw sì m sì lai lí îu
I'm here …	我来这里 …	uâ lai tsío kŏ …
for a holiday	旅游	lí îu
on business	出差	ts'uq ts'e
to study	留学	liu hāq

How long are you here for?
你在这里住多久? lêw âing lai tsío kŏ k'ià ziôq kù

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)个星期 。 uâ k'ià (sî) kai ts'eng k'ī

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我可以拍(你的)相片吗? uâ k'ó íng p'aq (léw) kai̱ sîong p'iăng mè

Do you speak (Chaozhou)?
你会说(潮州话)吗? lêw òi tâng (ti̱o tsiu ue̱) bòi

What language do you speak at home?
你家里讲什么话? lêw tò lái tâng me̱q ue̱

What do you call this in (Chaozhou)?
这个东西(潮州话) tsiá kāi (ti̱o tsiu ue̱)
叫什么? tsô ni̱ tăng

What's this called?
这个叫什么? tsiá kāi kiô meq kāi

I'd like to learn some (Chaozhou).
我想学点(潮州话) 。 uâ siòng âing o̱q kuí kû (ti̱o tsiu ue̱)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你想让我教你一点 lêw âing uá kâ léw kuí kû
英语吗? eng būng mè

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗吗? tsiá kāi sì m sì ti̱ hng kai̱ hong sōq



local talk

Great! (food/things)	真棒！	k'iàng/hó sî
Hey!	劳驾！	uê
It's OK.	还行 。	hang k'ó îng
Just a minute.	等一下 。	tâng tse̱k e̱
Maybe.	有可能 。	ù k'ó nēng
No problem.	没事 。	bo̱ se̱w
No way!	不可能！	mô
Sure, whatever.	行,行,行 。	hô hô hô
That's enough!	够了,够了!	kău lău kău lău
Just joking.	开玩笑 。	tâng sńg ts'îo

Where are you from?	你从哪儿来?	lêw ti̱ kô nāng
I'm from …	我从 … 来 。	uâ kāi … nāng
Australia	澳大利亚	ô tài lì a
Canada	加拿大	kia ná tái
England	英国	eng ko̱q
New Zealand	新西兰	seng sai lāng
the USA	美国	múi ko̱q
What's your occupation?	你做什么工作?	lêw kāi tsoq meq ka̱i kang tsa̱q ka̱i
I'm a/an …	我当 …	uâ kāi …
businessperson	商人	siang zēng
office worker	白领	paing kong se̱k nang uāng
tradesperson	工匠	kang tsiáng
How old …?	… 多大了?	… tsio̱q tso̱i huě
are you	你	lêw
is your daughter	你的女儿	lêw ka̱i tsáu kiâng sì
is your son	你的儿子	lêw ka̱i kiâng sì
I'm … years old.	我 … 岁 。	uâ … huě
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁 。	i … huě
Too old!	太老了！	k'aq láu
I'm younger than I look.	我还小了 。	uâ t'óing k'í la̱i hang sŏi
Are you married?	你结婚了吗?	lêw kaq hung bue̱
Do you have a family?	你成家了吗 ?	lêw ts'e̱ng ke bue̱
I live with someone.	我有伴儿 。	uâ ù ka̱i tuí siáng lău
I'm …	我 …	uâ …
married	结婚了	kaq hung lău
single	单身	tuang seng
Do you like …?	你喜欢 … 吗?	lêw òi hí huang … bòi
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢 …	uâ (m) hí huang …
art	艺术	go̱i sūk
film	看电影	t'óing tiàng iâng
music	听音乐	t'iang im gāuq
reading	看书	t'óing tsew
sport	体育	t'í ío̱q

feelings & opinions

I'm …	我 …	uâ …
I'm not …	我不 …	uâ bòi …
Are you …?	你 … 吗?	lêw òi bòi …
cold	冷	ngāng
hot	热	zuāq
hungry	饿	tôu k'ûng
thirsty	渴	āu ta
tired	累	hēq
I feel …	我感到 …	uâ kaq teq …
I don't feel …	我不感到 …	uâ m kaq teq …
Do you feel …?	你感到 … 吗?	lêw òi bòi kaq teq …
happy	高兴	kau hěng
sad	不高兴	m kau hěng
worried	着急	kéng tsiang
What do you think of it?	你觉得怎么样?	lêw kaq teq tsài seng i̱ong
awful (quality)	很差劲	âu sî
awful (taste)	不好吃	mó tsiâk
beautiful	美丽	ngiá sî
boring	很无聊	bo̱ î sěw
great	很棒	hui si̱ong hô
interesting	很有意思	hoq ù î sěw
OK	还行	hang k'ó îng
strange	奇怪	k'i kuài

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要走了 。 mâ zēk uâ tsù tsáu liău

If you come to (Scotland), you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), ù ki hué lai (sou keq lāng)
可以来找我 。 tio̱q lai ts'ue̱ uá

Keep in touch!
保持联系! po̱ t'i̱ lia̱ng hī

It's been great meeting you.
认识你实在很高兴 。 zẹng sẹq lév uâ hui sịong kau hěng

Here's my (address).
给你我的(地址) 。 tsîo kāi uá kại (tị tsî)

What's your (email)?
你的(网址)是什么? lêw kại (màng tsî) sì meq kāi

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	tsẹk lọu p'ẹng ang
Congratulations!	恭喜,恭喜！	kiong hî kiong hî
Good luck!	祝你好运！	tsok lév hó ụng
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	seng zēk k'uâi lāk
Happy New Year!	新年好！	seng nī hó

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 该到哪里去?	… tiọq k'êw tị kó
banquet	办宴席	pạing tọq
celebration	举行庆祝会	kév kiạng k'êng tsôk hué
cheap meal	吃得便宜一点的	tsiāk hiá ping tịq kiáng kại
local specialities	地方小吃	tị hng siáu tsiāk
yum cha	饮茶	tsiāk tē
Can you recommend a …?	你可以推荐一个 … 吗?	lêw k'ó íng kâi siàu kại … mẹ
bar	酒吧	tsíu pa
cafe	咖啡屋	kia hui kuâng
dish (food item)	菜	ts'ăi
noodle house	面馆	mị tiăm
restaurant	饭馆	pụng tiăm
snack shop	小吃店	siáu tsiạk tiăm
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊	(hụng t'ung) tiăm
street vendor	街头小吃	koi t'âu siáu tsiāk
teahouse	茶馆	tē kuâng

I'd like a/the …	我要 …	uâ âing …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)	tsẹ̍k tio (ngòung nāng)
	桌子	kai ts'ñg
bill	帐单	pói tuang
drink list	酒水单	tsíu tsuí tuang
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	ti hng tẹq seq ts'ăi
menu	菜单	tsâi tuang
(non)smoking table	(不)吸烟的桌子	(bo) tsiak hung kai ts'ñg

Are you still serving food?
你们还营业吗？ nêng kueng mūng bue

What would you recommend?
有什么菜可以推荐的? ù meq ts'ăi hó kâi siáu

What do you normally eat for breakfast?
早饭一般吃什么? tsaq ts'ang tsẹ̍k puang tsiak meq kāi

What's in that dish?
这道菜用什么东西做的? tsí kai ts'ăi eng meq kai liau tsŏ kai

What's that called?
那个叫什么? hiá kāi kío meq kāi

I'll have that.
来一个吧 。 lāi tsẹ̍k kai

I'd like it with …	多放一点 …	pâng ke kô …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	mâi pâng …
chilli	辣椒	lạk tsio
garlic	大蒜	sn̄g t'āu
MSG	味精	bi tseng
nuts	果仁	kué zēng
oil	油	īu

I'd like …, please.	请给我 …	ts'iáng k'eq uá …
one slice	一块	tsēk kô
a piece	一份	tsẹ̍k hung
a sandwich	一个三明治	tsek kai sang bung ti
that one	那一个	hêw tsẹ̍k kai
two	两个	nò kāi

This dish is …	这个菜 … 了 。	tsí kai ts'ăi …
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(k'aq) hiam
superb	好极	hó tsiāk sî

I love this dish.
这道菜真香 。 uâ hoq hí huang tsí kai ts'ăi

That was delicious!
真好吃！ hó tsiāk sî

I'm full.
吃饱了 。 tsiak pâ lău





breakfast	早饭	tsaq ts'ang
lunch	午饭	tong ngóu pung
dinner	晚饭	múng pung
drink (alcoholic)	酒	tsîu
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	ím liau
… water	… 水	… tsuî
boiled	开	kûng
cold	凉开	gang kúng
sparkling mineral	矿泉汽	k'uâng tsuang k'î
still mineral	矿泉	k'uâng tsuang
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(tsek pue) kia hui …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(tsek pue) tê …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	kia (gu ní)
without (sugar)	不加(糖)	mâi pâng (t'ñg)
black tea	红茶	ang tê
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	keq hue tê
green tea	绿茶	lek tê
jasmine tea	花茶	hue tê
oolong tea	乌龙茶	ou leng tê
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	sng ní
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(ts'eng) tsap
lychee juice	荔枝汁	nài kuâing tsap
soft drink	汽水	k'î tsûi
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	sng bue tng

What are you drinking?	喝什么?	âing tsia̲k meq kāi
I'll pay.	我请客 。	uâ ts'iáng k'e̲q
What would you like?	我来买饮料， 你喜欢喝什么?	uâ âing bói ka̲i ím lia̲u lêw âing tsia̲k meq kāi
Cheers!	干杯!	kang pue
I'm feeling drunk.	我有点醉 。	uâ ù tiq kiáng tsuî tsuĭ
a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	tse̲k … pi̲ tsîu
glass	杯	pue
large bottle	大瓶	tua̲ tsung
small bottle	小瓶	sòi tsung
a shot of (whisky)	一樽(威士忌)	tse̲k pue (ui sèw kí)
a bottle/glass	一瓶/一杯	tse̲k p'e̲ng/tse̲k pue
of … wine	… 葡萄酒	… p'u̲ to̲ tsîu
red	红	āng
white	白	pēq

street eats

Chaozhou steamed dumplings	潮洲粉果	ti̲o tsiu húng kuê
corn on the cob	玉米棒	îung muí zēng
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	kiâu
dumpling (fried)	锅贴	tsiang kiâu
dumpling (steamed)	包子	pau
oyster omelette	蚝煎	o̲ luaq
radish cake	萝卜糕	ts'ái t'a̲u ko
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	tsâng kīu
wonton soup	馄饨	hu̲ng t'ung

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?		
有没有素食食品？		ù bo̲ tse ts'ăi
Could you prepare a meal without …?		
能不能做一个不		hó mó tsô tse̲k ka̲i mâi
放 … 的菜?		pâng … ka̲i ts'ăi

I'm allergic to …	我对 … 过敏 。	uâ tuî … kuê miâng
dairy produce	奶制品	nî tsî p'êng
eggs	鸡蛋	koi ńg
meat	肉	nēk
nuts	果仁	kué zēng
seafood	海鲜	hái ts'ing



emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	kîu miạng
Go away!	走开！	lêw tsáu k'ui
Fire!	着火啦！	tioq huê lău a
Watch out!	小心！	siáu sim
Where's the	最近的 …	lị tsío tsuê kéng kại …
nearest …?	在哪儿?	tò tị kŏ
dentist	牙科医生	gẹ ui
doctor	医生	ui seng
hospital	医院	ui ngị
pharmacist	药房	ioq pāng

Could you please help?
你能帮我吗？ lêw hó mó pang tsó uă

Can I use your phone?
我能借用你的电话吗? uâ hó mó tsioq léw kại tiàng uẹ eng e

I'm lost.
我迷路了 。 uâ m pak lọu

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪儿？ ts'eq sô tò tị kŏ

Where's the police station?
派出所在哪里? p'âi ts'uq sô tò tị kŏ

english–chaozhou dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾祸 îng guạ
accommodation 食宿 tsù suạq
adaptor 插头转接器 piảng îâp k'ī
address n 地址 tị tsî
after 之后 îng âu
air conditioning 空调 k'ong t'iâu
airplane 飞机 pue ki
airport 机场 ki tiõng
alcohol 酒 tsiú
all 所有的 ts'uạng póu
allergy 过敏 kuê miảng
ambulance 救护车 kîu hù ts'ia
and 和 kạq
ankle 踝 k'a māk
antibiotics 抗生素 k'âng seng sŭ
arm 手臂 ts'íu kòu
ATM 自动取款机 tsẹw tóng ts'úq k'uáng ki

B

baby 婴儿 eng zī
back (of body) 背 ka tsiạq
backpack 背包 puê pau
bad (behaviour) 坏的 huái
bag 包 pau
baggage 行李 hẹng lí
bank 银行 ngẹng hạng
bar 酒吧 tsíu pa
bathroom 浴室 ẹk sek/ẹk pāng
battery 电池 tiảng tî/tiảng t'ôu
beautiful 美丽的 múi lí/ngiả pol/inf
bed 床 mẹng ts'ng
beer 啤酒 pị tsîu
before 之前 îng tsăing
behind 后面 âu păing
bicycle 自行车 k'a tạq ts'ia
big 大的 tuă
bill 帐单 tiõng tuang
blanket 毛毯 mõ t'ảng
blood group 血型 huêq hẽng
boat 船 tsŭng
book (make a reservation) v 预订 tiạng
bottle 瓶 tsung
boy 男孩 ta pou kiảng
brakes (car) 车煞 ts'ia tsăp
breakfast 早饭 tsaq ts'ảng
broken (out of order) 坏掉的 seq tiạu
bus 共公汽车 kong kạng k'ī ts'ia
business 生意 seng lî
buy v 买 pói

C

camera 照相机 tsîo síong ki
cancel 取消 ts'ú siau
car 汽车 k'ī ts'ia
cash n 兑现 huạng
cash (a cheque) v 把 … 兑现
tsiang … huạng hẹng kim
cell phone 手机 ts'íu ki
centre n 中心 tong sim
cheap 便宜的 p'íng
check (bill) 帐单 tiõng tuang
check-in n 登记 tsú păng teng kî
chest (body) 胸膛 heng
children 孩子 ngu kiảng
cigarette 香烟 hung
city 城市 siạng ts'í
clean a 干净的 kang tséng
closed 关闭的 kueng
cold a 冷的 ngáng
collect call 对方付费电话
tûi huang hû huî tiảng ue
come 来 lăi
computer 电脑 tiảng nâu
condom 避孕套 pị uèng t'âu
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 êng hẽng mạk kiảng
cook v 做饭 lî lọk tsiăk
cost n 价钱 kẽ keq
credit card 信用卡 sèng êng k'ă
currency exchange 货币兑换 guà huế tuî uạng
customs (immigration) 海关 hái kuang

D

dangerous 危险的 nguịng hiảm
date (time) 日期 họ
day 天 zẽk
delay v 延迟 tam gọu
dentist 牙科医生 ge ui

depart 离开 li k'ui
diaper 尿布 zio pòu
dinner 晚饭 múng pung
direct a 直接的 tęk tsjq
dirty 脏的 ts'i gi
disabled 残废的 ts'ąng huĭ
discount v 打折 kiám kè
doctor 医生 ui seng
double bed 双人床 sang nąng ts'ng
double room 双人房 sang nąng páng
drink n 饮料 ím liąu
drive v 开车 k'ui ts'ia
driving licence 驾照 tsip tsïo
drug (illicit) 毒品 tąk p'êng

E

ear 耳朵 híng
east 东 tang
eat 吃 tsiăk
economy class 经济舱 keng tsî ts'ng
electricity 电 tiáng
elevator 电梯 tiàng t'ui
email 电子邮件 tiàng tséw ju kiáng
embassy 大使馆 tài sâi kuâng
emergency 紧急状况 kéng kip ts'eng k'uâng
English (language) 英语 eng büng/eng gêw
evening 傍晚 mé àm
exit n 出口 ts'uq k'âu
expensive 贵的 kuĭ
eye 眼睛 măk

F

far 远的 hńg
fast 快的 mê
father 父亲 pèq ts'eng
film (camera) 胶卷 ka kng
finger 手指 síu tsáing
first-aid kit 急救箱 kip kîu siong
first class 头等舱 t'ąu téng ts'ng
fish n 鱼 hêw
food 食物 tsiąk muĕk
foot 脚 k'a
free (of charge) 免费的 miáng huĭ
friend 朋友 p'eng îu
fruit 水果 tsuí kuê
full 满 muàng

G

gift 礼物 lí muĕk
girl 女孩 tsew niọ kiàng
glass (drinking) 杯子 po lị pue
glasses 眼镜 măk kiàng
go 去 k'êw
good 好的 hô
guide n 向导 tàu îu

H

half n 一半 puáng
hand 手 ts'îu
happy 高兴的 kau hěng
he 他 i
head n 头 t'âu
heart 心 sim
heavy 重的 táng
help 帮助 pang tsó
here 这里 tsió kŏ
high 高的 kau/kuíng pol/inf
highway 高速公路 kau soq gong lọu
hike v 徒步旅行 iáng tsąk
holiday 假期 kiàng k'î
homosexual 同性恋 tąng sêng luàng
hospital 医院 ui jng
hot (food) 热的 sio
hot (weather) 热的 zuăq
hotel 旅馆 lí tiàm
(be) hungry 饿的 tôu k'ûng
husband 老公 tsiàng hu

I

I 我 uâ
identification (card) 身份证 seng hụng tsêng
ill 生病的 seng pęng
important 重要的 tòng iâu
injury (harm) 伤害 siong hại
injury (wound) 伤口 siong k'âu
insurance 保险 pó hiâm
internet 英特网 eng tek máng
interpreter 翻译 huang ĕk

J

jewellery 珠宝 tsu pô
job 工作 kang tsąq

K

key 钥匙 só sî
kilogram 公斤 kong keng
kitchen 厨房 tọu păng
knife 刀 to

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 sói i pang
lawyer 律师 lụk sew
left (direction) 左 tsô
leg (body) 腿 k'a
lesbian 女同性恋 ńg tạng sêng luăng
less 少 tsiô
letter (mail) 信 sêng
light n 光 teng
like v 喜欢 hí huang
lock n 锁 só t'ău
long 长的 tng
lost 失去的 m kiăng
love v 爱 ăing
luggage 行李 hẹng lî
lunch 午饭 tong ngóu pụng

M

mail n 邮件 ịu kiáng
man 男人 nạm zêng/ta pou pol/inf
map 地图 tị tôu
market 市场 ts'ị tîong
matches 火柴 hué ts'ă
meat 肉 nêk
medicine 药 iôq
message 信息 k'áu sêng
milk 牛奶 gu ní
minute 分钟 hụng tseng
mobile phone 手机 ts'íu ki
money 钱 tsîng
month 月 guèq
morning 早上 tsá sêng
mother 妈妈 bó ts'eng
motorcycle 摩托车 mg toq ts'ia
mouth 嘴 ts'uî

N

name 名字 miăng
near 近的 kéng
neck n 脖子 ám
new 新的 seng
newspaper 报纸 pô tsuâ
night 晚上 mẹ hng
no (not this) 不是 m sí
noisy 喧闹的 ts'âu tsăk
nonsmoking 禁止吸烟 bọ eng k'u
north 北 paq
nose 鼻子 p'ịng
now 现在 hẹng tsăi
number (room/telephone) 号码 họ bê

O

old (people) 老 láu
old (things) 旧 kụ
one-way ticket 单程票 tuang t'ịang p'iô
open a 开的 k'ui
outside 外面的 guạ păing

P

passport 护照 hù tsiô
pay v 付钱 hû tsîng
pharmacy 药房 iọq păng
phonecard 电话卡 tiàng uẹ k'ă
photo 照片 siô p'iâng
police 警察 kèng ts'ạk
postcard 明信片 mẹng sêng p'iăng
post office 邮局 ịu kèq
pregnant 怀孕的 huại uéng
price n 价格 kê tsîng

Q

quiet a 安静的 tséng

R

rain n 雨 hóu
razor 剃刀 tî ts'íu to
receipt n 收据 huaq p'iô
refund n 退款 t'ô tsíng
registered (mail) 挂号信 kuâ họ sêng
rent v 租 tsou
repair v 修理 siu lî
reserve v 预订 èr tịang
restaurant 饭馆 pụng tiăm
return (give back) 还 hăing
return (go back) 回来 tńg kêw
return ticket 返程票 lại huẹ p'iô
right (direction) 右 iu
road 路 lọu
room n 房间 pạng kaing

S

safe a 安全的 uạng ts'uáng
sanitary napkin 卫生棉 guẹq keng tuă
seat n 座位 tsò uị
send 发送 săng
sex (intercourse) 性 sêng kau
sex (gender) 性别 sèng piăq

shampoo 洗发精 sói huaq tseng
share (a dorm) 分租 hąq k'iá
she 她 i
sheet (bed) 床单 ts'ng tuang
shirt 衬衫 soq sang
shoes 鞋 ōi
shop n 商店 siàng tiàm
short 短的 tô
shower n 淋浴 sói ēk
single room 单人间 tuang nąng pāng
skin n 皮肤 p'uê hu
skirt n 裙子 kûng
sleep v 睡 íng
slow 慢的 mąng
small 小的 sòi
soap 肥皂 piáng iōq
some 一些 tsęk seng
soon 马上 tsęk ę
south 南 nām
souvenir 纪念品 kî niàm p'êng
stamp 邮票 iu p'iò
stand-by ticket 候车票 hąu ts'ia p'iò
station (train) 火车站 hué ts'ia tsám
stomach 胃 ui
stop v 停止 t'êng
stop (bus) n 站台 tsám
street 街 koi
student 学生 hąk seng
sun 太阳 t'ái iāng
sunscreen 防晒油 huąng sái sng
swim v 游泳 iu iông

T

tampon 月经棉塞 guęq keng mį sąk
telephone n 电话 tiàng uę
temperature (weather) 温度 k'î ung
that 那个 héw kąi
they 他们 i nąng
(be) thirsty 口渴的 āu ta
this 这个 tsí kąi
throat 喉咙 âu
ticket 票 p'iò
time 时间 sį kang
tired 累的 hēq
tissues 纸巾 pǫq tsuá keng
today 今天 kim zēk
toilet 厕所 ts'eq sô
tomorrow 明天 má zēk
tonight 今晚 kim mē
tooth 牙齿 gę k'î
toothbrush 牙刷 gę suęq
toothpaste 牙膏 gę ko
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 ts'íu tiàng tâng
tour n 旅行 lî iu t'uāng
tourist office 游客信息中心 iu k'eq sêng sêng tong sim
towel 毛巾 tuą ęk keng
train n 火车 hué ts'ia
translate 翻译 huang ēk
travel agency 旅行社 lí kiąng siá
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lí iu tsing piò
trousers 裤子 k'ôu
twin-bed room 双床房 sang ts'ng pāng

U

underwear 内衣裤 lài sang k'ôu
urgent 紧急的 kéng kip

V

vacancy 空房 ù k'ong pāng
vegetable n 蔬菜 ts'āi
vegetarian a 吃素的 tsiąk tse
visa 签证 ts'iam tsêng

W

walk v 步行 kiāng
wallet 钱包 tsį to
wash (something) 洗 sôi
watch n 手表 ts'íu pio
water n 水 tsuí
we 我们 nāng
weekend 周末 tsiu muāk
west 西 sai
wheelchair 轮椅 lụng îng
when 当 … 时 kąi sį hąu
where 在哪里 tò tị kŏ
who 谁 tị tiāng
why 为什么 uį sim mǫq
wife 妻子 ts'ı tsêw/làu p'uâ pol/inf
window 窗户 t'eng
with 和 kąq
without 没有 bō
woman 妇女 hû nŋ̂/tsew niô pol/inf
write 写 siá

Y

yes 是 tuî
yesterday 昨天 tsau zēk
you 你/你们 lêw/nêng sg/pl

Dongbei Hua

TONES	86
ABOUT DONGBEI HUA	87
PRONUNCIATION	88
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	89
TIME & DATES	90
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	91
ACCOMMODATION	92
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	93
SIGHTSEEING	94
SHOPPING	95
MEETING PEOPLE	96
MAKING CONVERSATION	96
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	99
FAREWELLS	100
EATING OUT	100
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	103
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	104
ENGLISH–DONGBEI HUA DICTIONARY	105

tones

Dongbei Hua is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). In this chapter Dongbei Hua is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Dongbei Hua

Tucked up in the northeastern provinces of Liáoníng, Jílín and Hēilóngjiāng you'll encounter speakers of Dongbei Hua (dōong bây hwà 东北话), the northeastern dialect of Mandarin. It's spoken by around 100 million people and is very similar to the Běijīng dialect, which is the basis of Modern Standard Chinese. Dongbei Hua developed with the arrival of Han immigrants from the southern provinces who came to this corner abutting Russia and Korea in the early years of the 20th century. The dialect took on elements from Siberian and Manchurian languages as well as Korean. In the bustling industrial cities of the northeast, Dongbei Hua also has city-specific sub-dialects, so if you want to impress locals with your street-smart banter in Hā'ěrbīn, Shěnyáng and Chángchūn you'll have to be on your toes. Dongbei Hua is recognisable to Mandarin speakers for its distinctive accent and its lively and informal character, and if you're an aficionado of the Chinese comedy circuit you'll often hear it used by Chinese stand-up comedians.

dongbei hua



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	ch	**ch**eat
air	h**air**	d	**d**og
ao	M**ao**	f	**f**un
ay	p**ay**	g	**g**o
e	b**e**t	h	**h**at
ee	s**ee**	j	**j**ump
er	h**er** without the 'r'	k	**k**id
ew	similar to n**ew**, pronounced with rounded lips	l	**l**ot
i	h**i**t	m	**m**an
ir	g**ir**l with strong 'r'	n	**n**ot
o	l**o**w	ng	ri**ng**
oo	t**oo**l	p	**p**et
or	m**or**e	r	**r**un
u	c**u**t	s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	ca**ts**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	la**ds**

In this chapter, the Dongbei Hua pronunciation is given in green after each phrase.

For pronunciation of tones, see p86.

Some syllables are separated by a dot, and should be pronounced run together.
For example: 点儿 dyěn·er

essentials		
Yes.	是。	shìr
No.	不是。	bóo shìr
Please …	请 …	chĭng …
Hello.	你好。	née hăo
Goodbye.	拜拜。	bái bái
Thank you.	谢谢。	shyàir shyair
Excuse me. (to get past)	借光儿。	jyàir gwūng·er
Excuse me. (asking for directions or assistance)	帮个忙儿。	bāng gèr máng·er
Sorry.	不好意思。	bòo hăo yèe sir



language difficulties

Do you speak English?
你说英语不?　　nĕe shwōr yīng yĕw boo

Do you understand?
明白不?　　míng bài boo

I understand.
我明白。　　wŏr míng bai

I don't understand.
我不明白。　　wŏr bòo míng bai

I (don't) speak Dongbei Hua.
我(不)会说东北话。　　wŏr (bòo) hwày shwōr dōong bĕy hwà

Could you please …?	请你 …?	chĭng nĕe …
repeat that	再说一遍	zài shwōr yée byèn
speak more slowly	说慢点儿	shwōr mùn dyĕn·er

numbers					
0	零	líng	20	二十	èr shír
1	一	yēe	30	三十	sūn shír
2	二/两	èr/lyǎ	40	四十	sìr shír
3	三	sūn	50	五十	wǒo shír
4	四	sìr	60	六十	lyò shír
5	五	wǒo	70	七十	chēe shír
6	六	lyò	80	八十	bā shír
7	七	chēe	90	九十	jyǒ shír
8	八	bā	100	一百	yèe bǎi
9	九	jyǒ	1000	一千	yèe chyēn
10	十	shír	1,000,000	一百万	yèe bǎi wùn

time & dates

What time is it?	现在几点了？	shyèn zài jeé dyěn ler
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点。	(shír) dyěn
Quarter past (10).	(十)点十五分。	(shír) dyěn shír wǒo fērn
Half past (10).	(十)点半。	(shír) dyěn bùn
Quarter to (11). (literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)	(十)点四十五。	(shír) dyěn sìr shír wǒo

At what time (does it start)?
啥时候(开始)？ shá shír ho (kāi shǐ)

(It starts) At 10.
十点(开始)。 shír dyěn (kāi shǐ)

It's (18 October).
(十月十八号)。 (shír ywàir shír bā hào)

this …	这个 …	zày gè …
morning (after breakfast)	早上	zǎo sùng
morning (before lunch)	头午	tó wǒo
afternoon	下午	shyà wǒo
sunrise	日出	rìr chōo
sunset	日落	rìr lwòr

yesterday	昨天	zwór tyēn
today	今天	jīn tyēn
now	现在	syàn zài
tonight	今儿晚	jīn·er wǔn
tomorrow	明天	míng tyēn
spring	春天	chōon tyen
summer	夏天	shyà tyen
autumn	秋天	chyō tyen
winter	冬天	dōong tyen
Monday	礼拜一	lěe bài yēe
Tuesday	礼拜二	lěe bài èr
Wednesday	礼拜三	lěe bài sūn
Thursday	礼拜四	lěe bài sìr
Friday	礼拜五	lěe bài wǒo
Saturday	礼拜六	lěe bài lyò
Sunday	礼拜天	lěe bài tyēn
January	一月	yēe ywàir
February	二月	èr ywàir
March	三月	sūn ywàir
April	四月	sìr ywàir
May	五月	wǒo ywàir
June	六月	lyò ywàir
July	七月	chēe ywàir
August	八月	bā ywàir
September	九月	jyǒ ywàir
October	十月	shír ywàir
November	十一月	shír yīr ywàir
December	十二月	shír èr ywàir

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Hā'ěrbīn)?	这 … 到 (哈尔滨) 那疙瘩去吗？	zày … dào (hā èr bīn) nà gā der chèw ma
boat	船	tswún
bus	公交车	gōong jyāo tsēr
train	火车	hwǒr tsēr

Where's a/the …?	… 在哪儿疙瘩啊?	… zài nǎ·er gā der a
bank	银行	yín húng
place to change foreign money	换外币那疙瘩	hwùn wài bì nà gā der
post office	邮局	yó jéw

Is this the road to (Jílín)?
这是去(吉林)那疙瘩的路吗? — zày shìr chèw (jée lín) nà gā der der lòo mā

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮我指下它在地图上哪儿行不? — chĭng būng wŏr zĭr syà tā zài dèe tú sùng nă·er shíng boo

Is it walking distance?
走路能到吗? — zŏ lòo nérng dào ma

What's the address?	啥地址啊?	shá dèe zĭr a
How far is it?	多儿老远啊?	dwór·er lăo ywŭn a
How do I get there?	咋走啊?	ză zŏ a
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	wŭng zwŏr/yò gwăi
It's straight ahead.	一直往前走。	yèe zír wŭng chyén zŏ

It's …	在 …	zài …
behind …	… 的后头儿	… der hò to·er
in front of …	… 的前头儿	… der chyén to·er
near …	… 附近	fòo jìn
on the corner	拐角	gwăi jyăo
opposite …	… 的对面儿	… de dwày myèn·er
there	那疙瘩	nà gā der

accommodation

Where's a hotel?
哪儿疙瘩有酒店啊? — nă·er gā der yŏ jyŏ dyèn a

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你能推荐个便宜的地方住吗? — nĭ nérng twāy jyèn gèr pyén yèe der dèe fūng zòo ma

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你能推荐个好的地方住吗? — nĭ nérng twāy jyèn gèr hăo der dèe fūng zòo ma

I'd like to book a room.
我想订间房儿。 wǒr shyǎng dìng jyēn fúng·er

I have a reservation.
我有预订。 wǒr yǒ yèw dìng

Do you have a … room?	有没有 … 房间啊？	yǒ máy yǒ … fúng jyēn a
double (suite)	套房	tào fúng
single	单人间	dūn rérn jyēn
twin	双人房儿	shwūng rérn fúng·er

How much is it per night?
每晚多少钱？ mǎy wǔn dwór sǎo chyén

How much is it per person?
每人多少钱？ mǎy rérn dwór sǎo chyén

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
我想呆(三)天。 wǒr shyǎng dāi (sūn) tyēn

Could I have my key, please?
能不能把钥匙给我啊？ nérng bòo nérng bǎ yào sìr gǎy wǒr a

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我能多拿条(毛毯)吗？ wǒr nérng dwōr ná tyáo (máo tǎn) ma

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)坏了。 (kōong tyáo) hwài ler

What time is checkout?
啥时候退房啊？ shá shír ho twày fúng a

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿回我的 …	wǒr shyǎng ná hwáy wǒr der …
deposit	押金	yā jīn
passport	护照	hòo zào

banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪儿疙？	… zài nǎ·er gā
ATM	自动取款机	zìr dòong chêw kwǔn jēe
public phone	公用电话	gōong yòong dyèn hwà

Where's the local internet cafe?
跟前儿有网吧儿吗？ gērn chyěn·er yǒ wǔng bā·er ma

I'd like to …	我想 …	wǒr shyǔng …
get internet access	上网	sùng wǔng
use a printer	用打印机	yòong dǎ yìn jēe
use a scanner	用扫描仪	yòong sǎo myáo yée

What's your phone number?
你的电话号码是多少啊? něe der dyèn hwà hào mǎ sìr dwór sao a

The number is …
号码是 … hào mǎ sìr …

sightseeing

I'd like to see …	我想看 …	wǒr shyǔng kùn …
What's that?	那是啥啊?	nà sìr shá a
Can I take a photo?	我能拍照吗?	wǒr nérng pāi zào ma

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想去当地这疙瘩景点转转。 wǒr shyǔng chèw dūng dèe zày gā der jǐng dyěn zwèn zwèn

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想去人不多的地方转转。 wǒr shyǔng chèw rérn bòo dwōr der dèe fūng zwèn zwèn

How long is the tour?
这旅游一次多长时间啊? zày lèw yó yée chìr dwór tsáng shír jyēn a

sightseeing

Chángbái Shān	吉林长白山	jée lín tsúng bái sūn
Dàlián	辽宁大连	lyáo níng dà lyén
Mòhé in Hēilóngjiāng	黑龙江漠河北极村风景区	hāy lóong jyūng mòr hér bǎy jée chōon fērng jǐng chēw
Shěnyáng Imperial Palace	沈阳故宫	shěrn yúng gòo gōong
Sun Island Park in Hā'ěrbīn	哈尔滨太阳岛	hā ěr bīn tài yúng dǎo
Zhālóng Nature Reserve in Qíqíhā'ěr	齐齐哈尔扎龙自然保护区	chée chée hā ěr jā lóong zìr rún bǎo hòo chēw

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪儿疙?	… zài nǎ·er gā
camera shop	照相馆	zào shyùng gwǔn
market	市场	shìr tsǔng
souvenir shop	纪念品店儿	jèe nyèn pǐn dyèn·er
supermarket	超市儿	tsāo sìr·er

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?
哪儿能买到纪念品? nǎ·er nérng mǎi dào jèe nyèn pǐn

I'd like to buy …	我想买 …	wǒr shyǔng mǎi …
Can I look at it?	我能看看不?	wǒr nérng kùn kùn boo
How much is it?	多儿少钱?	dwór·er sǎo chyén
That's too expensive.	忒贵了。	tāy gwày ler



What's this made from?
这是啥做的? zày shìr shá zwòr der

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来。 chǐng bǎ jyà chyén syǎir syà lái

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱。 gǎy nèe (wǒo kwài) chyén

Do you accept credit cards?
你们收信用卡不? nèe mern sō shìn yòong kǎ boo

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单儿上有问题。 zùng dūn·er sùng yǒ wèrn tée

less	更少	gèrng sǎo
enough	够了	gò ler
more	更多	gèrng dwōr
bigger	大点儿	dà dyěn·er
smaller	小点儿	syǎo dyěn·er

meeting people

Hello.	你好。	née hǎo
Good morning.	早上好。	zǎo shung hǎo
Good evening.	晚上好。	wǔn shùng hǎo
Goodbye.	再见。	zài jyèn
Good night.	晚安。	wǔn ūn
Mr	先生	shyēn sherng
Mrs	女士	něwn sìr
Ms/Miss	小姐	shyǎo jyǎir
How are you?	你咋样啊？	něe zǎ yùng a
Fine. And you?	挺好。你呢？	tĭng hǎo, něe ner
What's your name?	你叫啥？	nĭr jyào sá
My name is …	我叫 …	wŏr jyào …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸儿会。	shìng·er hwày
This is my …	这是我的 …	zày sìr wŏr der …
brother	兄弟	shyōong dee
child	孩子	hái zir
daughter	闺女	gwāy newn
father	爹	dyaīr
friend	朋友	pérng yŏ
husband	丈夫	zùng foo
mother	妈	mā
partner (intimate)	对象	dwày shyàng
sister	姐妹儿	jĭe mày·er
son	儿子	ér zir
wife	媳妇儿	shée fern·er

making conversation

Do you live here?	你住这儿？	něe jòo jèr·er
Where are you going?	上哪儿去？	shùng nă·er chew
Do you like it here?	得意这儿吗？	dér yee jèr·er ma
I love it here.	我得意这儿。	wŏr dér yee jèr·er

Have you eaten?
吃了吗？ chīr ler ma

Are you here on holidays?
你在这儿旅游吗？ née zǎi jèr·er lěw yó ma

I'm here …	我在这儿 …	wór zǎi jèr·er …
for a holiday	旅游	lěw yó
on business	出差	chōo chāi
to study	留学	léw shwáir





How long are you here for?
你在这儿呆多久？ née zǎi jèr·er dāi dwór jyǒ

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我在这儿(四)个星期。 wór zǎi jèr·er (sir) gèr sīng chēe

Can I take a photo (of you)?
可以给(你)拍照吗？ kér yěe gáy (něe) pāi jào ma

Do you speak (Dongbei Hua)?
你说(东北话)吗? něe shwōr (dōong bǎy hwà) ma

What language do you speak at home?
你在家说啥话？ něe zài jyā shwōr shá hwà

What do you call this in (Dongbei Hua)?
这个用(东北话) zày gèr yòong (dōong bǎy hwà)
怎么说？ zěrn mor shwōr

What's this called?
这个叫啥？ zày gèr jyào shá

I'd like to learn some (Dongbei Hua).
我想学一些 wór syŭng shwáir yèe syāir
(东北话)。 (dōong bǎy hwà)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你介意我教你些 něe jyàir yèe wǒr jyāo něe syāir
英文吗？ yīng wérn ma

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗吗？ zày shìr dèe fūng fērng shóo ma

local talk

Great!	好！	hǎo
Hey!	最近咋样？	zwày jìn zǎ yùng
It's OK.	挺好的。	tíng hǎo der
Just a minute.	等一会儿。	dĕrng yèe hwăy·er
Just joking.	闹着玩儿。	nào jer wún·er
Maybe.	差不多。	chà bòo dwōr
No problem.	没问题。	máy wèrn tée
No way!	不可能！	bòo kĕr nérng
Sure, whatever.	行，行，行。	síng, síng, síng
That's enough!	够了，够了！	gò ler, gò ler

Where are you from?	你从哪儿来？	nĕe tsóong nă·er lái
I'm from …	我从 … 来。	wŏr tsóong … lái
Australia	澳大利亚	ào dà lèe yà
Canada	加拿大	jyā ná dà
England	英国	yīng gwór
New Zealand	新西兰	sīn sēe lún
the USA	美国	măy gwór
What's your occupation?	你干啥的啊？	nĕe gùn shá der a
I'm a/an …	我是 …	wŏr shìr …
businessperson	商人	shūng rérn
office worker	白领	bái lĭng
tradesperson	工匠	gōong jyùng
How old …?	… 多大了？	… dwōr dà ler
are you	你	nĕe
is your daughter	你闺女	nĕe gwāy newn
is your son	你儿子	nĕe ér zir
I'm … years old.	我 … 岁。	wŏr … shwày
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	tā/tā … shwày
Too old!	太老了！	tài lăo ler

I'm younger than I look.
我看上去年轻。 wŏr kùn shùng chèw nyún chīng

Are you married?
你结婚了吗？ nĕe jyaír hōon ler ma

I live with someone. 我和别人一起住。		wǒr hér byaír rérn yèe chěe jòo
I'm …	我 …	wǒr …
married	结婚了	jyaír hōon ler
single	单身	dūn shērn
Do you like …?	你得意 … 吗?	něe dér yèe … ma
I (don't) like …	我(不)得意 …	wǒr (bòo) dér yèe …
art	艺术	yèe shòo
film	电影	dyèn yǐng
music	音乐	yīn ywàir
reading	看书	kùn shōo
sport	运动	yòon dòong

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不) …	wǒr (bòo) …
Are you …?	你 … 吗?	něe … ma
cold	冷	lěrng
hot	热	rèr
hungry	饿	èr
thirsty	渴	kěr
tired	累	làY
I (don't) feel …	我(不)觉得 …	wǒr (bòo) jwáir der …
Do you feel …?	你觉得 … 吗?	něe jwáir der … ma
happy	高兴	gāo shìng
sad	不高兴	bòo gāo shìng
worried	着急	jáo jée
What do you think of it?	你觉得怎么样?	něe jwáir der jěrn mor yùng
It's …	它 …	tā …
awful	差劲	chà jìn
beautiful	漂亮	pyào lyùng
boring	很没劲	hěrn máy jìn
great	好	hǎo
interesting	很有意思	hěrn yǒ yèe sir
OK	还行	hái síng
strange	奇怪	chée gwài

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我就走了。 míng tyēn wǒr jyò zǒ ler

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰)，可以来找我。 yǒ jēe hwày lái (sōo gér lún) kér yěe lái jǎo wǒr

Keep in touch!
保持联系！ báo chír lyén see

Here's my (address).
这是我的(地址)。 zày shìr wǒr der (dèe zǐr)

What's your (email)?
你的(电子邮件儿)是啥? něe der (dyàn zǐr yó jyèn er) shìr shá

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	yée lòo píng ūn
Congratulations!	恭喜！	gōong shěe
Good luck!	祝你好运！	jòo něe hǎo yòon
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	shērng rìr kwài lèr
Happy New Year!	拜年了！	bài nyén ler



eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 该到哪里去？	… gāi dào nǎ lěe chèw
banquet	吃喜酒	chīr sěe jyǒ
celebration	庆贺	chìng hèr
cheap meal	吃得便宜一点的	chīr der pyén yee yèe dyěn der
local specialities	地方小吃	dèe fūng syǎo chīr
yum cha	喝茶	hēr chá

Can you recommend a …?	你能介绍一个 … 吗?	nĕe nérng jyài shào yée gèr … ma
bar	酒吧	jyŏ bā
cafe	咖啡厅	kā fāy tīng
dish	盘子	pán zir
noodle house	面馆儿	myèn gwŭn·er
restaurant	饭店	fùn dyèn
snack shop	小吃部	shyăo chīr bòo
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊儿	(hóon dòon) tūn·er
street vendor	街头小吃	jyāir tóu syăo chīr
teahouse	茶馆儿	chá gwŭn·er
I'd like (a/the) …	我要 …	wŏr yào …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	yèe zhūng (wŏo gèr rérn der) jwōr zir
bill	帐单儿	zùng dūn·er
drink list	酒水单儿	jyó shwăy dūn·er
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	yée gèr dèe fūng tèr sèr tsài
menu	菜单	tsài dūn
(non)smoking table	(不)抽烟的桌子	(bòo) chō yūn der jwōr zir

Are you still serving food?
你们还营业吗? nĕe mérn hái yíng yèr ma

What would you recommend?
有啥菜可以推荐的? yŏ shá tsài kér yĕe twāy jyèn der

What's in that dish?
这道菜用啥做的? zày dào tsài yòong shá jwòr der

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早饭)一般吃啥? (zăo fùn) yèe būn chīr shá

What's that called?	那个叫啥?	nà gèr jyào shá
I'll have that.	来一个吧。	lái yée gèr ba
I'd like it with …	多放一点 …	dwōr fùng yèe dyĕn …
I'd like it without …	别放 …	bái fùng …
chilli	辣椒	là jyāo
garlic	大蒜	dà swùn
MSG	味精	wày jīng
nuts	果仁	gwŏr rérn
oil	油	yó

I'd like …, please.	请给我 …	chǐng gáy wǒr …
one slice	一块	yée kwài
a piece	一份	yée fèrn
a sandwich	一个三明治	yée gèr sūn míng zìr
that one	那一个	nà yée gèr
two	两个	lyǔng gèr
This dish is …	这个菜 …	zày gèr tsài …
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tài) là
superb	相当好	syūng dūng hǎo
I love the local cuisine.	这个地方的菜相当不错。	zày gèr dèe fūng der tsài syūng dūng bóo tswòr
That was delicious!	真好吃!	jērn hǎo chīr
I'm full.	吃饱了。	chīr bǎo ler
breakfast	早饭	zǎo fùn
lunch	午饭	wǒo fùn
dinner	晚饭	wǔn fùn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jyǒ
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yǐn lyào
… water	… 水	… shwǎy
boiled	凉开水	lyúng kāi shwǎy
cold	凉	lyúng
still mineral	矿泉水	koo·ùng chwún shwǎy
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(yèe bāy) kā fāy …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(yèe bāy) chá …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	jyā (nyó nǎi)
without (sugar)	不带(糖)	bòo dài (túng)
black tea	红茶	hóong chá
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jéw hwā chá
green tea	绿茶	lèw chá
jasmine tea	花茶	hwā chá
oolong tea	乌龙茶	wōo lúng chá
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	shwān nǎi
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chérng) jīr
soft drink	汽水	chèe shwǎy
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	shwān máy tūng

a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	yèe … pée jyǒ
glass	杯	bāy
large bottle	大瓶儿	dà píng·er
small bottle	小瓶儿	syǎo píng·er
a shot of (whisky)	一瓶儿(威士忌)	yèe píng·er (wāy shìr jèe)
a bottle/glass	一瓶/杯	yèe píng/bāy
of … wine	… 葡萄酒	… póo táo jyǒ
red	红	hóong
white	白	bái
I'll buy you a drink.	我请客。	wǒr chǐng kèr
What would you like?	你要点啥?	nǐ yào dyěn shá
Cheers!	干!	gūn
I'm feeling drunk.	我有点醉了。	wǒr yǒ dyěn jwày ler

street eats

cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉儿	lyúng fěrn·er
corn on the cob	苞米	bāo měe
dumpling (fried)	煎饺子	jyēn jyǎo zir
dumpling (steamed)	蒸饺儿	jērng jyǎo·er
pork pie (small)	馅儿饼	syèn·er bǐng
steamed bread stuffed with meat	包子	bǎo zir
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	zòong zir





special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有没有素食? yǒ mày yǒ sòo shír

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能不能做一 nérng bòo nérng zwòr yée
个不放 … 的菜? gèr bóo fùng … der tsài

I'm allergic to …	我对 … 过敏。	wǒr dwày … gwòr mǐn
dairy produce	奶制品	nǎi jìr pǐn
eggs	鸡蛋	jēe dùn
meat	肉	rò
nuts	果仁儿	gwǒr rérn·er
seafood	海鲜	hǎi syēn

emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	jyò mìng
Go away!	走开！	zǒ kāi
Fire!	着火啦！	jáo hwǒr la
Watch out!	加点儿小心！	jyā dyěn·er syǎo sīn

Could you please help?
你能帮儿帮儿忙儿吗？ něe nérng būng·er būng·er múng·er ma

Can I use your phone?
我能借用你的电话用用吗？ wǒr nérng jyàir něe der dyèn hwà yòong yòong ma

Where's the police station?
派出所在哪儿？ pài chōo swǒr zài nǎ·er

I'm lost.
我迷路了。 wǒr mée lù ler

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪儿？ tsèr swǒr zài nǎ·er

Where's the nearest …?	最近的 … 在哪儿？	zwày jìn der … zài nǎ·er
dentist	牙医	yá yēe
doctor	医生	yēe shērng
hospital	医院	yēe ywùn
pharmacist	药店	yào dyèn

english–dongbei hua dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 意外 yèe wài
accident (traffic) 事故 shìr gòo
accommodation 住宿 zòo sòo
adaptor 适配器 sìr pày chèe
address n 地址 dèe zĭr
after ⋯ 之后 … zĭr hò
air conditioning 空调 kōong tyáo
airplane 飞机 fāy jēe
airport 机场 jēe tsŭng
alcohol 酒 jyŏ
all 所有的 swŏr yŏ der
allergy 过敏 gwòr mĭn
ambulance 救护车 jyò hòo tsēr
and 和 hér
ankle 脚踝 jyăo hwaí
antibiotics 抗生素 kùng sērng sòo
arm 手臂 sŏ bèe
ATM 自动取款机 zìr dòong chĕw kwŭn jēe

B

baby 婴儿 yīng-ér
back (of body) 后背 hò bày
backpack 背包儿 bāy bāo-er
bad 坏的 hwài der
bag 袋儿 dài-er
baggage 行李 shíng lee
bank 银行 yín húng
bar 酒吧 jyŏ bā
bathroom 浴室 yèw sìr
battery 电池 dyàn tsír
beautiful 漂亮的 pyào lyùng der
bed 床 tswúng
beer 啤酒 pée jyŏ
before ⋯ 前头 … chyén to
behind ⋯ 后头 … hò to
bicycle 自行车 zìr síng tsēr
big 大的 dà der
bill 帐单儿 zùng dūn-er
blanket 毛毯 máo tŭn
blood group 血型 swàir síng
boat 船 tswún
book (make a reservation) v 预订 yèw dìng
bottle 瓶儿 ping-er
boy 小男孩儿 shyăo nún hái-er
breakfast 早饭 zăo fùn
broken (out of order) 坏掉了 hwài dyào ler
bus 公交车 gōong jyāo tsēr
business 买卖 măi mai
buy v 买 măi

C

camera 照相机 zào syùng jēe
cancel 取消 chĕw syāo
car 汽车 chèe tsēr
cash n 现金 shyèn jīn
cell phone 手机 sŏ jēe
centre n 中心 zōong sīn
change (money) v 零钱儿 líng chyén-er
cheap 便宜的 pyén yèe der
check (bill) n 帐单儿 zùng dūn-er
check-in n 登记 dērng jèe
chest (body) 胸 syōong
children 孩子 hái zir
cigarette 烟 yūn
city 城市 tsérng shìr
clean a 干净的 gūn jìng der
closed 关门了 gwūn mérn ler
cold a 凉的 lyúng der
collect call 对方付费电话 dwày fūng fòo fày dyèn hwà
come 来 lái
computer 电脑 dyèn năo
condom 避孕套儿 bèe yòon tào-er
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yĭn shíng yŭn jìng
cook v 烹饪 pērng yìn
cost n 花费 hwā fày
credit card 信用卡 shìn yòong kă
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hwòr bèe dwày hwùn
customs (immigration) 海关 hăi gwūn

D

dangerous 危险的 wāy shyĕn der
date (time) 日期 rìr chēe
day 天 tyēn
delay v 延迟 yún chír

dentist 牙科医生 yá kèr yēe shērng
depart 出发 tsōo fā
diaper 尿布 nyào bòo
dinner 晚饭 wǔn fùn
dirty 埋汰 mái tai
disabled 残疾的 tsún jée der
discount v 打折儿 dă zér
doctor 大夫 dài foo
double bed 双人床 swūng yín tswúng
double room 双人房儿 swūng yín fúng-er
drink n 饮料 yĭn lyào
drive v 开车 kāi tsēr
drivers licence 驾照 jyà zào
drug (illicit) 毒品 dóo pĭn

E

ear 耳朵 ĕr dwor
east 东 dōong
eat 吃 chĭr
economy class 经济舱 jīng jèe tsūng
electricity 电 dyèn
email 电子邮件儿 dyèn zĭ yó jyèn-er
embassy 大使馆 dà sĭr gwŭn
emergency 紧急状况 jĭn jée chíng kwùng
English (language) 英语 yīng yĕw
evening 傍晚 bùng wŭn
exit n 出口 tsōo kŏ
expensive 贵 gwày
eye 眼睛 yŭn jing

F

far 远的 ywŭn der
fast 快的 kwài der
father 爸 bà
film (camera) 胶卷 jyāo jwŭn
finger 手指 sŏ zĭr
first-aid kit 急救箱 jée jyò syūng
first class 头等舱 tó dĕrng tsūng
fish n 鱼 yĕw
food 食物 sír wòo
foot 脚 jyāo
free (of charge) 免费的 myĕn fày der
friend 朋友 pérng yó
fruit 水果 săy gwŏr
full 饱的 băo der

G

gift 礼物 lèe wòo
girl 女孩儿 nĕw hái-er
glass (drinking) 杯子 bāy zir
glasses 眼镜 yŭn jing
go 去 chèw
good 好的 hăo der
guide n 导游 dăo yó

H

half n 一半 yée bùn
hand 手 shŏ
happy 高兴的 gāo shìng der
he 他 tā
head n 头 tó
heart 心 shīn
heavy 重的 zòong der
help 帮助 būng zòo
here 这旮瘩 zày gā da
high 高 gāo
highway 高速公路 gāo sòo gōong lòo
hike v 徒步旅行 tóo bòo lĕw shíng
holiday 假期 jyà chēe
homosexual 同性恋 tóong shìng lyèn
hospital 医院 yēe ywùn
hot 热乎 yàir hoo
hotel 酒店 jyŏ dyèn
(be) hungry 饿了 nèr ler
husband 丈夫 zùng fōo

I

I 我 wŏr
identification (card) 身份证 sērn fèrn zèrng
ill 生病 sērng bìng
important 重要的 zòong yào der
injury (harm) 侮辱 wŏo róo
injury (wound) 伤口 sūng kŏ
insurance 保险 băo shyĕn
internet 因特儿网 yīn tè-er wŭng
interpreter 翻译 fūn yèe

J

jewellery 珠宝 zōo bǎo
job 工作 gōong zwòr

K

key 钥匙 yào sìr
kilogram 公斤 gōong jīn
kitchen 厨房 tsóo fúng
knife 小刀 syǎo dāo

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 shěe yēe dyèn
lawyer 律师 lèw shīr
left (direction) 左 zwŏr
leg (body) 腿 twǎy
lesbian 女同 nĕw tóong
less 更少 gèrng sǎo
letter (mail) 信 shìn
light n 光 gwūng
like v 中意 zōong yèe
lock n 锁 swŏr
long 长的 chúng der
lost 遗失的 yée sīr der
love v 爱 ài
luggage 行李 síng lee
lunch 午饭 wŏo fùn

M

mail n 信 shìn
man 男人 nún yín
map 地图儿 dèe tú-er
market 市场 shìr tsŭng
matches 比赛 bèe sài
meat 肉 rò
medicine 药 yào
message 消息 shyāo shee
milk 牛奶 nyó nǎi
minute 分钟 fērn zōong
mobile phone 手机 sŏ jēe
money 钱 chyén
month 月份 ywài fern
morning 早上 zǎo sùng
mother 妈 mā
motorcycle 摩托车 mór twōr tsēr
mouth 嘴 zwǎy

N

name 名字 míng zìr
near 近 jìn
neck n 脖子 bór zir
new 新的 shīn der
newspaper 报纸 bào zhĭr
night 晚上 wŭn shùng
no (not at all) 不用 bóo yòong
no (not this) 不是 bóo shìr
noisy 嘈嘈 tsāo tsāo
nonsmoking 无烟区 wóo yūn chēw
north 北 bǎy
nose 鼻子 bée zir
now 现在 syèn zài
number 数 shòo

O

old (people) 老 lǎo
old (things) 旧 jyò
one-way ticket 单程票 dūn chérng pyào
open a 开着的 kāi jēr der
outside 外头 wài to

P

passport 护照 hòo zhào
pay v 付钱 fòo chyén
pharmacy 药店 yào dyèn
phonecard 电话卡 dyèn hwà kǎ
photo 照片 zhào pyēn
police 警察 jĭng chá
postcard 明信片 míng sìn pyèn
post office 邮局 yó jéw
pregnant 怀孕了 hwái yèwn ler
price n 价格 jyà gér

Q

quiet a 安静的 ūn jìng der

R

rain n 雨 yĕw
razor 剃须刀 tèe shēw dāo
receipt n 收据 shō jèw
refund n 赔钱 páy chyén
registered (mail) 注册 zhòo tsèr
rent v 出租 chōo zōo
repair v 维修 wáy shyō
reserve v 预订 yèw dìng
restaurant 餐馆 tsūn gwŭn
return (give back) 还 hwún
return (go back) 回去 hwáy chèw
return ticket 返程票 fŭn chérng pyào
right (direction) 右 yò
road 马路 mǎ lòo
room n 房间 fúng jyēn

S

safe a 安全的 ūn chwún der
sanitary napkin 卫生巾 wày shērng jīn
seat n 座位 zwòr wày
send 发送 fā sòong
sex (intercourse) 做爱 zwòr ài

sex (gender) 性别 sìng byáir
shampoo 洗发水 sée fà shwǎy
share (a dorm) 分享 fèn syǔng
she 她 tā
sheet (bed) 床单 chwúng dūn
shirt 衬衫 chèrn shūn
shoes 鞋 syáir
shop n 商店 shūng dyèn
short 短的 dwǔn der
shower n 冲凉 chōong lyúng
single room 单人间 dūn rérn jyēn
skin n 皮肤 pée fōo
skirt n 裙子 chóon zir
sleep v 睡觉 shwài jyào
slow 慢 mùn
small 小 syǎo
soap 香皂 syūng zào
some 一些 yèe syāir
soon 马上 mǎ shùng
south 南 nún
souvenir 纪念品 jèe nyèn pǐn
stamp 邮票 yó pyào
stand-by ticket 站票 zhùn pyào
station (train) 车站 chēr zùn
stomach 胃 wày
stop v 停止 tíng zǐr
stop (bus) n 公车站 gōong chēr zùn
street 街 jyāir
student 学生 swáir shērng
sun 太阳 tài yúng
sunscreen 防晒霜 fúng shài shwūn
swim v 游泳 yó yōong

T

tampon 棉球 myén chyó
telephone n 电话 dyèn hwà
temperature (weather) 气温 chèe wērn
that 那个 này gèr
they 他们 tā mern
(be) thirsty 渴了 kěr ler
this 这个 zày ger
throat 嗓子 sǔng zir
ticket 车票 chēr pyào
time 时间 shír jyēn
tired 累挺 lày ting
tissues 纸巾 jǐr jīn
today 今天 jīn tyēn
toilet 茅房 mào fúng
tomorrow 明天 míng tyēn
tonight 今儿晚 jīn-er wūn
tooth 牙齿 yá chǐr
toothbrush 牙刷 yá shwā
toothpaste 牙膏 yá gāo
torch (flashlight) 电棒儿 dyèn bùng-er
tour n 旅游 lěw yó
tourist office 旅游局 lěw yó jéw
towel 毛巾 máo jīn
train n 火车 hwǒr tsēr
translate 翻译 fūn yèe
travel agency 旅行社 lěw síng shèr
travellers cheque 旅游支票 lěw yó jīr pyào
trousers 裤子 kòo zir
twin-bed room 双人房 shwūng rérn fúng

U

underwear 内衣 này yēe
urgent 紧急 jǐn jée

V

vacancy 空缺 kòong chwāir
vegetable n 蔬菜 shōo tsài
vegetarian n 素食者 sòo shír jěr
visa 签证 chyēn jèrng

W

walk v 走道儿 zǒ dào-er
wallet 钱包儿 chyén bāo-er
wash (something) 洗 sée
watch n 手表 shǒ byǎo
water n 水 shwǎy
we 我们 wòr mérn
weekend 周末 zhōu mòr
west 西 sēe
wheelchair 轮椅 lóon yēe
when 啥时候 shá shír ho
where 哪 nǎ
who 谁 shwáy
why 为啥 wày shá
wife 媳妇儿 shée fern-er
window 窗户 chwūng hoo
with 带 dài
without 不带 bóo dài
woman 女人 nèwn rérn
write 写 syǎir

Y

yes 是 shìr
yesterday 昨天 zwór tyēn
you sg inf 你 nèe
you sg pol 您 nín
you pl 你们 nèe mern

Hakka

TONES	110
ABOUT HAKKA	111
PRONUNCIATION	112
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	113
TIME & DATES	114
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	115
ACCOMMODATION	116
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	117
SIGHTSEEING	117
SHOPPING	118
MEETING PEOPLE	119
MAKING CONVERSATION	120
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	122
FAREWELLS	123
EATING OUT	124
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	127
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	127
ENGLISH–HAKKA DICTIONARY	129

tones

Hakka is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). In this chapter Hakka is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Hakka

There are 34 million speakers of Hakka (kā gā wā 客家话) spread across southern China, with populations also in Malaysia, Indonesia, Singapore and Thailand. Originally from Hénán and Shānxī provinces, through the course of Chinese history the Hakka moved south, encountering Cantonese speakers. Their language has proved resolute, remaining similar to the languages of the Tang and Song dynasties of the 10th century. However, spoken in scattered regions and across difficult terrain, Hakka is believed to have absorbed elements of other languages, including the non-Sinitic She language, evolving into an estimated 30 dialects across south and southeast China and Taiwan. Most speakers are found in the Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn and Jiāngxī region, with Méixiàn, in northeast Guǎngdōng, considered the centre of 'standard' Hakka (represented in this chapter). It's a Sino-Tibetan language but isn't mutually intelligible with Mandarin or Cantonese. Enterprising, adventurous and occasionally revolutionary, Hakka speakers, such as the late Deng Xiaoping, have played an important role in broader Chinese and Southeast Asian history, rising to become military, business and political leaders.

hakka



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	ch	**ch**eat
air	l**air**	d	**d**og
ao	M**ao**	f	**f**un
ay	s**ay**	g	**g**o
e	b**e**t	h	**h**ot
ee	s**ee**	j	**j**ump
i	h**i**t	k	**k**it
o	g**o**	l	**l**ot
oo	t**oo**l	m	**m**an
or	m**or**e	n	**n**ot
oy	t**oy**	ng	ri**ng**
u	c**u**t	p	**p**et
		r	**r**un
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	c**ats**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	la**ds**

In this chapter, the Hakka pronunciation is given in purple after each phrase.

In Hakka, the sound ng (found in English at the end or in the middle of words, eg 'ringing') can appear at the start of words, or represent an entire word.

For pronunciation of tones, see p110.

Some syllables are separated by a dot, and should be pronounced run together.
For example: 月 ngi·ăir

essentials		
Yes./No.	是。/吾是。	hè/ng hè
Please …	请 …	chyŭng …
Hello.	你好。	ngée hao
Goodbye.	再见。	zwài jyèn
Thank you.	谢谢你。	chyă chyă ngée
Excuse me. (to get past)	借光。	jyà kwò
Excuse me. (asking for directions/assistance)	请问。	chyŭng mwèn
Sorry.	对吾助。	dwày ng chŏo

language difficulties

Do you speak English?	你讲不讲英语?	ngée gwŭng ng gwŭng yīng ngēe
Do you understand?	你明白吗?	ngée míng pā mā
I (don't) understand.	涯(不)明白。	yái (ng) míng pā
I (don't) speak Hakka.	涯(不)讲客家话。	yái (ng) gwŭng kă gā wā
Could you please …?	请你 …?	chyŭng ngée …
repeat that	再说一遍	zwài gwŭng yēe pyèn
speak more slowly	慢一点讲	mūn yēe dēe gwŭng

numbers					
0	零	lyúng	20	二十	ngèe shēe
1	一	yēe	30	三十	sūng shēe
2	二/两	ngèe/lyŭng	40	四十	sèe shēe
3	三	sūng	50	五十	ng shēe
4	四	sèe	60	六十	lyŏ shēe
5	五	ng	70	七十	chĕe shēe
6	六	lyŏ	80	八十	bāi shēe
7	七	chĕe	90	九十	jyŏ shēe
8	八	bāi	100	一百	yēe bā
9	九	jyŏ	1000	一千	yēe chyēn
10	十	shēe	1,000,000	一百万	yēe bā wùn

time & dates

What time is it?	今来几点钟?	jīn lái jěe dō dyǔng
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点钟。	(shēe) dyǔng
Quarter past (10).	(十)点十五分。	(shēe) dyǔng shēe ng fēn
Half past (10).	(十)点三十分。	(shēe) dyǔng sūng shēe fēn
Quarter to (11).	(十)点四十五分。	(shēe) dyǔng sèe shēe ng fēn
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)		
(It starts) At 10.	十点(开始)。	shēe dyǔng (kwāi shǐ)
It's (18 October).	(十月十八号)。	(shēe ngi-āir shēe bāi hǎo)
yesterday	昨不日	tsyō pōo ngēe
today	今日	jīn ngēe
now	今来	jīn lái
tonight	今日昂布	jīn ngēe àm pōo
tomorrow	天光日	tyēn kwōong ngēe
this …	这个 …	é kè …
morning (after breakfast)	早晨头	tsāo sén twǒo
morning (before lunch)	上布	shǔng tsòo
afternoon	下午	hā tsòo
sunrise	日出	ngēe tsōo
sunset	日落	ngēe lòo
spring	春天	tsūn tyēn
summer	夏天	hā tyēn
autumn	秋天	tsyō tyēn
winter	冬天	dōong tyēn
Monday	星期一	sīn kée yēe
Tuesday	星期二	sīn kée ngì
Wednesday	星期三	sīn kée sūng
Thursday	星期四	sīn kée sèe
Friday	星期五	sīn kée ng
Saturday	星期六	sīn kée lyò
Sunday	星期天	sīn kée tyēn

January	一月	yēe ngi·āir
February	二月	ngèe ngi·āir
March	三月	sūng ngi·āir
April	四月	sèe ngi·āir
May	五月	ng ngi·āir
June	六月	lyǒ ngi·āir
July	七月	chěe ngi·āir
August	八月	bāi ngi·āir
September	九月	jyǒ ngi·āir
October	十月	shēe ngi·āir
November	十一月	shēe yēe ngi·āir
December	十二月	shēe ngèe ngi·āir

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Méixiàn)?	这个 … 到 (梅县) 去吗?	é kè … dào (móy yèn) hèe mā
boat	船	shwún
bus	车	chā
train	火车	hwǒr chā
Where's a/the …?	… 在哪儿?	… tsōr lái lēe
bank	银行	ngyún hóong
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	wùn ôy bèe kè těe fôong
post office	邮局	yó kyō

Is this the road to (Méixiàn)?
列系去 (梅县) 的路吗? é hè dào (móy yèn) gè lòo mā

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮涯寻它在 chyǔng bōong yái chín jée tsōr
地图上的位置。 těe tóo shùng kè wìr zěe

Is it walking distance?
系不系布行的其离? hè ng hè pǒo húng gè kēe lée

What's the address?	什么地址?	syēn mō těe jěe
How far is it?	有多远?	yō jěe ywūn
How do I get there?	怎呢行?	nyǔng nē húng
Turn left/right.	尚左/右。	shùng zǒr/yǒ

It's straight ahead.	一直尚前。	yēe chēe shùng chyén
It's …	错 …	tsôr …
behind …	… 后面	… hǒ myèn
in front of …	… 前面	… chyén myèn
near …	… 附近	… fòo kwīm
on the corner	转角	zwǔn wūn
opposite …	… 对面	… dwày myèn
there	那里	kái lēe

accommodation

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你能推荐一个便宜的地方住吗? — ngée nyén twāy jyùng yēe kè pyén yēe kè tǐ fōong chǒo mā

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你能推荐一个好的地方住吗? — ngée nyén twāy jyùng yēe kè hǎo kè tǐ fōong chǒo mā

Where's a guest house?	来里有宾馆?	lái lēe yō bēen gwǔn
Where's a hotel?	来里酒店?	lái lēe jyǒ dyùng
I'd like to book a room.	涯想订房间。	yái syǔng dùng fóong gūn
I have a reservation.	涯有预订。	yái yō yèe dùng
Do you have a … room?	有毛有 … 房?	yō máo yō … fóong
double (suite)	套	tào
single	单人	dūn ryén
twin	标准	pyāo zwǔng

How much is it per night/person?
每天/人多少钱? — mēe tyēn/ryén jǐ dwōr chyén

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
涯想住(三)天。 — yái syǔng chǒo (sūng) tyēn

Could I have my key, please?
能不能给涯房间钥匙? — nyén ng nyén bwēn yái fóong gūn swǒr shée

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
涯能多拿一条(毛毯)吗? — yái nyén dwōr nā yēe tyáo (māo tūn) mā

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
（空调）有毛病。 (kōong tyáo) yō māo pyùng

What time is checkout?
几点钟退房? jǐ dyǔng jōong twày fóong

Could I have my …, please?	涯想拿回 … 涯的	yái syǔng nā jwǔn … yái kè …
deposit	押金	yā jīn
passport	护照	fòo jào

banking & communications

Where's the local internet cafe?
附近有网吧吗? fòo kwīm yō mwūng bā mā

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪儿?	… tsōr lái lêe
ATM	自动取款机	zēe tòong chěe kwǔn jēe
public phone	公用电话	gōong yǒong tyèn wā

I'd like to …	涯想 …	yái syǔng …
get internet access	上网	shūng mwūng
use a printer/scanner	打印/扫描	dǎ yìn/sǎo myáo

What's your phone number?
您的电话号码是多少? ngée kè tyèn wā hǎo mā hè jěe dwōr

The number is …
号码是 … hǎo mā hè …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
涯想看一些当体景色。 yái syǔng kwùn yēe dēe dūng tēe jǐm sèe

I'd like to see …	涯想看 …	yái syǔng kwùn …
What's that?	那是麻个?	kái hè má kè
Can I take a photo?	涯能拍照吗?	yái nyén pā jyào mā

sightseeing		
Hua Cheng	华城	fá shōon
Ling-Guang Temple	灵光寺	líng kwūn sèe
Mei Zhou	梅洲	móy jō
Thousand-Buddha Pagoda	千佛塔	chyēn fō tǎ
Wu Hua	五华	ng fá
Zi Jin	紫金	tsēe jīn

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
涯想去看人少的景点。 yái syǔng hèe kwùn nyén shǎo gè jǐm sèe

How long is the tour?
向导游要多长时间? shùng dǎo yó òy jěe chóong shée jyūng

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪儿?	… tsōr lái lēe
camera shop	照相店	jào syùng dyùng
market	市场	shèe chúng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	jèe nyùn pǐm dyùng
supermarket	超市	chāo shèe

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?
涯可以在来里买地方纪念品? yái kwǒr yēe tswōr lái lēe māi tèe fōong jèe nyùn pǐm

What's this made from?
这个是用麻个做的? é kè hè yòong má kè zwòr gé

I'd like to buy …	涯想买 …	yái syǔng māi …
Can I look at it?	涯能看看吗?	yái nyén kwùn kwùn mā
How much is it?	多少钱?	jěe dwōr chyén
That's too expensive.	太贵。	tài kwày

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来。 chyǔng bǎ gà chyén syǎ hā lái

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱。 bwēn ngée (ng kwày) chyén

Do you accept credit cards?
你们收信用卡吗? ngée mwēn shwāy sìn yòong ká mā

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单上有问题。 jùng dūn yō mwèn tée

less	少	shǎo
enough	够	gò
more	多	dwōr
bigger	大一点	tà yēe dēe
smaller	小一点	syè yēe dēe



meeting people

Hello.	你好。	ngée hǎo
Good morning.	早上好。	tsāo shàng hǎo
Good afternoon.	下午好。	hā ng hǎo
Good evening.	晚上好。	mān shàng hǎo
Goodbye.	再见。	zwài jyèn
Good night.	晚安。	wǔn ūn
Mr	先生	syēn sūng
Mrs	女士	ngěe sèe
Ms/Miss	小姐	syǎo jyǎ
How are you?	你好吗?	ngée hǎo mā
Fine. And you?	好。你呢?	hǎo, ngée nē

What's your name?
你很措麻个名? ngée hēn tswōr má kè myúng

My name is …
涯很措 … yái hēn tswōr …

I'm pleased to meet you.
幸会。 hèn hwāy

This is my …	这是涯的 …	é hè yái kè …
brother	兄弟	shyōong tĕe
child	小孩子	syè ryén nēe
daughter	妹子	mòy tsĕe
father	爷俄	yá é
friend	朋友	pyén yō
husband	老公	lăo gōong
mother	母亲	ōy jè
partner (intimate)	对象	dwày shyùng
sister	姐妹	jyă mòy
son	莱子	lài tsĕe
wife	老婆	lăo pó





making conversation

Do you live here?	你住列里吗?	ngée chŏo lyáir lēe mā
Where are you going?	上来里?	shùng lái lēe
Do you like it here?	中意列里吗?	jòong yèe lyáir lēe mā
I love it here.	涯很中意这里。	yái hĕn jòong yèe lyáir lēe
Have you eaten?	吃过饭吗?	shēe gò fŭn mā
Are you here on holiday?	你来来里旅游吗?	ngée lái lyáir lēe lēe jó mā
I'm here …	涯来来里 …	yái lái lyáir lēe …
for a holiday	旅游	lēe jó
on business	出差	chōo tsāi
to study	留货	lyó hō

How long are you here for?
你在这里住几久?
ngée tsai lyáir lēe chŏo jĕe jŏ

I'm here for (four) weeks.
涯住(四)个星期。
yái chŏo (sèe) kè sīn kée

Can I take a photo (of you)?
涯可不可以拍(你)吗?
yái kwŏr bù kwŏr yēe pā (ngée) mā

local talk

Great!	真好！	zēn hǎo
Hey!	劳驾！	láo gà
It's OK.	毛问题。	máo mwèn tī
Just a minute.	等下。	děn hà
Just joking.	开玩笑。	kwāi yún syào
Maybe.	有可能。	yō kwǒr nyén
No problem.	没事。	máo sèe
No way!	不可能！	máo kwǒr nyén
Sure, whatever.	得, 得, 得。	dyāir dyāir dyāir
That's enough!	够啦！	gìr-ò lā

Do you speak (Hakka)?
你讲(客家话)吗? ngée gwǔng (kā gā wā) mā

What language do you speak at home?
你在屋喀讲麻个话? ngée tswōr kā gwǔng má gè wā

What do you call this in (Hakka)?
这个用(客家话) é kè yōong (kā gā wā)
酿般讲? nyén būn gwǔng

What's this called?
这个很措麻个名? é kè hēn tswōr má kè myúng

I'd like to learn some (Hakka).
我想学一些 yái syǔng hō yēe dēe
(客家话)。 (kā gā wā)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你想涯教你一些 ngée syǔng yái jyāo ngée yēe dēe
英语吗? yīng ngēe mā

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗吗? é hè těe fōong fōon sōo mā

Where are you from? 你从哪儿来? ngée chyóong lái lēe lái

I'm from … 涯从 … 来。 yái chyóong … lái

Australia	澳大利亚	ào tài lèe à
Canada	加拿大	gā ná tài
England	英国	yīng gē
New Zealand	新西兰	sīn sī lán
the USA	美国	mī gē

What's your occupation?	你做麻个工作?	ngée zwòr má gè gōong zwōr
I'm a/an …	涯系 …	yái hè …
businessperson	商人	shūng nyén
office worker	白领	pā lyēn
tradesperson	贸易商	myào yēe shūng
How old …?	… 几大?	… jěe tāi
are you	你	ngée
is your daughter	你的女儿	ngée gè mòy tsěe
is your son	你的儿子	ngée gè lài tsěe
I'm … years old.	涯 … 岁。	yái … swòy
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	jée … swòy
I'm younger than I look.	涯还细。	yái hún sèe
Are you married?	你结婚了吗?	ngée gě hōon lē mā
I live with someone.	涯有阵。	yái yō chèn
Do you have a family of your own?	你成家了吗?	ngée shyén gā lē mā
I'm …	涯 …	yái …
married	结了婚	gě dēe hōon
single	单身	dūn shyēn
Do you like …?	你中意 … 吗?	ngée jòong yèe … mā
I (don't) like …	涯(吾)中意 …	yái (ng) jòong yèe …
art	艺术	ngèe sōo
film	看电影	kwùn tyēn yŭng
music	听音乐	tùng yīng lwōr
reading	看书	kwùn shōo
sport	体育	tǐ yōo

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	涯(吾) …	yái (ng) …
Are you …?	你 … 吗?	ngée … mā
cold	冷	lūm
hot	热	ngè
hungry	饿	ngò
thirsty	渴	hwŏr
tired	累	kwăy

I (don't) feel …	涯(不)觉得 …	yái (ng) kwór dē …
Do you feel …?	你觉得 … 吗?	ngée kwór dē … mā
happy	欢喜	hwūn shēe
sad	不欢喜	ng hwūn shēe
worried	担心	dūng sīng
What do you think of it?	你觉得酿办?	ngée kwór dē nyěn būn
It's …	它 …	jée …
awful	好差劲	hǎo tsā jìn
beautiful	好美	hǎo mī
boring	好无聊	hǎo wú lyáo
great	真好	zēn hǎo
interesting	好有意思	hǎo yō yèe sēe
OK	还可以	hái kwǒr yēe
strange	奇怪	kí gwày





farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
天光布涯要走。 yái tyēn kwōong ngēe òy zwǒr

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), yō jī hwày lái (sū gē lán)
可以来找涯。 kwǒr yēe lái chyín yái

Keep in touch!	保持联络!	bǎo chée lyén lwōr
Here's my (address).	给你涯的(地址)。	bwūn ngée yái gè (tēe jēe)
What's your (email)?	你的(电邮)是麻个?	ngée gè (tyěn yó) hè má gè

well-wishing

Bon voyage!	一路平安!	yēe lù pín ūn
Congratulations!	恭喜, 恭喜!	gōong shēe, gōong shēe
Good luck!	祝你好运!	jòo ngée hǎo yòon
Happy birthday!	生日快乐!	shūn ngèe kwày lwò
Happy New Year!	新年好!	sīn nyén hǎo

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	应该到. . . 去?	yīng gwāy dào … hèe
banquet	办宴会	pùn yùn hwày
celebration	举行庆祝会	jěe húng chìng jōo hwày
cheap meal	吃便宜一点	shēe pyén yēe yēe dēe
local specialities	地方小吃	těe fōong syǎo shēe
yum cha	饮茶	yím tsá
Can you recommend a …?	你可以推荐 一个 … 吗?	ngée kwǒr yēe twāy jyùng yēe kè … mā
bar	酒吧	jyǒ bā
cafe	咖啡厅	kā fī tyūng
dish	盘	pún
noodle house	面馆	myèn kwǔn
restaurant	饭店	fǔn dyùng
snack shop	小吃店	syǎo shēe dyùng
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊	(wóon tōon) tūn
street vendor	街头小吃	gwāy tyó syǎo shēe
teahouse	茶馆	tsá gwǔn
I'd like (a/the) …	涯要 …	yái òy …
table for (five)	一个(五位)台	yēe kè (ng wì) tái
bill	帐单	jùng dūn
drink list	酒水单	jyǒ shwǎy dūn
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	yēe kè těe fōong tì sèe chòy
menu	菜单	chòy dūn
(non)smoking table	(毛)吃烟的台	(máo) shēe yōon kè tái

Are you still serving food?
你们还营业吗? ngée mwén hái yúng nyā mā

What would you recommend?
有麻个菜可以推荐的? yō má gè chòy kwǒr yēe twāy jyùng gé

What's in that dish?
这个菜用麻个做的? é kè chòy yòong má gè zwòr gé

What's that called?
那个很错麻个？ é kè hēn tswōr má gè

I'll have that.
来一个。 lái yēe kè

I'd like it with …	多放一点 …	dwōr fòon yēe dēe …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	ng òy fòon …
chilli	辣椒	lāi jyāo
garlic	大蒜	tài swùn
MSG	味精	mī jīm
nuts	果仁	gwǒ ním
oil	油	yó
I'd like …, please.	请给涯 …	chyǔng bwēn yái …
one slice	一块	yēe kwày
a piece	一份	yēe fwùn
that one	那一个	yái yēe kè
two	两个	lyǔng kè
This dish is …	这个菜 …	é kè chòy …
(too) spicy	(太) 辣	(tài) lāi
superb	好吃	hǎo shēe





That was delicious!
真好吃！ zēn hǎo shēe

I'm full.
吃饱啦。 shēe bǎo lā

breakfast	早饭	zǎo fūn
lunch	午饭	ng fūn
dinner	晚饭	mwūn fūn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jyǒ
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yǐm lyào

… water	… 水	… shwǎy
boiled	必	bì
cold	凉开	lyǔng
sparkling mineral	矿泉汽	kwòon chwún chèe
still mineral	矿泉	kwòon chwún
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯) 咖啡 …	(yēe bwāy) kā fī …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯) 茶 …	(yēe bwāy) tsá …
with (milk)	加 (牛念)	gā (nyó nyèn)
without (sugar)	不加 (糖)	ng gā (tóon)
black tea	红茶	hwóon tsá
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	chyó fā tsá
green tea	绿茶	lyō tsá
jasmine tea	花茶	fā tsá
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	swūn nāi
lychee juice	荔枝汁	lài chēe zēe
(orange) juice	(橙) 汁	(chúng) zēe
soft drink	汽水	chèe shwǎy
sour plum drink	酸梅汁	swūn móy zēe
a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	yēe … pée jyǒ
glass	杯	bwāy
large bottle	大瓶	tài pyén
small bottle	小瓶	sèe pyén
a shot of (whisky)	一樽 (威士忌)	yēe zōon (wī sēe jēe)
a bottle/glass of … wine	一瓶/杯 … 葡萄酒	yēe pyén/bwāy … pú tāo jyǒ
red	红	fóon
white	白	pā

I'll buy you a drink.
涯请客。 yái chyǔng kè

What would you like?
你想要麻个? ngée syǔng òy má gè

Cheers!
干杯! gwūn bī

I'm feeling drunk.
涯有点醉。 yái yō dēe zwày

street eats		
bun (steamed)	包子	bāo lēe
cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉	lyúng fwùn
corn on the cob	包苏	bāo syǒo
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	jyáo lēe
flat bread with sesame seeds	烧饼	shāo byūn
pork pie	肉饼	nyǒ byūn
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	zòong lēe
wonton soup	馄饨	wóon tōon



special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有毛有素食食品？ yō máo yō sòo shée shée pǐm

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能不能做一个不放 … 的菜？ nyén ng nyén zwòr yēe kè ng fòon … gè chòy

I'm allergic to …	涯对 … 过敏。	yái dwày … gwòr myěn
dairy produce	奶制品	năi zèe pǐm
eggs	鸡蛋	gāi chōong
meat	肉	nyǒ
nuts	果仁	gwǒ ním
seafood	海鲜	hăi syēn

emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	jyò myèn
Go away!	走开！	zwǒr kwāy
Fire!	着火啦！	chōr hǒ lā

Watch out!	小心！	syǎo sīm
Could you please help?		
你能帮涯吗？		ngée nyén bōong yái mā
Can I use your phone?		
涯能借用你的电话吗？		yái nyén jyà yòong ngée gè tyèn wǎ mā
I'm lost.		
涯迷了路。		yái mí lyǎo lòo
Where are the toilets?		
厕所在哪儿？		tsèe swǒr tswōr lái lēe
Where's the police station?		
派出所在哪里？		pài chōo swǒr tswōr lái lēe
Where's the nearest …?	最近的 …在哪儿？	zwày kǐm gè …tswôr lái lēe
dentist	牙医	ngá yēe
doctor	医生	yēe sūm
hospital	医院	yēe ywùn
pharmacist	药房	yōr fóon

english–hakka dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 厄运 ò yöon
accident (traffic) 意外 yèe òy
accommodation 食宿 shêe sôo
adaptor 插座 tsā tswôr
address n 地址 têe jêe
after 之后 jêe hô
air conditioning 空调 kôong tyáo
airplane 飞机 fêe jêe
airport 飞机场 fêe jêe chúng
alcohol 酒 jyô
all 所有 swôr yô
allergy 过敏 gwòr myên
ambulance 救护车 jyô hòo chā
and 和 hó
ankle 脚曾 tjyô zūng
antibiotics 抗生素 kwòong sūm sòo
arm 穷 kyóong
ATM 自动取款机 zēe tòong chêe kwŭn jêe

B

baby 哦亚里 ô ngá lêe
back (of body) 背囊 bòy nóong
backpack 背包 bòy bāo
bad 坏 fāi
bag 包 bāo
baggage 行李 húng lêe
bank 银行 ngyún hóong
bar 酒吧 jyô bā
bathroom 洗手间 sĕr shô gūn
battery 电池 tyên chée
beautiful 靓 lyùng
bed 床 chóong
beer 啤酒 pée jyô
before 前面 chyén myèn
behind 后面 hô myèn
bicycle 单车 dūn chā
big 大 tài
bill 帐单 jùng dūn
blanket 毛毯 māo tūn
blood group 血型 shyăir shíng
boat 船 shwún
book (make a reservation) v 预定 yèe dùng
bottle 瓶 pyén
boy 攘子 núng tsăi
brakes (car) 刹车 tsăi chā
breakfast 早饭 zăo fūn
broken (out of order) 坏 fāi
bus 车 chā
business 商务 shūng wòo
buy v 买 māi

C

camera 照相机 jào syùng jêe
cancel 取消 chêe syāo
car 车 chā
cash n 现金 syŭm jēen
cash (a cheque) v 兑现 dwày syŭm
cell phone 手机 syô jêe
centre n 中心 jōong sīm
change (money) v 兑换 dwày wùn
cheap 便宜 pyén yêe
check (bill) 帐单 jùng dūn
check-in n 登记 dēn jêe
chest (body) 胸脯 shyōong póo
children 小孩子 syè ryén nêe
cigarette 烟 yōon
city 城市 shúng shèe
clean a 干净 gwūn chyùng
closed 关 gūn
cold a 冷 lūm
collect call 向受话者收费的电话 shùng syò wà jă syô fèe gè tyên wā
come 来 lái
computer 电脑 tyên nāo
condom 皮孕套 pèe ywùn tào
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yĭm shím ūn jyèm
cook v 煮 chôo
cost n 值 chêe
credit card 信用卡 sìn yòong ká
currency exchange 外币兑换 òy bèe dwày wùn
customs (immigration) 海关 hwăy gwūn

D

dangerous 危险 wée shŭng
date (time) 日期 ngèe kêe

day 天 tyēn
delay v 推迟 twāy chée
dentist 牙医 ngá yēe
depart 出发 chōo fāi
diaper 尿布 ngyào bòo
dinner 晚饭 mwūn fūn
direct a 直接 chēe jyā
dirty 奈 nài
disabled 残废 chún fèe
discount v 打折 dǎ jē
doctor 医生 yēe sūm
double bed 双人床 sōong ryén chóong
double room 双人房 sōong ryén fóong
drink n 饮料 yím lyào
drive v 开 kwāy
driving licence 驾照 gà jyào
drug (illicit) 毒品 tōo pǐm

E

ear 拟多 ngēe dwōr
east 东 dōon
eat 吃 shēe
economy class 经济舱 jīm jèe tsūng
electricity 电 tyēn
elevator 电梯 tyēn twōy
email 电邮 tyēn yó
embassy 大使馆 tāi sēe gwún
emergency 急症 jī zyūn
English (language) 英语 yīng ngēe
evening 晚上 mān shàng
exit n 出口 chōo kwōr
expensive 贵 kwày
eye 眼金 ngwūn jīm

F

far 远 ywūn
fast 几乎 jēe hōo
father 爷俄 yá é
film (camera) 录像 lōo syùng
finger 手指 sōr jēe
first-aid kit 急救箱 jī jyò syūng
first class 头等舱 tóo dēm tsūng
fish n 吾 ng
food 食物 shēe wōo
foot 脚 kjyāo
free (of charge) 免费 myūn fì
friend 朋友 pyén yō
fruit 水果 shwāy gwǒ
full 饱 bǎo

G

gift 礼物 lī mwōo
girl 妹子人 mòy tsēe ryén
glass (drinking) 杯 bwāy
glasses 眼剑 ngwūn jyùm
go 去 hèe
good 好 hǎo
guide n 导游 dǎo yó

H

half n 一半 yēe bùn
hand 手 shwōr
happy 欢喜 hwūn shēe
he 几 jée
head n 头 twór
heart 心 sīm
heavy 重 chōong
help 帮助 bōong chòo
here 列里 lyáir lēe
high 高 gāo
highway 高速公路 gāo sōo gōong lòo
hike v 布行 pòo húng
holiday 节日 jyē ngēe
homosexual 同性恋 tóong sìm lyèn
hospital 医院 yēe ywún
hot 热 ngè
hotel 酒店 jyǒ dyùng
(be) hungry 饿 ngò
husband 老公 lǎo gōong

I

I 涯 yái
identification (card) 身份 shēm fwùn
ill 病 pyúng
important 重要 chōong yào
injury (harm) 伤害 shūng hài
injury (wound) 伤口 shūng kwǒo
insurance 保险 bǎo shūng
internet 网 mwūng
interpreter 口译 kwǒo yī

J

jewellery 宝贝 bǎo bì
job 工作 gōong zwòr

K

key 琐石 swǒr shée
kilogram 公斤 gōong jīm

kitchen 厨房 chóo fóon
knife 刀 dăo

L

laundry (place) 洗衣房 sĭ yēe fóon
lawyer 律师 lwày sī
left (direction) 左 zòr
leg (body) 腿 twăy
lesbian 女同性恋 ngĭr tóong sìm lyèn
less 少 shăo
letter (mail) 信 sìm
light n 灯 dēm
like v 中意 jòong yèe
lock n 锁 swŏr
long 长 chóong
lost 丢失 dwāy shēe
love v 爱 òy
luggage 行李 húng lĭ
lunch 午饭 ng fūn

M

mail n 信 sìm
man 人 ryén
map 地图 tēe tóo
market 市场 shèe chúng
matches 配对 pwày dwày
meat 肉 nyò
medicine 药 yòr
message 信息 sìm sī
milk 牛念 nyó nyèn
minute 分钟 fwūn jōong
mobile phone 手机 syŏ jēe
money 钱 chyén
month 月 ngi-āir
morning 早晨头 tsăo sén twŏo
mother 母亲 ŏy jè
motorcycle 电动车 tyèn dòong chā
mouth 嘴 jwòy

N

name 名 myúng
near 附近 fòo kwīm
neck n 江津 jyūng jīm
new 新的 sīm gè
newspaper 新闻 sīm wún
night 昂布晨 àm pōo sén
no (not at all) 吾 ng
no (not this) 吾是 ng hè
noisy 吵 tsăo
nonsmoking 毛吃烟的 máo shēe yōon kè
north 北 bĕ
nose 啤工 pī gōong
now 今来 jīn lái
number 号码 hăo mă

O

old (people) 老 lăo
old (things) 旧 chyŏ
one-way ticket 单程票 dūn tsún pyào
open a 开 kwāy
outside 外面 ngòy myùn

P

passport 护照 fòo jào
pay v 付钱 fòo chyén
pharmacy 药房 yŏr fóon
phonecard 电话卡 tyèn wā kā
photo 照片 jào pyēn
police 警察 jīm tsăi
postcard 明信片 míng sìm pyēn
post office 邮局 yó kyŏ
pregnant 有养 yŏ yōong
price n 价钱 gà chyén

Q

quiet a 安静 ūn chìm

R

rain n 雨 yí
razor 剃刀 tèe dāo
receipt n 收据 sōr jì
refund n 本还 būn wún
registered (mail) 注册的 jòo tsā gè
rent v 租 tsōo
repair v 修 syō
reserve v 预订 yèe dùng
restaurant 饭店 fūn dyùng
return (give back) 给回 būn fée
return (go back) 回来 fí lóy
return ticket 来回票 lóy fée pyào
right (direction) 右 yò
road 路 lòo
room n 房间 fóong gūn

S

safe a 安全 ūn chyén
sanitary napkin 卫生巾 wĕe sūm jīm
seat n 座位 tswŏr wèe
send 寄 jèe

sex (intercourse) 性交 sìm jyāo
sex (gender) 性别 sìm pyé
shampoo 洗发水 sěe fā shwǎy
share (a dorm) 共用 gwōon yòong
she 她 jée
sheet (bed) 床单 chóong dūn
shirt 衬衫 chùn sūng
shoes 鞋 hái
shop n 商店 shùng dyùng
short 短 dwǔn
shower n 冲凉 tsōon lyúng
single room 单人房 dūn ryén fóong
skin n 皮肤 pí fōo
skirt n 裙 kwóon
sleep v 睡目 shwǎy mòo
slow 慢 mùn
small 细 sèe
soap 翻甘 fūn gūn
some 一些 yēe syā
soon 马上 mā shùng
south 南 nún
souvenir 纪念品 jèe nyùn pǐm
stamp 邮票 yó pyào
stand-by ticket 补票 bǒo pyào
station (train) 车站 chā chùng
stomach 胃 wèe
stop v 停 tíng
stop (bus) n 汽车站 chèe chā chùng
street 街道 gāi tào
student 学生 hō sām
sun 日头 ngēe tóo
sunscreen 防晒油 fóong sài yó
swim v 游泳 yó yòong

T

tampon 棉塞 myén sāi
telephone n 电话 tyèn wā
temperature (weather) 温度 wūn tòo
that 来个 lyáir kè
they 几豆 jée dwōo
(be) thirsty 渴 hwōr
this 这个 é kè
throat 喉咙 hó lōong
ticket 票 pyào
time 时间 shée jyūng
tired 累 kwǎy
tissues 事 sée
today 今日 jīn ngēe
toilet 厕所 tsèe swǒr
tomorrow 天光日 tyēn kwōong ngēe
tonight 今日昂布 jīn ngēe àm pōo
tooth 牙齿 ngá chēe
toothbrush 牙刷 ngá swōr
toothpaste 牙膏 ngá gāo
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 shǒ tyèn tōong
tour n 向导游 shùng dǎo yó
tourist office 旅行局 lǐ húng kyǒ
towel 毛巾 mào jīm
train n 火车 hwǒr chā
translate 翻译 fūn yī
travel agency 旅行社 lǐ húng shā
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lǐ húng jēe pyào
trousers 裤 fōo
twin-bed room 标准房 pyāo zwūng fóong

U

underwear 内衣 nòy yēe
urgent 紧急 jím jī

V

vacancy 空闲 kòong hún
vegetable n 蔬菜 swōr tsài
vegetarian a 素食 sòo shée
visa 签证 chyūng zèm

W

walk v 行 húng
wallet 钱包 chyén bāo
wash (something) 洗 sē
watch n 手表 shǒ byāo
water n 水 shwǎy
we 我们 ō mwūn
weekend 周末 jō māi
west 西 sī
wheelchair 轮椅 lóon yēe
when 几时 jēe shée
where 来里 lái lēe
who 莱萨 lái sá
why 为何 wèe hé
wife 老婆 lǎo pó
window 窗 tswūn
with 捞 lāo
without 毛 máo
woman 女人 ngēe ryén
write 写 syǎ

Y

yes 是 hè
yesterday 昨不日 tsyō pōo ngēe
you sg inf/pol 你/您 ngée/ngéen
you pl 你们 ngée mwén

Hunanese

TONES	134
ABOUT HUNANESE	135
PRONUNCIATION	136
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	137
TIME & DATES	138
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	139
ACCOMMODATION	140
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	141
SIGHTSEEING	142
SHOPPING	142
MEETING PEOPLE	143
MAKING CONVERSATION	144
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	147
FAREWELLS	147
EATING OUT	148
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	151
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	152
ENGLISH–HUNANESE DICTIONARY	153

tones

Hunanese is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Tones in Hunanese fall on vowels and on z. The same combination of sounds pronounced with different tones can have a very different meaning.

Hunanese has six tones, including a neutral tone. In our pronunciation guide the six tones are indicated with accents or underscores on the letters, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Syllables with neutral tone are unmarked, and are usually pronounced in the middle of your natural pitch range.

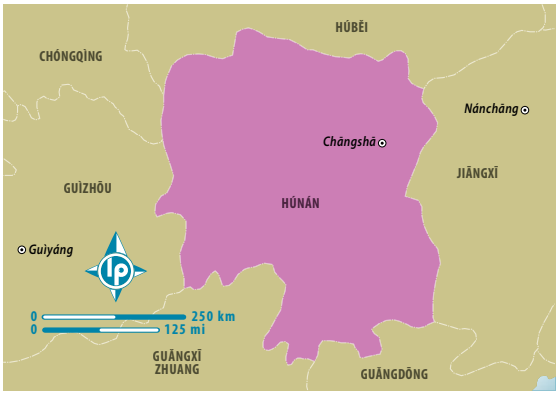
Higher tones involve tightening the vocal cords to get a higher sounding pitch, while lower tones are made by relaxing the vocal cords to get a lower pitch. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg high tones are pronounced towards the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

rising á	high rising ā	mid flat a	falling à	low falling a̲	**low rising** **ă**
					

about Hunanese

A Sino-Tibetan language, also known as Xiang, Hunanese (fú lán fa 湖南话) is spoken by around 35 million people in central and southwestern Húnán and parts of the nearby Sìchuān, Guǎngdōng and Guǎngxī provinces. Hunanese speakers are surrounded by speakers of several different languages – Mandarin, Gan, Tujia and Hmong – and their language has been influenced by these linguistic neighbours, and by Mandarin in particular. Hunanese is usually classified into two varieties: Old Xiang, which has absorbed fewer elements of Mandarin; and New Xiang, which is intelligible to speakers of the Southwestern Mandarin dialect. There are also local variations of these dialects. Hunanese speakers are noted for their skill as craftspeople, creating silk scarves and jade carvings that are sold internationally, and Húnán has a well-developed television and entertainment industry (the Chinese version of *Pop Idol* was filmed here). Try using a few of the phrases that follow and you'll be in some interesting historical company – Mao Zedong, who was born in Sháoshān, was perhaps the most well-known Hunanese speaker.

hunanese



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	ni**pp**le; like English b but unvoiced
aw	l**ou**d	ch	**ch**eat
e	b**e**t	d	li**tt**le; like English d but unvoiced
eu	as the 'oo' in 'soon' with the lips spread widely	f	**f**at
i	mach**i**ne	g	ti**ck**le; like English g but unvoiced
o	v**o**te	h	**h**at
u	r**u**le	j	**j**oke
uh	b**u**t	k	**k**it
uhw	uh followed by u	l	**l**ot
y	i with the lips rounded	m	**m**an
		n	**n**ot
		ng	ri**ng** (both at the start and at the end of words)
		p	**p**et
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ut
		t	**t**op
		ts	like tz, but with a strong puff of breath following
		tz	as in '**it's**'
		y	**y**es
		w	**w**in
		z	**z**ero

In this chapter, the Hunanese pronunciation is given in pink after each phrase.

In Hunanese, vowels can appear in combinations of two (diphthongs). The vowels in combinations are always pronounced – they are simply pronounced in series.

Some vowels in Hunanese are nasalised (pronounced with air escaping through the nose). In our pronunciation guides the nasalised vowels are indicated with ng after the vowel.

For pronunciation of tones, see p134.

essentials

Yes./No.	是。/不是。	sz/bú sz
Please …	请…	chìn …
Hello.	你好。	lì hàw
Goodbye.	再见。	tzāi jyēng
Thank you.	谢谢你。	siē siē lì
Excuse me. (asking for directions or assistance)	不好意思。	bú hàw ī sz
Sorry. (general apology)	对不起啊。	tēi bú chì a

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?
你晓得讲(英文)不? lì siàw duh gàng (in wǔhn) bú

I (don't) speak Hunanese.
我(不)晓得讲湖南话。 ngò (bú) siàw duh gàng fú lǎn fa

Do you understand?	你懂不啦?	lì dùhn bú la
I (don't) understand.	我(不)懂。	ngò (bú) dùhn
Could you please …?	累你…?	liá lì …
repeat that	再讲一遍	tzāi gàn í biēng
speak more slowly	讲慢点	gàng man dièng

numbers

0	零	líng	**20**	二十	eu sź
1	一	í	**30**	三十	san sź
2	二/两	eu	**40**	四十	šz sź
3	三	san	**50**	五十	ù sź
4	四	šz	**60**	六十	lúhw sź
5	五	ù	**70**	七十	chí sź
6	六	lúhw	**80**	八十	bá sź
7	七	chí	**90**	九十	jiùhw sź
8	八	bá	**100**	一百	í béu
9	九	jiùhw	**1000**	一千	í chieng
10	十	sź	**1,000,000**	一百万	í béu wan

time & dates

What time is it?	现在几点嗒?	sie̱ng tza̱i jì dièng ta̱
It's (10) o'clock.	(十) 点嗒。	(sź) dièng ta̱
Quarter past (10).	(十) 点十五分。	(sź) dièng sź ù fuhn
Half past (10).	(十) 点三十分。	(sź) dièng san sź fuhn
Quarter to (11).	(十) 点四十	(sź) dièng sź sẕ
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)	五分。	ù fuhn

At what time (does it start)?
么子时候(开始)?　　mò tz sź hu̱hw (kai sz)

(It starts) At 10.
十点钟(开始)。　　sź dièng tzuhn (kai sz)

It's (18 October).
(十月十八号)。　　(sź yé sź bá ha̱w)

now	现在	sie̱ng tza̱i
today	今天	jin tieng
tonight	今天晚上	jin tieng wàn sa̱n
yesterday	昨天	tzǒ tieng
tomorrow	明天	mín tieng
afternoon	下午	sia̱ ù
morning (after breakfast)	早上	tzàw sa̱n
morning (before lunch)	上午	sa̱n ù
sunrise	日出	zź chý
sunset	日落	zź ló
spring	春天	chyn tieng
summer	夏天	sia̱ tieng
autumn	秋天	chiuhw tieng
winter	冬天	duhn tieng
Monday	星期一	shin chi í
Tuesday	星期二	shin chi e̱u
Wednesday	星期三	shin chi san
Thursday	星期四	shin chi sź
Friday	星期五	shin chi ù
Saturday	星期六	shin chi lúhw
Sunday	星期天	shin chi tieng

January	一月	í yé
February	二月	e̲u yé
March	三月	san yé
April	四月	sz yé
May	五月	ù yé
June	六月	lúhw yé
July	七月	chí yé
August	八月	bá yé
September	九月	jiuhw yé
October	十月	sź yé
November	十一月	sź í yé
December	十二月	sź e̲u yé





transport & directions

Is this the …	这个…去	gó gō … keū
to (Chángshā)?	(长沙) 吧?	(tza̲n sa) ba
boat	船	jye̲ng
bus	公共汽车	guhn gūhn chī cheu
train	火车	hò tseu
Where's a/the …?	…在哪里?	… tza̲i là li
bank	银行	ǐn hǎng
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	tiàw wa̲i bēi di di̲ fang
post office	邮局	iǔhw jý

Is this the road to (the Yuèlù Academy)?
这是去(岳麓书院)的路吧? — gó sz̲ keū (ió lúhw shy yēng) di lúhw ba

Can you show me where it is on the map?
累你帮我找下它在地图上的位置好吧? — liá lì bang ngò tsàw ha ta tza̲i dī du̲hw sa̲ng di we̲i tz hàw ba

Can I get there on foot?
我可以走起去吧? — ngò kò ì tzùhw chì keū ba

What's the address?	地址是么子啦?	dị tz sz̲ mò tz la
How far is it?	好远咧?	hàw yèng lie
How do I get there?	何什走咧?	ò sz tzùhw lie
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	wáng tzò/iu̲hw gwài
It's straight ahead.	一直往前走。	í tź wa̲n chiěng tzùhw
It's …	在…	tza̲i …
behind …	…的后头	… di hu̲hw tuhw
in front of …	…的前头	… di chiěng tuhw
near …	…旁边	… bàng bieng
on the corner	拐弯的地方	gwài wan di dị fang
opposite …	…的对过	… di dēi gō
there	那里	lā li

accommodation

Where's a guest house?
哪里有宾馆啊? là li iùhw bin gòng a

Where's a hotel?
哪里有酒店啊? là li iùhw jiùhw diēng a

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你可以推荐一个便宜的地方住不? lì kò ì tei jiēng í go biěng i di dị fang jy̲ bú

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你可以推荐一个好的地方住不? lì kò ì tei jiēng í go hàw di dị fang jy̲ bú

I'd like to stay at a locally run hotel.
我想住当地的酒店。 ngò shiàng jy̲ dang dị jiùhw diēng

I'd like to book a room.
我想订间房。 ngò siàng dịn gan fǎng

I have a reservation.
我预订嗒。 ngò ỳ dịn da̲

Do you have a … room?	有…房吧?	iùhw … fǎng ba
double (suite)	套房	tāw fǎng
single	单人间	dan zühn gan
twin	双人间	shyang zühn gan

How much is it …?	…好多钱啦?	… hàw do chiěng la
per night	一天	í tieng
per person	个人	í gō zǔhn

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
我要住(三)天。 ngò iāw jy̲ (san) tieng

Could I have my key, please?
可以把房间钥匙把我不? kò ì bà fāng gan ió sz̀ bà ngò bú

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我可以多拿一条(毛毯)不? ngò kò ì do lǎ í diǎw (mǎw tàn) bú

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有问题。 (kuhn diǎw) iùhw wūhn dī

What time is checkout?
几点钟退房? jì dièng tzuhn tei fāng

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿回我的…	ngò siàng lǎ fěi ngò di …
deposit	押金	iá jin
passport	护照	fù tzāw



banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	…在哪里?	… tz̲ai là li
ATM	自动取款机	tz dūhn chỳ kuàn jī
public phone	公用电话	guhn j̲n diēng fa̲

Where's the local internet cafe? 旁边有网吧不? báng bieng iùhw uàng ba bú

I'd like to …	我想…	ngò siàng …
get internet access	上网	sa̲ng uàng
use a printer	打印	dà īn
use a scanner	扫描	sàw miǎw

What's your phone number?
您的电话号码是好多啦? lì di diēng fa haw mà sz hàw do la

The number is …
号码是… haw mà sz …

sightseeing

I'd like to see …	我想看…	ngò siàng kān …
What's that?	那是么子啦?	lā sz mò tz la
Can I take a photo?	我可以拍照吧?	ngò kò ì péu tzāw ba

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想去这里的景点看下子。 ngò siàng gēu go li di jìn dièng kān ha tz

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想去常规路线以外的地方玩。 ngò siàng kēu tzǎw gwei luhw siēng ì uai di dị fang uǎn

How long is the tour?
这个行程要好久啊? gó go hǎng tzuhn iāw hàw jiùhw a

sightseeing

Nányuè	南岳	lǎn ió
Sháoshān Mountain	韶山	sǎw san
Yuèlù Academy	岳麓书院	ió lúhw shy yēng
Yuèlù Mountain	岳麓山	ió lúhw san
Yuèyáng Temple	岳阳楼	ió iǎng lǔhw
Zhāngjiājiè	张家界	tzang jia gāi

shopping

Where's a …?	…在哪里?	… tzai là li
camera shop	照相器材店	tzāw siāng chī tzǎi diēng
market	市场	sz tzǎn
souvenir shop	纪念品店	ji niēng pìn diēng
supermarket	超市	tsāw sz

I'd like to buy …	我想买…	ngō siàng mài …
Can I look at it?	我可以看下子吧?	ngō kò ì kān ha̲ tz ba
What's this made from?	这用么子做的啦?	gó sz̲ mò tz tzühw di la
How much is it?	好多钱啦?	hàw do jiěng la
That's too expensive.	太贵嗒。	tāi gwēi da̲

Please write down the price.
累你把价钱写下来。 niá lì bà jiā jiěng shiè ha̲ lǎi

I'll give you (five kuai).
把你(五块)钱。 bà lì (ù kwài) chiěng

Do you accept credit cards?
可以用信用卡吧? kò ì i̲n shīn i̲n kà ba

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单上有点问题。 tzāng da̲n sa̲ng iùhw tièng ue̲n tǐ

less	少	sào
enough	足够	tzúhw gūhw
more	多	do
bigger	大得多	da̲i déu do
smaller	细得多	shī déu do



meeting people

Hello.	你好。	lì hàw
Good morning.	早上好。	tzàw tzăng hàw
Good afternoon.	下午好。	shia̲ ù hàw
Good evening.	晚上好。	uàn sa̲ng hàw
Goodbye.	再见。	tza̲i jiěng
Good night.	晚安。	uàn an
Mr	先生	shieng suhn
Mrs	女士	nỳ šz
Ms/Miss	小姐/妹子	siàw jiè/me̲i tz

How are you?	你好吧?	lì hàw ba
Fine. And you?	还可以啊。 你咧?	hǎi kò ìa, lì lie
What's your name?	你叫么子名字啊?	lì jiāw mò tz mǐ tz̲ a
My name is …	我叫…	ngò jiāw …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	shīn fe̲i

This is my …	这是我的…	gó sz ngò di …
brother (older)	哥哥	go go
brother (younger)	弟弟	dī di
child	细伢子	shì ngǎ tz
daughter	妹子	me̲i tz
father	爷	iǎ
friend	朋友	bǔhn iùhw
husband	老公	làw guhn
mother	娘	niǎng
partner (intimate)	男朋友 m	lǎn bǔhn iùhw
	女朋友 f	nỳ bǔhn iùhw
son	崽	tzài
sister (older)	姐姐	jiè jie
sister (younger)	妹妹	méi mei
wife	堂客	dǎng kéu

making conversation

Do you live here?	你住这里吧?	lì jy̲ gó li ba
Where are you going?	去哪里啦?	kēu là li la
Do you like it here?	喜欢这里吧?	shì hong gó li ba
I love it here.	我時喜欢这里。	ngò téu shì hong gó li
Have you eaten?	呷饭哒冒?	chiá fa̲n da̲ ma̲w
Are you here on holiday?	你是来这里旅游的吧?	lì sz̲ lǎi gó li lỳ iǔhw di ba

I'm here …	我来这里…	lì ngò lǎi gó li …
for a holiday	旅游	lỳ iǔhw
on business	出差	chý tsai
to study	留学	liǔhw sió

How long are you here for?
你要在这里住好久? lì iāw tza̲i gó li jý hàw jiùhw

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)个礼拜。 ngò jy̱ (sẕ) go lì bāi

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我可以照(你)吧? ngò kò ì tzāw (lì) ba

Do you speak (Hunanese dialect)?
你晓得讲 lì siàw déu gàng
(湖南话)吧? (fú lǎn fa̱) ba

What language do you speak at home?
你老家讲么子话啊? lì làw jia gàng mò tz hua̱ a

What do you call this in (Hunanese dialect)?
这用(湖南话) kó i̱n (fú lǎn fa̱)
何什讲啦? ò sz gàng la

What's this called?
这喊么子啦? gó hàn mò tz la

I'd like to learn some (Hunanese).
我想学点(湖南话)。 ngò shiàng shió dieng (fú lǎn fa̱)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你要我教你英文吧? lì iāw ngò gāw lì in wǔhn ba

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗吧? gó sẕ dị fang hun súhw ba





local talk

Great!	蛮好!	mǎn hàw
It's OK.	还可以。	hǎi kò ì
Just a minute.	等下子。	dùhn ha̱ tz
Just joking.	我是斗把的。	ngò sẕ dūhw bā di
Maybe.	有可能。	iùhw kò lǔhn
No problem.	冒事。	maw sẕ
No way!	不可能!	bǔ kò lǔhn
Sure, whatever.	可以。	kò ì
That's enough!	够哒。	gūhw da̱

Where are you from?	你是哪里来的咧?	lì sz̲ là li lăi di lie
I'm from …	我从…来。	ngò tzŭhn … lăi
Australia	澳大利亚	ngāw dā lī iā
Canada	加拿大	jia lă dā
England	英国	in gó
New Zealand	新西兰	shin shi lăn
the USA	美国	mèi gó
What's your occupation?	你做么子的啊?	lì tzūhw mò tz di a
I'm a/an …	我是…	ngò sz̲ …
businessperson	做生意的	tzūhw suhn ī di
office worker	白领	béu lìn
tradesperson	工匠	guhn jia̲ng
How old … ?	…好多岁嗒?	… hàw do suēi da̲
are you	你	lì
is your daughter	你妹子	lì me̲i tz
is your son	你崽	lì tzài
I'm … years old.	我…岁。	ngò … suēi
He/She is … years old.	他/她…岁。	ta … suēi
Too old!	太老嗒!	tāi làu da̲
I'm younger than I look.	我还小咧。	ngò hăi siàw lie
Are you married?	你结婚了嗒冒?	lì jié fuhn da̲ ma̲w
Do you have a family?	你成家嗒吧?	lì tzŭhn jia da̲ ba
I live with someone.	我有伴嗒。	ngò iùhw bo̲ng da̲
I'm ...	我…	ngò …
single	单身	dan suhn
married	结婚嗒	jié fuhn da
Do you like …?	你喜欢…吧?	lì shì hong … ba
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢…	ngò (bú) shì hong …
art	艺术	nyī shý
film	看电影	kān diēng ìn
music	听歌	tīn go
reading	看书	kān shy
sport	运动	yū dūhn

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不)…	ngò (bú) …
Are you … ?	你…吧?	lì … ba?
cold	冷	lùhn
hot	热	lé
hungry	饿	ngo
thirsty	口干	kùhw gan
tired	累	liá
I (don't) feel …	我(不)觉得…	ngò (bú) chió déu …
Do you feel …?	你觉得…吧?	lì chió déu … ba
happy	高兴	gaw shīn
sad	不高兴	bǔ gaw shīn
worried	急	jí
What do you think of it?	你觉得怎么样?	lì chió déu tzùhn mo ia̱n
It's …	它…	ta …
awful	连不好	liěng bú hàw
beautiful	好漂亮的	hàw piāw lia̱ng di
boring	无聊	ǔ liǎw
great	几好的	jì hàw di
interesting	好有味的	hàw iùhw ue̱i di
OK	还可以	hǎi kò ì
strange	奇怪	jī guāi

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要走嗒。 mǐn tieng ngò iāw tzu̱hw da̱

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), iùhw jì fēi lǎi (suhw géu lǎn)
可以来找我。 kò ì lǎi tzàw ngò

Keep in touch!	保持联系!	bàw tsź liěng shī
Here's my (address).	这是我的(地址)。	gó sẕ ngò di (dị dz)
What's your (email)?	你的(邮箱)是么子?	lì di (iǔhw siang) sẕ mò tz

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	í lụhw bĭn ngan
Congratulations!	恭喜, 恭喜！	guhn shì, guhn shì
Good luck!	祝你好运！	tzúhw lì hàw yn
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	suhn zź kuāi ló
Happy New Year!	新年好！	shin niĕng hàw

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	…去哪里咧?	… kēu là li lie
banquet	办酒席	bạn jiùhw shí
celebration	举行庆祝会	jỳ shĭn chīn tzúhw fẹi
cheap meal	呷便宜点的	chí biĕng i dièng di
local specialities	地方小吃	dị fang siàw chiá
yum cha	喝茶	hó tză
Can you recommend a …?	你可以推荐 一个…吧?	lì kò ì tei jiēng í go … ba
bar	酒吧	jiùhw ba
cafe	咖啡屋	ka fei ú
noodle house	面馆	mịeng gòng
dish	盘	bŏng
restaurant	饭馆	fàn gòng
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊子	(fúhn tuhn) tan tz
street vendor	路边摊	lụhw bieng tan
teahouse	茶馆	tză gòng
I'd like (a/the) …	我要…	ngò iāw …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	í tzan (ù go zŭhn di) tzó tz
bill	帐单	tzān dan
drink list	酒水单	jiùhw shyèi dan
local speciality	地方特色菜	dị fang teú séu tsāi
menu	菜单	tsāi dan
(non)smoking table	(不)呷烟的桌子	(bú) chiá ieng di tzó tz

Are you still serving food?
还有呷的吧? hăi iùhw chiá di ba

What would you recommend?
有么子推荐菜吧? iùhw mò tz tei jiēng tsāi ba

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早饭)一般呷么子? (tzàw fan) í ban chiá mò tz

What's in that dish?
这只菜是么子家伙做的啦? gó tzá tsāi sz mò tz jia ho tzūhw di la

What's that called?
那个喊么子啰? lá go han mò tz lo

I'll have that.
来一个啰。 lăi í go lo



I'd like it with …	多放点…	do fāng dièng …
I'd like it without …	不要放…	bú iāw fāng …
chilli	辣椒	lá jiaw
garlic	大蒜	dai sōng
MSG	味精	wēi jin
nuts	果仁	gò zŭhn
oil	油	iŭhw
I'd like …, please.	我要…	ngò iāw …
one slice	一块	í kwài
a piece	一份	í fuhn
a sandwich	一个三明治	í go san mĭn tz
that one	那个	lá go
two	两个	liăng go
This dish is …	这只菜…嗒。	gó tzá tsāi … da
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tāi) lá
superb	几好的	jì hàw di
That was delicious!	几好呷!	jì hàw chiá
I'm full.	呷饱嗒。	chiá bàw da

breakfast	早饭	tzàw fan
lunch	中饭	tzuhn fan
dinner	夜饭	ia fan
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jiùhw
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	ìn liaw
… water	…水	… shyèi
boiled	开	kai
cold	冷开	lùhn kai
sparkling mineral	矿泉汽	kuāng chyěng chī
still mineral	矿泉	kuāng chyěng
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯) 咖啡…	(í bei) ka fei …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯) 茶…	(í bei) tzǎ …
with (milk)	加 (牛奶)	jia (liúhw làì)
without (sugar)	不加 (糖)	bú jia (dǎng)
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	song làì
lychee juice	荔枝	lì tz
orange juice	橙汁	tzúhn tź
soft drink	汽水	chī shyèi
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	song měi tang
black tea	红茶	hǔhn tzǎ
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jý hua tzǎ
green tea	绿茶	lúhw tzǎ
jasmine tea	花茶	fa tzǎ
oolong tea	乌龙茶	u lěn tzǎ

What are you drinking?
喝么子?
hǒ mò tz

I'll buy you a drink.
我请客。
ngò chìn kéu

What would you like?
你要点么子?
lì iāw dièng mò tz

Cheers!
干杯!
gan bei

I'm feeling drunk.
我有点醉嗒。
ngò iùhw dièng tzèi da

a … of beer	一…啤酒	í … bǐ jiùhw
glass	杯	bei
large bottle	大瓶	dài bǐn
small bottle	细瓶	shī bǐn
a shot of (whisky)	一樽(威士忌)	í tzun (uei šz jī)
a bottle/glass	一瓶/杯…	í bǐn/bei …
of … wine	葡萄酒	bǔ dâw jiùhw
red	红	hǔhn
white	白	béu

street eats

cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉	liǎng fùhn
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	jiàw tz
dumpling (fried)	锅贴	go tié
dumpling (steamed)	包子	bau tz
pork pie (large)	肉饼	zúhw bìn
pork pie (small)	馅饼	shiěng bìn
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	zūhn tz
stinky bean curd	臭豆腐	tsūhw duhw fu
wonton soup	馄饨	fǔhn tuhn



special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有素食食品吧? iùhw sūhw sź ba

Could you prepare a meal without …?
可以做一个不 kó í tzūhw í go bú
放…的菜吧? fāng … di tsāi ba

I'm allergic to …	我对…过敏。	ngò dēi … gō mìn
dairy produce	奶制品	lài tz pìn
eggs	鸡蛋	jī dan
meat	肉	zúhw
nuts	果仁	gò zǔhn
seafood	海鲜	hài shieng





emergencies & health

Help!	救命啊！	jiūhw mìn a
Go away!	走开！	tzùhw kai
Fire!	起火嗒！	chì hò dà
Watch out!	小心！	shiàw shin

Could you please help?
你可以帮下我吧？ lì kò ì bang hà ngò ba

Can I use your phone?
我可以用下你的电话吧？ ngò kò ì ị hà lì di diēng fà ba

I'm lost.
我迷路嗒。 ngò mǐ lụhw dà

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪里啊？ tséu sò tzài là li a

Where's the police station?
公安局在哪里？ guhn ngan jý tzài là li

Where's the	最近的…	tzēi jin di …
nearest …?	在哪里？	tzài là li
dentist	牙医	iǎ i
doctor	医生	i suhn
hospital	医院	i yēng
pharmacist	药房	ió fāng

english–hunanese dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾祸 tzai hō
accident (traffic) 交通事故 jiaw tuhn sz gū
accommodation 食宿 sź súhw
address n 地址 dị tz
after 之后 tz hụ̀hw
air conditioning 空调 kuhn diăw
airplane 飞机 fei ji
airport 机场 ji tzăn
alcohol 酒 jiùhw
all 所有的 sò iùhw di
allergy 过敏 gò mìn
ambulance 救护车 jiùhw fù tseu
and 和 hò
ankle 踝 guài
antibiotics 抗生素 kāng suhn sō
arm 手杆子 sùhw gàn tz
ATM 自动取款机 tz dùhn chỳ kuàn ji

B

baby 毛毛 măw măw
back (of body) 背 bēi
backpack 背包 bei baw
bad 坏 fai
bag 包 baw
baggage 行李 shĭn lì
bank 银行 ín hàng
bar 吧 ba
bathroom 浴室 zúhw sź
battery 电池 diēng tź
beautiful 好看 hàw kàn
bed 床 jyáng
beer 啤酒 bí jiùhw
before 之前 tz jiēng
behind 之后 tz hụ̀hw
bicycle 单车 dan tseu
big 大 dại
bill 帐单 tzăn dan
blanket 毯子 tàw tz
blood group 血型 shyé shĭn
boat 船 jyéng
book (make a reservation) v 预订 ỳ dịn
bottle 瓶子 bĭn tz
boy 伢子 ngă tz
brakes (car) 煞车 sá tseu
breakfast 早饭 tzàw fạn
broken (out of order) 坏咖嗒 fại gà dạ
bus 公共汽车 guhn gùhn chì cheu
business 生意 suhn ì
buy v 买 mài

C

camera 相机 shiāng ji
cancel 取消 chỳ shiaw
car 汽车 chì tseu
cash n 现金 shiẹng jin
cell phone 手机 sùhw ji
centre n 中心 tsuhn shin
change (money) n 零钱 líng jiéng
cheap 便宜 biéng í
check (bill) 帐单 tzăn dan
check-in n 登记 duhn jì
chest (body) 胸口 shin kùhw
children 细伢子 shì ngă tz
cigarette 香烟 shiang ieng
city 城市 tzúhn sz
clean a 干净 gan jin
closed 关闭 guan bēi
cold a 冷 lùhn
collect call 对方付费电话 dèi fang fù fèi diéng fa
come 来 lại
computer 电脑 diēng làw
condom 避孕套 bèi ỳn tàw
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 in shĭn ngàn jĭn
cook v 烹饪 puhn zùhn
cost n 花费 fa fèi
credit card 信用卡 shĭn ịn kà
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hò bèi fèi dèi
customs (immigration) 海关 hài guan

D

dangerous 危险 uèi shiéng
date (time) 日期 zź chi
day 天 tieng
delay v 延迟 iéng tź
dentist 牙科医生 iă ko i suhn

depart 出发 chý fá
diaper 尿布 liąw bù
dinner 夜饭 ią fąn
direct a 直接 tź jié
dirty 邋遢 lá tá
disabled 残废 tzǎn fèi
discount v 打折 dà tzéu
doctor 医生 i suhn
double bed 双人床 shyang zūhn chyǎng
double room 套房 tāw fán
drink n 饮料 in liąw
drive v 开车 kai tseu
driving licence 驾照 jiā tzāw
drug (illicit) 毒品 dúhw pìn

E

ear 耳朵 èu do
east 东 duhn
eat 吃 chiá
economy class 经济舱 jin jī tsang
electricity 电 diēng
elevator 电梯 diēng ti
email 电子邮件 diēng tz iūhw jięng
embassy 大使馆 dąi sz gòng
emergency 紧急状况 jin jí jín kuāng
English (language) 英文 in wūhn
evening 晚上 uàn sąn
exit n 出口 chý kùhw
expensive 贵 guēi
eye 眼睛 ngàn jin

F

far 远 yèng
fast 快 kuǎi
father 爷 iá
film (camera) 胶卷 jiaw jyèng
finger 手指 sùhw tz
first-aid kit 急救箱 jí jiūhw shiang
first class 头等舱 dúhw dùhn tsang
fish n 鱼 ỳ
food 食物 sź ú
foot 脚 jió
free (of charge) 免费 mièng fèi
friend 朋友 bûhn iùhw
fruit 水果 shyěi gò
full 饱 bàw

G

gift 礼物 lì ú
girl 妹子 męi tz
glass (drinking) 杯子 bei tz
glasses 眼镜 ngàn jìn
go 去 kêu
good 好 hàw
guide n 向导 shiāng dàw

H

half n 一半 í bōng
hand 手 sùhw
happy 高兴 gaw shīn
he 他 ta
head n 头 dúhw
heart 心 shin
heavy 重 tzụhn
help 帮助 ban tsūhw
here 这里 gó li
high 高 gaw
highway 高速公路 gaw súhw guhn lụhw
hike v 徒步旅行 dúhw bụ lỳ shīn
holiday 假期 jià chi
homosexual 同性恋 dúhn shīn liēng
hospital 医院 i yēng
hot 热 yé
hotel 旅馆 lỳ gòng
(be) hungry 饿 ngọ
husband 老公 làw guhn

I

I 我 ngò
identification (card) 身份证 suhn fūhn tzūhn
ill 生病 suhn bịn
important 重要 tzūhn iāw
injury (harm) 侮辱 ù zúhw
injury (wound) 伤口 sang kùhw
insurance 保险 bàw shièng
internet 英特网 in téu uàng
interpreter 翻译 fan í

J

jewellery 珠宝 jy bàu
job 工作 guhn tzó

K

key 钥匙 ió sz
kilogram 公斤 guhn jin
kitchen 厨房 jý fâng
knife 刀子 daw tz

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 shì i diēng
lawyer 律师 lý sz
left (direction) 左 tzò
leg (body) 腿 tèi
lesbian 女同性恋 lỳ dúhn shīn liēng
less y sàw
letter (mail) 信 shīn
light n 光 guang
like v 喜欢 shì hong
lock n 锁 sò
long 长 tzǎng
lost 失咖嗒 séu gà dạ
love v 爱 ngāi
luggage 行李 shīn lì
lunch 中饭 tzuhn fạn

M

mail n 信 shịn
man 男人 lǎn zúhn
map 地图 dì dúhw
market 市场 sz tzǎng
matches 火柴 hò tzǎi
meat 肉 zúhw
medicine 药 ió
message 信息 shīn shí
milk 牛奶 niúhw lài
minute 分钟 fuhn tzuhn
mobile phone 手机 sùhw ji
money 钱 jiēng
month 月 yé
morning 早上 tzàw san
mother 娘 niǎng
motorcycle 摩托车 mó tó tseu
mouth 嘴巴 tzèi ba

N

name 名字 mín tz
near 近 jịn
neck n 颈根 jìn guhn
new 新 shìn
newspaper 报纸 bāw tz
night 晚上 wàn sạn
no (not at all) 一点也不 í dièng iè bú
noisy 吵死哒 tsàw sz dạ
nonsmoking 禁止吸烟 jīn tz shí ieng
north 北 béu
nose 鼻子 bí tz
now 现在 shiẹng tzại
number 数字 sùhw tz

O

old (people) 老 làw
old (things) 旧 jiụhw
one-way ticket 单程票 dan tzúhn piāw
open a 开的 kai đi
outside 外面 wại miẹng

P

passport 护照 fù tzāw
pay v 付钱 fù jiě
pharmacy 药房 ió fǎng
phonecard 电话卡 diēng fạ kà
photo 像片 shiáng piēng
police 警察 jìn tsá
postcard 明信片 mín shīn piēng
post office 邮局 iúhw jý
pregnant 怀孕 fāi ỳn
price n 价格 jià géu

Q

quiet a 安静 ngan jìn

R

rain n 雨 ỳ
razor 刮胡刀 guá fù daw
receipt n 收据 tzuhw jỳ
refund n 退款 tèi kòng
registered (mail) 挂号 guà hạw
rent v 出租 chý tzuhw
repair v 修理 shiuhw lì
reserve v 预订 ỳ dịn
restaurant 饭馆 fạn gòng
return (give back) 还 fán
return (go back) 回来 fèi lai
return ticket 返程票 fàn tzúhn piāw
right (direction) 右 iụhw
road 路 iụhw
room n 房间 fāng gan

S

safe a 安全 ngan jyeng
sanitary napkin 卫生巾 uèi suhn jin
seat n 座位 tzọ uẹi
send 寄 jì
sex (intercourse) 性 shīn
sex (gender) 性别 shīn bíe
shampoo 洗发精 shì fá jin

share (a dorm) 分享 fuhn shiàng
she 她 ta
sheet (bed) 床单 jyáng dan
shirt T恤衫 ti shyé san
shoes 鞋 hái
shop n 商店 sang diènq
short 短 dònq
shower n 淋浴 lín tzúhw
single room 单人间 dan zúhn gan
skin n 皮肤 bí fu
skirt n 裙子 jué tz
sleep v 悃觉 kuúhn gāw
slow 慢 màn
small 细 shì
soap 肥皂 féi tzāw
some 一些 í shie
soon 马上 mà sàn
south 南 lán
souvenir 纪念品 jì niènq pìn
stamp 邮票 iúhw piāw
stand-by ticket 站台票 tzàn tái piāw
station (train) 火车站 hò tseu tzàn
stomach 胃 uèi
stop v 停止 díng tz
stop (bus) n 站台 tzàn dái
street 街 gai
student 学生 shió suhn
sun 太阳 tài iàng
sunscreen 防晒油 fáng sài iúhw
swim v 游泳 iúhw ìn

T

tampon 止血棉球 tz shié mièng jiúhw
telephone n 电话 diènq fạ
temperature (weather) 温度 wuhn dúhn
that 那个 là go
they 他们 ta muhn
(be) thirsty 口干 kò gan
this 这个 gó go
throat 喉咙 húhw lúhn
ticket 票 piāw
time 时间 sź gan
tired 累 lèi
tissues 卫生纸 uèi suhn tz
today 今天 jin tieng
toilet 厕所 tséu sò
tomorrow 明天 mín tieng
tonight 今天晚上 jin tieng wàn sàn
tooth 牙齿 ngá tz
toothbrush 牙刷 iá shyá
toothpaste 牙膏 iá gaw
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 sùhw diènq dúhn
tour n 旅行 lỳ shín
tourist office 旅行社 lỳ shín séu
towel 毛巾 māw jin
train n 火车 hò tseu
translate 翻译 fan í
travel agency 旅行社 lỳ shín sùh
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lỳ shín tz piāw
trousers 裤子 kù tz
twin-bed room 双人间 shyang zúhn gan

U

undershirt 内衣 lèi i
underpants 内裤 lèi kù
urgent 紧急 jìn jí

V

vacancy 空缺 kúhn chyé
vegetable n 蔬菜 suhw tsāi
vegetarian a 素食者 sùhw sź tzèu
visa 签证 chieng tzúhn

W

walk v 步行 bụ shíng
wallet 钱包 jiěng baw
wash (something) 洗 shì
watch n 看 kàn
water n 水 shyèi
we 我们 ngò muhn
weekend 周末 tzuhw mó
west 西 shi
wheelchair 轮椅 lúhn ì
when 当…时 dan … sź
where 在哪里 tzaí là li
who 哪个 la gò
why 何解 ò gài
wife 堂客 dáng kéu
window 窗户 chyang fu
with 和 hò
without 冒得 màw déu
woman 堂客 dáng kéu
write 写 shiè

Y

yes 是 sź
yesterday 昨天 tzò tieng
you sg inf 你 lì
you sg pol 你郎家 lì lang ga
you pl 你们 lì muhn

Shanghainese

TONES	158
ABOUT SHANGHAINESE	159
PRONUNCIATION	160
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	161
TIME & DATES	161
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	163
ACCOMMODATION	164
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	165
SIGHTSEEING	166
SHOPPING	166
MEETING PEOPLE	167
MAKING CONVERSATION	168
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	171
FAREWELLS	171
EATING OUT	172
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	175
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	175
ENGLISH–SHANGHAINESE DICTIONARY	177

tones

Shanghainese is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Tones in Shanghainese fall on vowels and on z and n. In this chapter Shanghainese is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Shanghainese

In dynamic Shànghǎi nothing sits still for long. Even Shanghainese (zǔng hay ǎy woo 上海话) is evolving as the city attracts immigrants and entrepreneurs, opportunists and global citizens. The most important dialect of Wu Chinese, Shanghainese has around 14 million speakers and is similar to the dialects of Níngbō, Sūzhōu and Kūnshān. Like the city itself, the dialect might appear brash and uppity: it's not mutually intelligible with other Wu dialects nor is it with Standard Mandarin. Nonetheless, those who come seeking opportunity in Shànghǎi are infusing the dialect with elements of Mandarin, so that Shanghainese is effectively experiencing a generation gap of its own as it moves from the historic Bund to the futuristic skyline of Pǔdōng. The younger generation of Shànghǎi residents casually flip Mandarin idioms and expressions into their banter and, with government campaigns to encourage the use of Mandarin only, some fear for the future of the dialect. But, while Shanghainese is rarely heard in schools or in the media, it remains a source of pride and identity for many Shànghǎi natives.

shanghainese



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
aw	s**aw**	ch	**ch**eat
ay	s**ay**	d	**d**og
ee	s**ee**	ds	la**ds**
er	moth**er** (without the 'r')	f	**f**un
ew	**few**	g	**g**o
i	b**i**t (very short)	h	**h**ot
o	m**o**ck (very short)	j	**j**ump
oe	as the 'e' in 'send', with rounded lips	k	**k**id
oo	t**oo**k	l	**l**ot
uh	**uh**-**huh**	m	**m**an
ung	r**ung**	n	**n**ot
urr	p**urr** (strongly pronounced 'rr')	ng	ri**ng**
		p	**p**et
		r	**r**un
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	ca**ts**
		v	**v**ery
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	**z**ero
		zh	pleasure

In this chapter, the Shanghainese pronunciation is given in red after each phrase.

In Shanghainese, some consonants and consonant combinations (dz, ng, m, sz and z) can appear at the start of words, or represent an entire word.

For pronunciation of tones, see p158.

essentials		
Yes./No.	是。/勿是。	ź/vůh z
Please …	请 …	ching …
Hello.	侬好。	nóong haw
Goodbye.	再会。	dsāy way
Thank you.	谢谢侬。	zhǎ zhā noong
Excuse me. (to get past)	让一让。	nyùng yī nyung
Excuse me. (asking for direction/assistance)	勿好意思。	vůh haw yēe sz
Sorry.	对勿起。	day vūh chee

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?
侬会讲(英语)伐? noong wǎy duh gung (yīng new) va

Do you understand?
侬懂伐? noong doong vā

I (don't) understand.
吾(勿)懂。 ngoo (vůh) doong

I (don't) speak Shanghainese.
吾(勿)会讲上海闲话。 ngoo (vůh) way duh gung zůng hay ǎy woo

Could you please …?	请侬 …?	ching nōong …
repeat that	再讲一遍	dsāy gung yi bee
speak more slowly	慢点讲	mǎy dēe gung

time & dates

What time is it?	现在几点钟?	yěe zay jee dēe dsoong
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点钟。	(zůh) dee dsoong
Quarter past (10).	(十)点一刻。	(zůh) dee yi kūh
Half past (10).	(十)点半。	(zůh) dee boe
Quarter to (11).	(十)点四十	(zůh) dee sz sūh
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)	五分。	ńg ferng

numbers					
0	零	líng	20	二十	nyáy suh
1	一	yī	30	三十	sāy suh
2	二/两	nyée/lyúng	40	四十	sz sūh
3	三	sày	50	五十	ňg suh
4	四	sz	60	六十	lŏ suh
5	五	ňg	70	七十	chi sūh
6	六	ló	80	八十	buh sūh
7	七	chī	90	九十	jer sūh
8	八	būh	100	一百	yī buh
9	九	jer	1000	一千	yī chee
10	十	zúh	1,000,000	一百万	yī buh vay

At what time (does it start)?
萨辰光(开始)? sa zēng kwung (kāy sz)

(It starts) At 10.
十点钟(开始)。 zŭh dee dsoong (kāy sz)

It's (18 October).
(十月十八号)。 (zŭh ywi zŭh buh aw)

yesterday	昨日	zŏ nyi
today	今朝	jīng dsaw
now	现在	yèe zay
tonight	今晚夜里	jīng dsaw yă der
tomorrow	明朝	mĭng dsaw
sunrise	日出	zŭh tsuh
sunset	日落	zŭh lo
this …	今朝 …	jīng dsaw …
afternoon	下半日	wŏo bōe nyi
morning (after breakfast)	早上	dsaw zūng
morning (before lunch)	上半日	zŭng bōe nyi
spring	春天	tsērng tee
summer	夏天	wŏo tee
autumn	秋天	cher tee
winter	冬天	dōong tee

Monday	礼拜一	lĕe ba yī
Tuesday	礼拜二	lĕe ba lyúng
Wednesday	礼拜三	lĕe ba sày
Thursday	礼拜四	lĕe ba sz
Friday	礼拜五	lĕe ba ňg
Saturday	礼拜六	lĕe ba ló
Sunday	礼拜天	lĕe ba tèe

January	一月份	yī ywi verng
February	二月份	lyŭng ywī verng
March	三月份	sāy ywi verng
April	四月份	sz ywī verng
May	五月份	ňg ywī verng
June	六月份	lŏ ywi verng
July	七月份	chi ywī verng
August	八月份	buh ywī verng
September	九月份	jer ywī verng
October	十月	zŭh ywi
November	十一月	zŭh yi ywi
December	十二月	zŭh nyee ywi

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Hàngzhōu)?	这只 … 到 (杭州) 去吗?	gŭh dsuh … daw (hŭng dser) chee vā
boat	船	zóe
bus	公车	gōong tswoo
train	火车	hoo tswō
Where's a/the …?	… 在哪里?	… luh ă lēe duh
bank	银行	nyĭng ung
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	woe ngă bēe uh dĕe fung
post office	邮局	yĕr jwi

Is this the road to (the Bund)?
这条路是去 (外滩) 的吗? gŭh dyaw lóo z chee (ngă tay) uh vā

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮我寻寻看它在地图上头的位置。 ching būng ngoo zhĭng zhing koe yĕe luh dĕe dōo gaw der uh wăy dz

What's the address?	啥地址?	sa dĕe dz
How far is it?	多少远?	dōo saw yóe
Is it walking distance?	走过去远吗?	dser gōo chee yǒe vā
How do I get there?	哪能走?	na nērng dser
Turn left/right.	左/右转弯。	dser/yer dsoe wày
It's straight ahead.	一直往前。	yi zūh mung zhée
It's …	在 …	luh …
behind …	… 后头	… ěr der
in front of …	… 前头	… zhĕe der
near …	… 附近	… vǒo jing
on the corner	转弯角落	dsoe wāy gō lo
opposite …	… 对过	… day gōo
there	那里	āy duh

accommodation

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
依好推荐一只便宜点的地方蹲吗? noong haw tāy jee yi dsūh bee nyēe ngāy uh dĕe fung dērng va

Can you recommend somewhere good?
依好推荐一只好点的地方蹲吗? noong haw tāy jee yi dsūh haw ngāy uh dĕe fung dērng va

Where's a guest house?	哪里有宾馆?	ă lēe duh yer bīng gwoe
Where's a hotel?	哪里酒店?	ă lēe duh yer jer dēe
I'd like to book a room.	我想订房间。	ngoo shung ding vŭng gay
I have a reservation.	我有预订。	ngoo yer yĕw ding
What time is checkout?	几点钟退房?	jee dēe dsoong tay vúng
How much per night?	一天几钿?	yi tēe jee dēe
How much per person?	一个人几钿?	yi ūh nying jee dēe
Do you have a … room?	有 … 房间伐?	yer … vŭng gay va
double	大床	dŏo zung
single	单人	dāy nying
twin	双床	sūng zung

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
我要蹲(三)个晚上。 ngoo yaw dèrng (sāy) uh yǎ der

Could I have my key, please?
房间钥匙给我好伐? vǔng gay yǔh z buh ngōo haw vā

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我好多拿条(毛毯)吗? ngoo haw dōo này dyaw (mǎw tay) va

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有毛病。 (kōong dyaw) yer mǎw bing

Could I have my …, please?	拿我的 … 给我好吗?	nāw ngoo ūh … buh ngōo haw vā
deposit	押金	uh jīng
passport	护照	vǒo dsaw



banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪儿?	… luh ǎ lēe duh
ATM	自动取款机	z doong chew kwōe jee
public phone	公用电话	gōong yoong dēe woo

Where's the local internet cafe?
附近有网吧吗? vǒo jing yer mǔng bā va

I'd like to …	我想 …	ngóo shung …
get internet access	上网	zúng múng
use a printer	打印	dung ying
use a scanner	扫描	saw myāw

What's your phone number?
侬电话号码是多少? noong dēe woo hǎw der dōo saw

The number is …
号码是 … hǎw der z …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想看一些当地的景点。 — ngóo shung koe yī shi dūng dee uh jing dēe

I'd like to see …
我想看 … — ngóo shung koe …

What's that?
那是啥? — gŭh uh z sa

Can I take a photo?
我能拍张照片吗? — ngóo haw pūh dsung dsaw pēe va

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想去常规路线以外的地方白相相。 — ngóo shung chee zŭng gway lŏo shee yi ngă uh dĕe fung bŭh shung shung

How long is the tour?
这趟旅行要用多少辰光? — gŭh tung lĕw ying yaw yŏong dōo saw zĕrng gwung

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪儿?	… luh ă lêe duh
camera shop	照相店	dsaw shūng dee
market	市场	ž zung
souvenir shop	纪念品商店	jee nyĕe ping sūng dee
supermarket	超市	tsāw z

sightseeing		
The Bund	外滩	ngă tay
Chóngmíng Island	崇明岛	zŏong mīng daw
Huangpu River	黄浦江	wŭng pōo gung
Jinjiāng Park	锦江乐园	jīng gung ló yoe
Nánjīng Road	南京路	nŏe jīng loo
Oriental Pearl Tower	东方明珠电视塔	dōong fung mĭng dz dĕe z tuh
Shēshān	佘山	zwŏo say

What's this made from?	这什么做的?	gŭh uh sa ūh dsoo ūh
I'd like to buy …	我想买 …	ngóo shung má …
Can I look at it?	给我看看好吗?	buh ngôo koe kōe haw vā
How much is it?	多少钱?	jee dée
That's too expensive.	太贵了。	tuh jew luh

Where can I buy locally produced goods/souvenirs?
啥地方能买到本地特产? — sa dēe fung yer má berng dēe dùh tsay

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来。 — ching này ga dēe sha wōo lay

I'll give you (five kuai).
给侬(五块)钱。 — buh nōong (ňg kway) ŭng dee

Do you accept credit cards?
侬们收信用卡吗? — ná sèr shing yōong ka va

There's a mistake in the bill.
帐单上有问题。 — dsung dāy gāw der yer věrng dee

less	少	saw
enough	足够	dso gēr
more	多	dòo
bigger	大一点	dōo yī ngay
smaller	小一点	shaw yī ngay



meeting people

Hello.	侬好。	nóong haw
Good morning.	早上好。	dsaw zūng haw
Good evening.	夜头好。	yă der haw
Goodbye.	再会。	dsāy way
Good night.	明朝会。	mĭng dsāw way

Mr	先生	shēe sung
Mrs	女士	nĕw z
Ms/Miss	小姐	shaw jā
How are you?	侬好吗?	noong haw
Fine. And you?	好的。侬呢?	haw üh, nŏong nay
What's your name?	侬叫啥名字?	nŏong jaw sa mĭng dz
My name is …	我叫 …	ngŏo jaw …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	shĭng way
This is my …	这是我的 …	gŭh uh z ngŏo uh …
brother (older)	阿哥	uh gōo
brother (younger)	阿弟	uh dēe
child	小人	shaw nyĭng
daughter	女儿	nŏe
father	爹	yá
friend	朋友	bŭng yer
husband	老公	lăw goong
mother	娘	nyúng
partner (intimate)	对象	day yūng
sister (older)	阿姐	uh jyā
sister (younger)	阿妹	uh māy
son	儿子	nyĕe dz
wife	老婆	lăw boo

making conversation

Do you live here?	侬住在这里伐?	noong ž luh gŭh duh vā
Where are you going?	到哪里去?	daw à lee chee
Do you like it here?	欢喜这里吗?	hwōe shee gŭh du vā
I love it here.	我老欢喜这里。	ngoo lăw hwōe shee gŭh duh
Have you eaten?	饭吃了吗?	vày chuh luh vā
Are you here on holidays?	侬来这里旅游吗?	noong lày gŭh duh lĕw yer vā
I'm here …	我来这里 …	ngoo lăy gŭh duh …
for a holiday	旅游	lĕw yer
on business	出差	tsuh tsà
to study	留学	lyĕr o

How long are you here for?
侬在这里住多久? noong luh gŭh duh ž dōo jer

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)个星期。 ngóo ž (sz) ūh lĕe ba

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我好拍(侬)伐? ngóo haw puh (nōong) va

Do you speak (Shanghainese)?
侬讲(上海话)伐? nóong gung (zŭng hay ăy woo) va

What language do you speak at home?
侬在家里讲啥话? nóong luh o lēe gung sa ăy woo

What do you call this in (Shanghainese)?
这用(上海话)怎么讲? gŭh uh yoong (zŭng hay ăy woo) nă nerng gung

What's this called?
这叫啥? gŭh uh jaw sa

I'd like to learn some (Shanghainese).
我想学(上海话)。 ngóo shung ō (zŭng hay ăy woo)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
侬要我教侬英语吗? nóong yaw ngoo gaw nōong yīng new vă

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗吗? gŭh uh z dĕe fung fūng zo va

local talk

Great!	赞!	dsay
Hey!	诶!	ày
It's OK.	还可以。	ày koo yĕe
Just a minute.	等一等。	derng yī derng
Just joking.	开玩笑。	kay wăy shaw
Maybe.	有可能。	yer khoo nērng
No problem.	没事情。	m muh z tee
No way!	不可能!	vŭh koo nerng
Sure, whatever.	好, 好, 好。	haw, haw, haw
That's enough!	够了, 够了!	ger lūh, ger lūh

Where are you from?	侬从哪里来?	nóong zoong ă lee láy
I'm from …	我从 … 来。	ngóo zoong … láy
Australia	澳大利亚	aw dā lee ya
Canada	加拿大	gā na da
England	英国	yīng go
New Zealand	新西兰	shīng shee lay
the USA	美国	may gō
What's your occupation?	侬做啥工作?	nóong dsoo sa gōong dso
I'm a/an …	我做 …	ngóo dsoo …
businessperson	商人	sūng nying
office worker	白领	bŭh ling
tradesperson	工匠	gōong jung
How old …?	… 几岁了?	… jee sōe luh
are you (to child)	侬	nóong
is your daughter	侬的女儿	nóong uh nŏe ng
is your son	侬的儿子	nóong uh nyĕe dz
How old are you? (to adult)	你多大年纪?	nóong dōo da nyĕe jēe a
I'm … years old.	我 … 岁。	ngóo … soe
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	yée … soe
Too old!	太老了!	tuh lăw luh
I'm younger than I look.	我还小了。	ngóo ē shaw lūh
Are you married?	侬结婚了吗?	nóong ji hwērng luh va
I'm …	我 …	ngóo …
married	结婚了	ji hwērng luh
single	单身	dāy serng
I live with someone.	我有朋友了。	ngóo yér bŭng yēr luh
Do you have a family?	侬成家了吗?	nóong zérng gà luh va
Do you like …?	侬喜欢 … 吗?	nóong hwōe shee … va
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢 …	ngóo (vŭh) hwōe shee …
art	艺术	nĕe zōo
film	看电影	koe dĕe ying
music	听音乐	ting yīng ywi
reading	看书	koe sz
sport	体育	tee ywī

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不) …	ngóo (vůh) …
Are you …?	侬 … 吗?	nóong … va
cold	冷	lúng
hot	热	nyí
hungry	饿	ngóo
thirsty	干	gòe
tired	吃力	chuh lí
I (don't) feel …	我(不)感到 …	ngóo (vůh) go zūh …
Do you feel …?	侬感到 … 吗?	nóong gaw zūh … va
happy	开心	kāy shing
sad	不开心	vůh kāy shing
worried	急	jí
What do you think of it?	侬觉得哪能?	nóong gaw zūh nă nerng
It's …	这 …	gůh uh …
awful	老差劲	law tāy bay
beautiful	老漂亮	law pyāw lyung
boring	老无聊	law vóo lyaw
great	老灵	law líng
interesting	老有意思	law yěr yēe sz
OK	还可以	ay kōo yee
strange	奇怪	jèe gwa

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要走了。 mĭng dsaw ngóo yaw dser lūh

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), yěr jēe way láy (sōo guh lay)
可以来寻我。 koo yēe lay zhĭng ngoo

Keep in touch!	保持联系!	baw dz lēe shee
Here's my (address).	这是我的(地址)。	gůh uh z ngóo uh (dĕe dz)
What's your (email)?	侬的(网址)是啥?	nóong uh (mŭng dz) z sa

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	yi lōo bĭng oe
Congratulations!	恭喜, 恭喜！	gōong shee, gōong shee
Good luck!	祝你好运！	dsuh nōong haw ywĭng
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	sērng nyi kwa lō
Happy New Year!	新年好！	shĭng nyee haw

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 一应该到哪里去?	… yĭng gay daw ă lēe duh chee
banquet	办酒水	băy jĕr sz
celebration	庆祝	chĭng zuh
cheap meal	吃得便宜一点	chuh lūh bĕe nyēe ngay
local specialities	地方小吃	dĕe fung shaw chūh
yum cha	吃茶	chūh zwóo
Can you recommend a …?	你可以推荐一个 … 吗?	nóong koo yēe tāy jee yi dsūh … ù va
bar	酒吧	jer bā
cafe	咖啡屋	kā fee o
dish	盘	bérng
noodle house	面馆	mĕe gwoe
restaurant	饭店	vĕ dee
snack shop	小吃店	shaw chūh dee
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊	(wĕrng derng) tāy der
street vendor	马路高头的小吃	mwŏo lōo gaw der uh shaw chūh
teahouse	茶馆	zwŏo gwoe
I'd like (a/the) …	我要 …	ngóo yaw …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	yi dsūng (ňg nying) dāy dz
bill	帐单	dsūng day
drink list	酒水单	jer sz day
local speciality	特色菜	dŭh suh tsay
menu	菜单	tsāy day
(non)smoking table	(不)吸烟的桌子	(vŭh) chuh shūng yee uh dāy dz

Are you still serving food?
依们还营业吗? ày yǐng yī va

What would you recommend?
有啥菜推荐的? yer sa tāy jee va

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早饭)一般吃什么? (dsaw vāy) yi bāy chūh sa

What's in that dish?	这道菜是啥做的?	gǔh uh tsay z sa üh dsoo üh
What's that called?	那个叫啥?	ày uh jaw sa
I'll have that.	拿一个。	này yi dsuh





I'd like it with …	多放点 …	dòo fūng ngē …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	vǔh yaw fung …
chilli	辣椒	lùh jaw
garlic	大蒜	dǎ soe
MSG	味精	věe jing
nuts	果仁	goo nyǐng
oil	油	yér
I'd like …, please.	请给我 …	ching buh ngōo …
one slice	一块	yi kwāy
a piece	一份	yi vērng
a sandwich	一个三明治	yi dsūh sāy ming dz
that one	那一个	ày mee dsuh
two	两个	lyǔng dsuh
This dish is …	这菜 … 了。	gǔh tsay … luh
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tuh) lúh
superb	好极	law haw
That was delicious!	真好吃!	dsērng haw chūh
I'm full.	吃饱了。	chuh bāw luh
breakfast	早饭	dsaw vāy
lunch	午饭	dsōong vay
dinner	晚饭	yǎ vay
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jer
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	ying lyāw

… water	… 水	… sz
boiled	开	kāy
cold	冷开	lǔng kāy
mineral	矿泉	kwung zhoe
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(yi bāy) kā fee …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(yi bāy) zwóo …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	gà (nyěr na)
without (sugar)	不加(糖)	vǔh ga (dúng)
black tea	红茶	hǒong zwoo
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jwi hwōo zwoo
green tea	绿茶	lǒ zwoo
jasmine tea	花茶	hwōo zwoo
oolong tea	乌龙茶	vōo loong zwoo
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	sōe na
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(dsěrng) dsūh
lychee juice	荔枝汁	lěe dz dsūh
soft drink	汽水	chēe sz
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	sōe may tung
I'll buy you a drink.	我请客。	ngóo chìng kūh
What would you like?	侬要吃啥?	nóong yaw chūh sa
Cheers!	干杯!	gōe bay
I'm feeling drunk.	我有点醉。	ngóo yer ngǎy dsoe





a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	yi … běe jer
glass	杯子	bāy dsì
large bottle	大瓶	dòo bīng
small bottle	小瓶	shaw bīng
a shot of (whisky)	一樽(威士忌)	yi dsērng (wāy sz jee)
a bottle/glass of	一瓶/杯	yi bīng/bāy
… wine	… 葡萄酒	… bǒo dāw jer
red	红	hóong
white	白	búh

street eats		
cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉	lyŭng ferng
corn on the cob	玉米棒	dsērng dz mee
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	jāw dz
dumpling (fried)	锅贴	gōo ti
dumpling (steamed)	包子	bāw dz
egg and spring onion pancake	煎饼	jēe bing
flat bread with sesame seeds	大饼	dă bing
pork pie (large)	肉饼	nyŏ bing
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	dsōong dz
wonton soup	馄饨汤	wĕrng dērng tung

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有素食吗? yer sōo zuh va

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能做个不放 … haw dsoo dsuh vŭh fung …
的菜吗? uh tsay vā

I'm allergic to …	我对 … 过敏。	ngóo day … goo míng
dairy produce	奶制品	nă dz ping
eggs	鸡蛋	jēe day
meat	肉	nyó
nuts	果仁	goo nyĭng
seafood	海鲜	hay shēe

emergencies & health

Help!	救命!	jer míng
Go away!	走开!	dser kāy
Fire!	着火啦!	zuh hŏo luh
Watch out!	小心!	dŭng shing

Could you please help?
侬能帮我吗? nóong nérng bŭng ngoo va

Can I use your phone?
我能借侬电话用用吗?
ngóo haw ja nōong děe woo yǒong yōong va

I'm lost.
我迷路了。
ngóo mee lǒo luh

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪儿?
tsz sōo luh ă lēe duh

Where's the police station?
派出所在哪里?
pa tsūh soo luh ă lēe duh

Where's the nearest …?	最近的 … 在哪儿?	dsoe jĭng uh … luh ă lēe duh
dentist	牙医	ngă yee
doctor	医生	yēe sung
hospital	医院	yēe yoe
pharmacist	药房	yŭh vung

english–shanghainese dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾难 dsāy nay
accident (traffic) 交通事故 jāw toong sz gôo
accommodation 食宿 zůh so
adaptor 编剧 bēe ji
address n 地址 dēe dz
after 之后 dz ér
air conditioning 空调 kôong dyaw
airplane 飞机 fēe jee
airport 机场 jēe zung
alcohol 酒 jer
all 所有的 soo yēr uh
allergy 过敏 goo míng
ambulance 救护车 jer ōo tswoo
and 跟 duh dz
ankle 踝关节 wă gwāy ji
antibiotics 抗生素 kung sērng soo
arm 手臂 ser bēe
ATM 自动取款机 z doong chew kwôe jee

B

baby 婴儿 yīng urr
back (of body) 背 bay
backpack 背包 bay bāw
bad 坏的 wă uh
bag 包 bāw
baggage 行李 hùng lee
bank 银行 nyīng ung
bar 酒吧 jer bā
bathroom 浴室 yŏ suh
battery 电池 dēe z
beautiful 美丽的 haw kōe uh
bed 床 zúng
beer 啤酒 bēe jēr
before 之前 dz zhée
behind 之后 dz ér
bicycle 脚踏车 juh dùh tswoo
big 大的 dôo uh
bill 帐单 dsung dāy
blanket 毛毯 māw tay
blood group 血型 shwi yīng
boat 船 zôe
book (make a reservation) v 预订 yēw ding
bottle 瓶 bīng
boy 男孩 nôe shāw noe
brakes (car) 煞车 sùh tswoo
breakfast 早饭 dsaw vāy
broken (out of order) 坏掉的 wă dùh uh
bus 公车 gôong tswoo
business 生意 sūng yee
buy v 买 má

C

camera 照相机 dsaw shūng jee
cancel 取消 chew shāw
car 汽车 chee tswôo
cash n 现金 yēe jing
cash (a cheque) v 把（支票）兑现 nàw (dz pyaw) dāy shee
cell phone 手机 ser jēe
centre n 中心 dsôong shin
change (money) v 换钱 woe tsāw pyaw
cheap 便宜的 bēe nyēe ù
check (bill) 帐单 dsung dāy
check-in n 登记 dērng jee
chest (body) 胸膛 shōong dung
children 小人 shaw nyīng
cigarette 香烟 shūng yee
city 城市 zērng z
clean a 干净的 chīng sung uh
closed 关闭的 gwāy tuh uh
cold a 冷的 lūng uh
collect call 对方付费电话 day fūng foo fēe dēe woo
come 来 láy
computer 电脑 dēe naw
condom 避孕套 bēe ywīng taw
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 ying yīng ngāy jing
cook v 烹饪 pērng zerng
cost n 花费 hwōo fee
credit card 信用卡 shing yōong ka
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hoo bēe wāy day
customs (immigration) 海关 hay gwāy

D

dangerous 危险的 wāy shēe uh
date (time) 日期 nyī jee

day 天 tèe
delay v 推迟 tāy z
dentist 牙医 ngǎ yee
depart 出发 tsuh fūh
diaper 尿布 sz boo
dinner 晚饭 yǎ vay
direct a 直接的 zūh jī uh
dirty 龌龊的 o tsō uh
disabled 残疾的 zày jēe uh
discount v 打折 dung dsūh
doctor 医生 yēe sung
double bed 双人床 sūng nying zung
double room 大床房 dòo zūng vung
drink n 饮料 ying lyāw
drive v 开车 kāy tswòo
driving licence 驾照 ja dsāw
drug (illicit) 毒品 dóo ping

E

ear 耳朵 nyěe doo
east 东 dòong
eat 吃 chūh
economy class 经济舱 jīng jee tsung
electricity 电 dée
elevator 电梯 dēe tee
email 电子邮件 dēe dz yěr jee
embassy 大使馆 dà sz gwoe
emergency 紧急状况 jīng jī dsung kwūng
English (language) 英语 yīng nyew
evening 傍晚 yà der
exit n 出口 tsuh kěr
expensive 贵的 jew ūh
eye 眼睛 ngǎy jing

F

far 远的 yōe uh
fast 快的 kwa ūh
father 父亲 ōo chìng
film (camera) 影片 ying pēe
finger 手指 ser dz
first-aid kit 急救箱 jí jěr shung
first class 头等舱 děr dērng tsung
fish n 鱼 ńg
food 食物 zūh vuh
foot 脚 jūh
free (of charge) 免费的 mēe fēe uh
friend 朋友 būng yer
fruit 水果 sz gōo
full 饱的 baw ūh

G

gift 礼物 lēe vuh
girl 女孩 nēw shāw noe
glass (drinking) 杯子 bāy dz
glasses 眼镜 ngǎy jing
go 去 chee
good 好的 haw ūh
guide n 导游 dǎw yer

H

half n 一半 yi bōe
hand 手 ser
happy 开心的 kāy shing uh
he 他 yēe
head n 头 dér
heart 心 shìng
heavy 重的 zóong uh
help 帮忙 būng mung
here 这里 gǔh duh
high 高的 gāw uh
highway 高速公路 gāw so gōong loo
hike v 徒步旅行 dóo boo lēw ying
holiday 假期 ga jēe
homosexual 同性恋 dòong shīng lee
hospital 医院 yēe yoe
hot 热 nyi
hotel 宾馆 bīng gwoe
(be) hungry 饿 ngóo
husband 老公 lǎw goong

I

I 我 ngóo
identification (card) 身份证 sērng verng dserng
ill 生毛病的 sūng mòr bīng uh
important 重要的 zóong yāw uh
injury (harm) 伤害 sūng hay
injury (wound) 伤口 sūng ker
insurance 保险 baw shēe
internet 因特网 yīng tuh mung
interpreter 翻译 fāy yi

J

jewellery 珠宝 dz baw
job 工作 gōong dso

K

key 钥匙 yūh z
kilogram 公斤 gōong jing

kitchen 厨房 ž vung
knife 小刀 shaw dăw

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 shee yēe dee
lawyer 律师 lī sz
left (direction) 左 dsoo
leg (body) 腿 tay
lesbian 女同性恋 nyĕw dōong shing lee
less 少 saw
letter (mail) 信 shing
light n 光 gwùng
like v 喜欢 hwŏe shee
lock n 锁 soo
long 长的 zŭng uh
lost 失去的 suh chēe uh
love v 爱 ay
luggage 行李 hŭng lee
lunch 中饭 dsōong vay

M

mail n 邮件 yĕr jee
man 人 nyíng
map 地图 dēe doo
market 市场 ž zung
matches 自来火 zī lày hoo
meat 肉 nyó
medicine 药 yúh
message 信息 shing shī
milk 牛奶 nyĕr na
minute 分钟 fērng dsoong
mobile phone 手机 ser jēe
money 钞票 tsăw pyaw
month 月 yó
morning 早上 dsaw zŭng
mother 母亲 mŏo ching
motorcycle 摩托车 mŏo tō tswoo
mouth 嘴巴 dz bwŏo

N

name 名字 mĭng z
near 近的 jĭng uh
neck n 头颈 dĕr jing
new 新的 shĭng uh
newspaper 报纸 baw dz
night 夜晚 yă der
no (none) 没有 m muh
no (not this) 不是 vú zī
noisy 吵的 tsaw ùh
nonsmoking 不准吃香烟 vuh dsērn chuh shŭng yee

north 北 bo
nose 鼻子 bĭ der
now 现在 yèe zay
number 数字 soo dz

O

old (people) 老 láw
old (things) 旧 jer
one-way ticket 单程票 dāy zerng pyaw
open a 开的 kāy uh
outside 外面的 ngă der

P

passport 护照 vŏo dsaw
pay v 付钞票 foo tsăw pyaw
pharmacy 药房 yùh vung
phonecard 电话卡 dēe wŏo ka
photo 照片 dsaw pēe
police 警察 jing tsuh
postcard 明信片 mĭng shĭng pee
post office 邮局 yĕr jwi
pregnant 怀孕的 wă ywĭng uh
price n 价钱 ga dēe

Q

quiet a 安静的 ōe jing uh

R

rain n 雨 yĕw
razor 刮胡子刀 gwūh wŏo dz daw
receipt n 收据 sēr jwi
refund n 退款 tay kwŏe
registered (mail) 已挂号的 gwoo āw uh
rent v 出租 tsūh dz
repair v 修理 shēr lee
reserve v 预订 yĕw ding
restaurant 饭店 vày dee
return (give back) 还 wáy
return (go back) 回来 wăy chee
return ticket 返程票 fay zērng pyaw
right (direction) 右 yer
road 路 lóo
room n 房间 vŭng gay

S

safe a 安全的 ōe zhoe uh
sanitary napkin 卫生棉 wăy sērng jing
seat n 座位 zōo way

send 发送 fuh sôong
sex (intercourse) 性交 shīng jaw
sex (gender) 性别 shing bi
shampoo 洗发精 dă dêr gaw
share (a dorm) 分享 fêrng shung
she 她 yêe
sheet (bed) 床单 zūng day
shirt T恤 têe shwi
shoes 鞋子 ă dz
shop n 商店 sūng dee
short 短的 doe ūh
shower n 淋浴 līng yo
single room 单人房 dāy nying vung
skin n 皮肤 bêe foo
skirt n 裙子 jwîng dz
sleep v 睡 kwerng
slow 慢的 mĕ uh
small 小的 shaw ūh
soap 肥皂 bêe zaw
some 一些 yi ngáy
soon 马上 mwôo zung
south 南 nóe
souvenir 纪念品 jee nyêe ping
stamp 邮票 yèr pyaw
stand-by ticket 站台票 zāy dāy pyaw
station (train) 火车站 hoo tswôo zay
stomach 胃 wáy
stop v 停止 dĭng dz
stop (bus) n 站台 tswôo zay
street 街 gà
student 学生 ŏ sung
sun 太阳 ta yūng
sunscreen 防晒油 fūng să yer
swim v 游泳 yĕr yoong

T

tampon 卫生巾 wáy sērng jīng
telephone n 电话 dêe woo
temperature (weather) 温度 wērng doo
that 那个 ày uh
they 他们 yêe la
(be) thirsty 口渴的 dz bwôo gòe
this 这个 gùh uh
throat 喉咙 ôo loong
ticket 票 pyaw
time 时间 zērng gwung
tired 累的 chuh lī uh
tissues 卫生纸 wáy sērng dz
today 今朝 jīng dsaw
toilet 厕所 tsz sôo
tomorrow 明朝 mīng dsaw
tonight 今晚 jīng dsaw yà der
tooth 牙齿 ngă tsz
toothbrush 牙刷 ngă suh
toothpaste 牙膏 ngă gaw
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 ser dêe doong
tour n 旅行 lĕw ying
tourist office 旅行社 lĕw yīng zwoo
towel 毛巾 măw jing
train n 火车 hoo tswôo
translate 翻译 fāy yi
travel agency 旅行社 lĕw yīng zwoo
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lĕw ying dz pyaw
trousers 裤子 kòo dz
twin-bed room 双人间 sūng nying gay

U

underwear 内衣裤 nāy yêe koo
urgent 紧急的 jing jī uh

V

vacancy 空缺 kôong chwi
vegetable n 蔬菜 sôo tsay
vegetarian a 吃素的 chuh sôo uh
visa 签证 chêe zerng

W

walk v 走 dser
wallet 皮夹子 bêe gūh dz
wash (something) 洗 dá
watch n 手表 ser byaw
water n 水 sz
we 我们 uh lūh
weekend 周末 dsēr mo
west 西 shèe
wheelchair 轮椅 lērng yee
when 当 dūng
where 在哪里 luh ă lêe duh
who 谁 sa nyīng
why 为啥 wáy sa
wife 老婆 lăw boo
window 窗户 tsūng merng
with 跟 duh dz
without 没 m muh
woman 女人 nĕw nying
write 写 sha

Y

yes 是 ź
yesterday 昨日 zŏ nyi
you sg 侬 nóong
you pl 你们 ná

Sichuanese

TONES	182
ABOUT SICHUANESE	183
PRONUNCIATION	184
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	185
TIME & DATES	186
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	187
ACCOMMODATION	188
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	189
SIGHTSEEING	190
SHOPPING	190
MEETING PEOPLE	191
MAKING CONVERSATION	192
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	194
FAREWELLS	195
EATING OUT	196
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	199
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	200
ENGLISH–SICHUANESE DICTIONARY	201

tones

Sichuanese is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). In this chapter Sichuanese is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Sichuanese

It's classified as a southwestern dialect of Mandarin, but if it were viewed as a language in its own right Sichuanese (sěe tswūn hwǎ 四川话), with 120 million speakers, would be one of the most widely spoken languages in the world. The population of Sichuān is 95% Han Chinese – with a small Tibetan minority, who also speak Sichuanese – and their dialect is regarded as one of the most uniform in China. The Sichuanese dialect is very similar to dialects spoken in the neighbouring provinces of Guìzhōu and Yúnnán, and if you wander across to Chóngqìng you'll hear the same dialect spoken. There are some variations – locals say, for example, that the Chóngqìng accent is different to the Chéngdū accent. If you have a grasp of Mandarin you should be able to chat with Sichuanese speakers, as the grammar and vocabulary are very similar. It's through its pronunciation that Sichuanese marks out its own linguistic territory. Perhaps it's the Szechuan cuisine – garnished with liberal sprinklings of Sichuān peppercorns – that creates the nasal twang and clipped vowels that make Sichuanese distinctive.

sichuanese



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	ch	**ch**eat
air	**air**	d	**d**og
ao	M**ao**	f	**f**un
au	h**au**l	g	**g**o
ay	p**ay**	h	**h**ot
e	b**e**t	j	**j**ump
ee	s**ee**	k	**k**it
er	h**er**	l	**l**ot
ew	n**ew**, with rounded lips	m	**m**an
i	h**i**t	n	**n**ot
o	h**o**me	ng	ri**ng**
oo	t**oo**l	p	**p**et
u	g**oo**d	r	**r**un
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	ca**ts**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	la**ds**
		zh	pleasure

In this chapter, the Sichuanese pronunciation is given in orange after each phrase.

Note that 'r' is always pronounced wherever it appears, including after a vowel (like in American English).

Some syllables are separated by a dot, and should be pronounced closely together.
For example: 月份 fěn·ěr

For pronunciation of tones, see p182.

essentials		
Yes./No.	是。/不是。	sèe/bóo sèe
Please …	请 …	chĭn …
Hello.	你好。	lèe hào
Goodbye.	再见。	zăi jyèn
Thank you.	谢谢你。	syăir syăir lèe
Excuse me.	麻烦下子。	má fán hă zèe
Sorry.	不好意思。	bóo háo yée sēe

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?
你说得来(英语)不?
lèe swáu dér lái (yīn yĕw) bóo

I (don't) speak Sichuanese.
我说(不)来四川话。
wàu swáu (bóo) lái sĕe tswūn hwă

Do you understand?
你懂起没得?
lèe dòong chee máy dé

I understand.
我晓得啰。
wău shyào dé lò

I don't understand.
我搞不伸展。
wău găo bóo chēn zăn

Could you please …?	麻烦你 …?	má fán lèe …
repeat that	再说一道	zăi sáu yée dăo
speak more slowly	慢滴点儿说	màn dēe dēr sáu

numbers					
0	零	lín	**20**	二十	ér sée
1	一	ée	**30**	三十	sān sée
2	二/两	ĕr/lyùng	**40**	四十	sèe sée
3	三	sān	**50**	五十	wòo sée
4	四	sĕe	**60**	六十	lyó sée
5	五	wòo	**70**	七十	ch sée
6	六	lyò	**80**	八十	bá sée
7	七	chi	**90**	九十	jyò sée
8	八	bá	**100**	一百	ée báy
9	九	jyò	**1000**	一千	ée chee yēn
10	十	sée	**1,000,000**	一百万	ée báy wăn

time & dates

What time is it?	现在好多点啰?	shyĕn zăi hăo dāu dyèn làu
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点钟。	(sée) dyèn jyēn
Quarter past (10).	(十)点十五分。	(sée) dyèn sée wòo fēn
Half past (10).	(十)点三十分。	(sée) dyèn sān sée fēn
Quarter to (11).	(十)点四十五分。	(sée) dyèn sèe sée wòo fēn
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)		
At what time	啥子时候	sà zĕe sée hò
(does it start)?	(开始)?	(kāi sĕe)
(It starts) At 10.	十点钟(开始)。	sée dyèn jyēn (kāi sèe)
It's (18 October).	(十月十八号)。	(sée ywăir sée bă hăo)
yesterday	昨天	záu tyēn
today	今天	jīn tyēn
now	现在	shyĕn zăi
tonight	今晚上	jīn wăn sàng
tomorrow	明天	mín tyēn
this …	这个 …	zăy gău …
morning (after breakfast)	早上	zào sàng
morning (before lunch)	上午	sàng wŏo
afternoon	下午	syà wŏo
sunrise	日出	rée chú
sunset	日落	rée làu
spring	春天	chūn tyēn
summer	夏天	syà tyēn
autumn	秋天	chee·yă tyēn
winter	冬天	dōn tyēn
Monday	星期一	shīn chee ée
Tuesday	星期二	shīn chee ĕr
Wednesday	星期三	shīn chee sān
Thursday	星期四	shīn chee sĕe
Friday	星期五	shīn chee wòo
Saturday	星期六	shīn chee lyŏ
Sunday	星期天	shīn chee tyēn

January	元月份	ywén ywáir fěn·ěr
February	二月份	ěr ywáir fěn·ěr
March	三月份	sān ywáir fěn·ěr
April	四月份	sěe ywáir fěn·ěr
May	五月份	wòo ywáir fěn·ěr
June	六月份	lyǒ ywáir fěn·ěr
July	七月份	chī ywáir fěn·ěr
August	八月份	bá ywáir fěn·ěr
September	九月份	jyò ywáir fěn·ěr
October	十月份	sée ywáir fěn·ěr
November	十一月份	sée yée ywáir fěn·ěr
December	十二月份	sée ěr ywáir fěn·ěr



transport & directions

Is this the … to (Chéngdū)?	这个 … 是到(成都)的吗?	zǎi gǎu … sěe dǎo (chen du) dé mā
boat	船	tswúng
bus	公共汽车	gōng gǒng chee chāy
train	火车	hàu chāy
Where's a/the …?	… 在啥子地方?	… zài shà zěe dée fāng
bank	银行	yín háng
place to change foreign money	调外币的地方	tyǎo wǎi běe dé dée fāng
post office	邮局	yó jéw

Is this the road to (Tianfu Plaza)?
请问这条路是到(天府广场)的么?
chǐn wèn zǎy tyáo lù sée dào (tyēn fù gyùng chàng) dé māu

Can you show me where it is on the map?
请帮我指下子它在地图上的位置?
chǐn bāng wǎu jěe hà zěe tā zǎi děe tóo sàng dé wāy zhée

What's the address?	地址是那儿呢?	dée zèe sěe lăr nē
How far is it?	有好远?	yéw hào ywèn
Is it walking distance?	走路要走好远啊?	jò lǔ yǎo jò hào ywèn á
How do I get there?	咋个走?	já gău jò
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	wàn zău/yěw gwài
It's straight ahead.	对直向前。	dwày jée sín chyèn

It's …	在 …	zăi …
behind …	… 的后头	… dé hò tó
in front of …	… 的前头	… dé chee·yén tó
near …	… 附近	… fòo jĭn
on the corner	拐弯儿地方	gwài wàn·er dé dèe fāng
opposite …	… 的对面	… dē dwăy myĕn
there	那里	lă lĕe

accommodation

Where's a hotel?
哪个地方有旅馆? là gàu dĕe fāng yò lèw gwèn

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你能介绍一个相因的地方住吗? lèe lén jyĕn săo yée gău shyūng yīn dé dĕe fāng jòo má

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你能介绍一个巴适的地方住吗? lèe lén jyĕn săo yée gău bā sĕe dé dĕe fāng jòo má

I'd like to book a room.
我想订一个房间。 wău shyŭng dĭn yee gău fán jyēn

I have a reservation.
我订斗房间了。 wău dĭn dò fáng jyēn ló

Do you have a … room?	有没的 … 房间得?	yò māy dé … fàng jyān dé
double	套间	tào jyēn
single	单人	dān rén
twin	标间	byāo jyēn

How much is it per night/person?
每天/人好多钱? mày tyēn/rén hăo dāu chyén

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
住(三)天。 jòo (sān) tyēn

Could I have my key, please?
能不能给我房间钥匙? lén bóo lén gày wău fáng jyēn yăo sĕe

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我能多拿一条(毛毯)吗? wău lén dāu ná yèe tyáo (máo tàn) má

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)扯拐了。 (kōng tyén) chăy gwăi lò

What time is checkout?
好多点钟退房? hào dāu dyèn jōng twày fāng

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿回我的 … ?	wău shyùng ná hwáy wău dé …
deposit	押金	yā jīn
passport	护照	fù zào





banking & communications

Where's the local internet cafe?
周围有没的网吧得? jō wáy yŏ māy dé wàng bā dé

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪个地方?	… zài lă gàu dèe fāng
ATM	自动取款机	zĕe dòng chyèw kwèn jēe
public phone	公用电话	gōng yòng dyĕn hwă
I'd like to …	我想 …	wàu shyùng …
get internet access	上网	sàng wàng
use a printer	打印	dà yìn
use a scanner	扫描	sào myáo

What's your phone number?
您的电话号码是好多? lín dé dyĕn hwă hăo mà sĕe hăo dāu

The number is …
号码是 … hăo mà sèe …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想看下子一些本地的景点。 wàu shyùng kàn hà zěe yèe syāir bèn dèe dé jìn dyèn

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想去一些人少的景点。 wàu shyùng chyěw ée syāir rén sào dē jìn dyèn

I'd like to see …	我想看 …	wàu shyùng kàn …
What's that?	那是啥子哦?	là sèe sà zèe ó
Can I take a photo?	我能拍不?	wàu lén pāy bóo
How long is the tour?	时间要好久啊?	sée jyēn yào hào jò ā

sightseeing		
Du Fu's Cottage	杜甫草堂	dǔ fù chào táng
Dūjiāngyàn irrigation project	都江堰	dū jyúng yán
Éméi Shān	峨眉山	áu máy sān
Jiǔzhàigōu Nature Reserve	九寨沟	jyǒ zài gō
Qīngchéng Shān	青城山	chīn chén sān
Qīngyáng Gōng	青羊宫	chīn yáng gōng
Wǔhóu Temple	武侯祠	wǒo hǒ ts

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪儿?	… zǎi nàr
camera shop	照相店	zǎo shyǔng dyěn
market	市场	sěe chàng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	jěe lyěn pìn dyèn
supermarket	超市	chāo sèe

Where can I buy locally produced goods?
哪个地方我能买到本地的土产? là gàu dèe fāng wàu lén gò mài dào bēn dèe dé tòo tsàn

What's this made from?
这是啥子东西制成的? zè sèe sà zée dōng sēe zwàu dé

I'd like to buy …	我想买 …	wǎu shyùng mài …
Can I look at it?	我能看下子么?	wàu nén kàn hō zèe māu
How much is it?	好多钱?	hǎo dāu chyén
That's too expensive.	太贵啰。	tǎi gwǎy lò

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写写下来。 chǐn bà jyǎ chyén shyàir shyàir lǎi

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱。 gāy lèe (wòo kwài) chyén

Do you accept credit cards?
你们收信用卡吗? lèe mèn sō shìn yòng kà mā

less	少	sào
enough	够了	gǒ lò
more	多	dāu
bigger	大	dǎ
smaller	小	shyào



meeting people

Hello.	你好。	lèe hào
Good morning.	早上好。	zào sàng hào
Good afternoon.	下午好。	syǎ wòo hào
Good evening.	晚上好。	wàn sǎng hào
Goodbye.	再见。	zài jyèn
Good night.	晚安。	wàn ān
Mr	先生	syā sēn
Mrs	女士	nèw sěe
Ms/Miss	小姐	shyào jyàir
How are you?	你好吗?	lèe hào mā
Fine. And you?	好。你呢?	hào, lèe nē
What's your name?	你叫啥子名字?	lèe jyǎo sǎ zèe mín zèe
My name is …	我叫 …	wàu jyǎo …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	shìn hwǎy

This is my …	这是我的 …	zě sĕe wàu dé …
brother	兄弟	syōong dĕe
child	娃儿	wár
daughter	女儿	léwr
father	老汉	lào hèr
friend	朋友	póng yò
husband	老公	lǎo gōng
mother	母亲	mòo chīn
partner (intimate)	对象	dwǎy shyǔng
sister	姐妹	jyàir mǎy
son	儿子	ér zĕe
wife	老婆	lǎo pó

making conversation

Do you live here?	住在这里吗?	jŏo jǎi jĕ lèe mā
Where are you going?	上那里去?	sàng là lèe chyĕw
Do you like it here?	喜欢这里撒?	shèe hwūn jè lèe sá
I love it here.	我很喜欢这里。	wàu hèn shèe hwūn zè lèe
Have you eaten?	吃过饭了吗?	chi gău fàn lyĕn mā
Are you here on holidays?	你来这里旅游的吗?	lèe lái zè lèe lĕw yó dé mā

I'm here …	我来这里 …	wău lái jĕ lèe …
for a holiday	旅游	lĕw yó
on business	出差	chú chāi
to study	留学	lyó shwáir

How long are you here for?
你要在这里住好久? lèe yào zăi zé lĭ zŏo hào jyò

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)个星期。 wău jŏo (sĕe) gàu shīn chee

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我可以拍(你)吗? wău kău yĕe pāi (lèe) mā

Do you speak (Sichuanese)?
你会讲(四川话)不? lèe hwày jyùng (sĕe tswūn hwă) bòo

What language do you speak at home?
你在老家说得是啥子话? lèe zăi lào jyā sáu dé sĕe sà zée hwă

local talk

Great!	安逸的很!	ān yèe dé hěn
Hey!	麻烦下子!	má fàn hà zèe
It's OK.	将就。	jyūng jyù
Just a minute.	等一下。	děn yée hà
Just joking.	扯把子。	tsè bà zèe
Maybe.	有可能。	yǒ kǎu nén
No problem.	没得啥子事。	máy dé sà zěe sèe
No way!	不可能!	bóo kǎu nén
Sure, whatever.	可以, 可以, 可以。	kàu yèe kàu yèe kàu yèe
That's enough!	够了, 够了!	gò làu gò làu

What do you call this in (Sichuanese)?
你能告诉我这个东西(四川话)咋个讲?
lèe lén gǎo sǒo wàu zé gǎu dōng sēe (sěe tswūn hwǎ) zá gàu jyǔng

What's this called?
这个叫啥子啊?
zé gǎu jyǎo sà zěe á

I'd like to learn some (Sichuanese).
我想学点(四川话)。
wàu syàng shōo·ǎu diàn (sěe tswūn hwǎ)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你想不想我教你些英语?
lèe shyùng bóo shyung wàu jyāo lèe syāir yīn yěw

Is this a local custom?
这是地方风俗么?
zè sèe dèe fāng fōng sú māu

Where are you from?	你从哪儿来?	lèe sèe là·ér lái lē
I'm from …	我从 … 来。	wàu tsóng … lái
Australia	澳大利亚	ào dà lǐ yǎ
Canada	加拿大	jyā lá dà
England	英国	yīn gáu
New Zealand	新西兰	shīn shēe lán
the USA	美国	mày gáu
What's your occupation?	你是做啥子嘞?	lèe sèe zǔ sà zèe lé
I'm a/an …	我当 …	wǎu dāng …
businessperson	做生意的	jǔ sēn yée dé
office worker	白领	bày lìn
tradesperson	工匠	gōng jyǔng

How old …?	… 好大了?	… hào dǎ lò
are you	你	lèe
is your daughter	你的女儿	lèe dé lèwr
is your son	你的儿子	lèe dé·ér zèe
I'm … years old.	我 … 岁。	wàu … swày
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	tā … swày
Too old!	老登了!	lǎo dēn lò
I'm younger than I look.	我还小了。	wàu shyǎo dé hèn
Are you married?	你结婚了没得?	lèe jyáir hōon lyǎo máy dé
I live with someone.	我有老婆了。	wàu yò lào pó lyào
Do you have a family?	你结婚了撒?	lèe jyáir hōon lē sá
I'm …	我 …	wàu …
married	结婚了	jyáir hōon lyào
single	单身	dān shēn
Do you like …?	你喜欢 … 不?	lèe shèe hwēn … bóo
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢 …	wàu (bóo) shèe hwēn …
art	艺术	èe sù
film	看电影	kàn dyèn yǐn
music	听音乐	tīn yīn ywàir
reading	看书	kàn sū
sport	体育	těe yèw



feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不) …	wàu (bóo) …
Are you …?	你 … 吗?	lèe … mā
cold	冷	lèn
hot	热	rè
hungry	饿	àu
thirsty	口干	kǒ gān
tired	累	lǎy

I (don't) feel …	我感(不)到 …	wàu gàn (bóo) dǎo …
Do you feel …?	你感到 … 吗?	lèe gàn dǎo … mā
happy	高兴	gāo shǐn
sad	不高兴	bóo gāo shǐn
worried	急得很	jyáir dé hèn
What do you think of it?	你觉得啷个样?	lèe jéw dé làng gǎu yàng
It's …	它 …	tā …
awful	歪的很	wǎi dé hěn
beautiful	漂亮的很	pyào lyùng dé hěn
boring	无聊的很	wóo lyáo dé hěn
great	巴适惨了	bā sèe tsǎn lò
interesting	有意思惨了	yǒ èe sēe tsǎn lò
OK	还将就	hái jyūng jèw
strange	怪的很	gwài dé hěn

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要走了。 mín tyēn wǎu yào jǒ làu

If you come to (Scotland), you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), yǒ jēe hwày dào (sū gé lán)
可以来找我。 kǎu ěe lái zai wàu

Keep in touch!
保持联系! bǎo ts lyén sèe

Here's my (address).
给你我的(地址)。 gā lèe wàu dé (dèe zèe)

What's your (email)?
你的(网址)是啥子啊? lèe dé (wǎng zěe) sèe sà zěe ā

well-wishing

Bon voyage!	一路平安!	ée lǔ pín ān
Congratulations!	恭喜, 恭喜!	gōng shée gōng shée
Good luck!	祝你好运!	zòo lèe hào yòon
Happy birthday!	生日快乐!	sēn rée kwài láu
Happy New Year!	新年好!	shīn lyén hào

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 该到那儿去?	… gāi dào nǎ·ěr chyěw
banquet	办席	bàn sée
celebration	办庆祝会	bán chìn zóo hwǎy
cheap meal	吃的相因一点的	chi dē shyūng yīn ée dyén dé
local specialities	地方小吃	dèe fāng shyǎo chi
yum cha	喝茶	hāu chá
Can you recommend a …?	你可以介绍一个 … 吗?	lèe kàu èe jyěn sǎo ée gàu … mā
bar	吧	bā
cafe	咖啡厅	kā fāy tīn
dish	盘	pán
noodle house	面馆	myěn gwèn
restaurant	餐厅	tsān tīn
snack shop	小吃店	shyǎo chi dyěn
(wonton) stall	(抄手)摊	(tsāo sǒ) tān
street vendor	街头小吃	gāi tó shyǎo chi
teahouse	茶馆	chá gwèn
I'd like (a/the) …	我要 …	wàu yǎo …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	yée zāng (wòo gàu rén dé) zu·ǎu zèe
bill	账单	zàng dān
drink list	酒水单	jyǒ swǎy dān
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	ée gàu dèe fāng tè sè tsài
menu	菜单	tsài dān
(non)smoking table	(不)吸烟的桌子	(bóo) sée yān dé zu·áu zèe

Are you still serving food?
你们在还营业没得? lèe mén zài hái yín yè máy dé

What would you recommend?
有啥子菜可以推荐没得? yó sà zèe tsài kǎu ěe jyěn sǎo máy dé

What's in that dish?
这道菜是啥子东西做的? zě dáo tsái sèe sà zěe dōng sēe zù dé

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早饭)一般吃啥子? (zǎo fǎn) ée bān chi sà zěe

I'll have that.	来一个。	lái ée gàu
What's that called?	那个叫啥子?	là gàu jyào sá zěe
I'd like it with …	多放一点 …	dāu fàng ée dyèn …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	bóo yào fǎng …
chilli	海椒	hǎi jyāo
garlic	大蒜	dà swèn
MSG	味精	wày jīn
nuts	果仁	gǎu rén
oil	油	yó





I'd like … , please.	请给我 …	chǐn gèi wàu …
one slice	一块	ée kwài
a piece	一份	ée fèn
a sandwich	一个三明治	ée gàu sān mín zè
that one	那一个	là ée gàu
two	两个	lyǔng gàu
This dish is …	这个菜 … 了。	zè gàu tsài … làu
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tài) là
superb	好极啦	hǎo jée là
That was delicious!	真好吃!	zhēn hào chi
I'm full.	吃饱啰。	chi bào ló
breakfast	早饭	zào fǎn
lunch	午饭	wòo fǎn
dinner	晚饭	wàn fǎn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jyò
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yìn lyǎo
… water	… 水	… swày
boiled	开	kāi
cold	凉开	lyúng kāi
sparkling mineral	苏打饮料	sǒo dǎ yín lyào
still mineral	矿泉	kwùng chee·wèn

(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(ée báy) kā fāy …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(ée báy) chà …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	jyā (lyó lài)
without (sugar)	不加(糖)	bóo jyō (tàng)
black tea	红茶	hóng chà
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jáu hwā chà
green tea	绿茶	lú chà
jasmine tea	花茶	hwā chà
oolong tea	乌龙茶	wū lóng chà
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	swēn lài
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chén) zēe
lychee juice	荔枝汁	lěe zēe zēe
soft drink	汽水	chee swày
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	swēn máy tāng

What are you drinking?
喝啥子?
hāu sà zèe

I'll buy you a drink.
我帮你买一杯。
wàu bǎn lèe mài yée bāy

What would you like?
你是不是想要?
lèe sèe bóo sèe syùng yǎo

Cheers!
干杯!
gān bāy

I'm feeling drunk.
我有点醉。
wàu yò dyèn zwày

a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	ée … pée jyò
glass	杯	bāy
large bottle	大瓶	dǎ pín
small bottle	小瓶	shyào pín

a shot of (whisky)	一小杯(威士忌)	ée shyǎo bāy (wāy sée jèe)
a bottle/glass of	一瓶/杯 …	ée pín/bāy …
… wine	葡萄酒	póo táo jyò
red	红	hóng
white	白	báy

street eats

braised Dongpo pork hock with brown sauce	东坡肘子	dōng pō zò zèe
cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉	lyùng fèn
corn on the cob	苞谷棒	bāo gǒo bàng
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	jyǎo zēe
pork lungs in chilli sauce	夫妻肺片	fū chee fày pyèn
pork pie (small)	锅魁	gāu kwāy
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	zòng zěe
tofu with minced meat in a spicy sauce	麻婆豆腐	má pó dò fòo
twice-cooked pork	回锅肉	hwày gāu rò
wonton soup	抄手	tsāo sǒ
Yúxiāng shredded pork	鱼香肉丝	yéw syūng rǒ sèe

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有没有素食食品? yó māy dé sòo sèe sée pìn

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能不能做个不放 … 的菜? len bu len zu gau bóo fang … dé tsai

I'm allergic to …	我对 … 过敏。	wàu dyèw … gǎu mìn
dairy produce	奶制品	lài zèe pìn
eggs	鸡蛋	jēe dàn
meat	肉	rǒ
nuts	果仁	gàu rēn
seafood	海鲜	hǎi syèn

emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	jyǒ mín
Go away!	走开！	zò kāi
Fire!	起火喽！	chee hàu lò
Watch out!	当心！	dāng shīn
Where's the nearest …?	最近的 … 在哪？	zùi jìn dé … zài lár
dentist	牙医	yá ēe
doctor	医生	ēe sēn
hospital	医院	ēe ywèn
pharmacist	药店	yào dyèn

Could you please help?
你能帮我吗？ lèe lén bàng wàu mā

Can I use your phone?
我能借一下你的电话吗？ wàu lén jyǎir ée hà lèe dé dyèn hwà mā

I'm lost.
我迷路啰。 wàu mée lù làu

Where are the toilets?
厕所在啥子地方？ chè sǎu zài sà zèe dèe fāng

Where's the police station?
派出所在啥子地方？ pài chú sàu zài sà zèe dèe fāng

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾祸 zāi hàu
accident (traffic) 交通事故 jyāo tōng sēe gòo
accommodation 食宿 sée sòo
adaptor 编剧 byēn jēw
address n 地址 dēe zèe
after 之后 zēe hò
air conditioning 空调 kōng tyén
airplane 飞机 fāy jēe
airport 机场 jēe chàng
alcohol 酒 jyò
all 所有的 sò yŏ dé
allergy 过敏 gàu mìn
ambulance 救护车 jèw fòo chāy
and 和 hàu
ankle 踝 làu
antibiotics 抗生素 kàng sēn sòo
arm 手臂 sò bèe
ATM 自动取款机 zēe dòng chyèw kwèn jēe

B

baby 婴儿 yīn ér
back (of body) 背 bāy
backpack 背包 bāy bāo
bad 坏的 hwài dē
bag 包 bāo
baggage 行李 shín lèe
bank 银行 yín háng
bar 吧 bā
bathroom 浴室 yèw sèe
battery 电池 dyèn chì
beautiful 漂亮的 pyào lyùng dé
bed 床 tswùng
beer 啤酒 pée jyò
before 之前 zēe chyèn
behind 之后 zēe hò
bicycle 自行车 zēe shín chāy
big 大的 dà dé
bill 帐单 zàng dān
blanket 毛毯 máo tàn
blood group 血型 shyáir shín
boat 船 tswùng
book (make a reservation) v 预订 yèw dìn
bottle 瓶 pín
boy 男孩 lán hái
brakes (car) 煞车 sá chēr
breakfast 早饭 zào fàn
broken (out of order) 坏掉的 hwài dyào dé
bus 公共汽车 gōng gòng chee chāy
business 生意 sēn èe
buy v 购买 gò mài

C

camera 相机 shyùng jēe
cancel 取消 chyĕw shyāo
car 汽车 chee chāy
cash n 现金 shyèn jīn
cash (a cheque) v 付现金 fòo shyèn jīn
cell phone 手机 sò jēe
centre n 中心 zōng shīn
change (money) v 零钱 lín chyèn
cheap 便宜的 shyūng yín dé
check (bill) 帐单 zàng dān
check-in n 登记 dēn jēe
chest (body) 胸脯 shyōong pòo
children 儿童 ér tóng
cigarette 香烟 shyūng yān
city 城市 chén sèe
clean a 干净的 gān jèe dè
closed 关闭的 gwēn bèe dé
cold (weather) a 冷的 lèn dé
collect call 对方付费电话 dwày fāng fòo fày dyèn hwà
come 来 lái
computer 电脑 dyèn lào
condom 避孕套 bèe yòon tào
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yĭn shín yàn jĭn
cook v 烹饪 pōng rèn
cost n 花费 hwā fày
credit card 信用卡 shìn yòng kà
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hàu bèe hwày dwày
customs (immigration) 海关 hài gwēn

D

dangerous 危险的 wāy shyèn dé
date (time) 日期 rée chee

day 天 tyēn
delay v 延迟 twāy chi
dentist 牙医 yá ēe
depart 出发 chū fā
diaper 尿布 lyào pòo
dinner 晚饭 wàn fàn
direct a 直接的 zée jyáir dé
dirty 脏的 fán dé
disabled 残废的 chán fāy dé
discount v 打折 dà zé
doctor 医生 ēe sēn
double bed 双人床 swūng rén tswúng
double room 套间房 tào jyēn fáng
drink n 饮料 yìn lyāo
drive v 开车 kāi chēr
driving licence 驾照 jyà zào
drug (illicit) 毒品 dóo pìn

E

ear 耳朵 ér dāu
east 东 dōng
eat 吃 chi
economy class 经济舱 jīn jěe tsāng
electricity 电 dyēn
elevator 电梯 dyèn têe
email 电子邮件 dyèn zèe yó jyèn
embassy 大使馆 dà sèe gwèn
emergency 紧急状况 jīn jée chee-ín kwùng
English (language) 英语 yīn yèw
evening 傍晚 bàng wàn
exit n 出口 chú kò
expensive 贵的 gwày dé
eye 眼睛 yàn jīn

F

far 远的 ywèn dé
fast 快的 kwài dé
father 老汉 lào hèr
film (camera) 影片 yìn pyěn
finger 手指 sò zèe
first-aid kit 急救箱 jwáir jěw shyūng
first class 头等舱 tó dèn tsāng
fish n 鱼 yéw
food 食物 sée wóo
foot 脚 jāu
free (of charge) 免费的 myèn fāy dé
friend 朋友 póng yò
fruit 水果 swày gàu
full 饱的 bào dé

G

gift 礼物 lèe wòo
girl 女孩 lěw hái
glass (drinking) 杯子 bāy zèe
glasses 眼镜 yàn jìn
go 去 chyèw
good 好的 hào dér
guide n 导游 dào yó

H

half n 一半 ée bàn
hand 手 sò
happy 高兴的 gāo shīn dé
he 他 tā
head n 头 tò
heart 心 shīn
heavy 重的 zòng dé
help 帮助 bāng zòo
here 这里 zày lèe
high 高的 gāo dé
highway 高速公路 gāo sóo gōng lǒo
hike v 徒步旅行 tóo bòo lêw shín
holiday 假期 jyà chee
homosexual 同性恋 tóng shìn lyèn
hospital 医院 ēe ywèn
hot 热的 rè dé
hotel 旅馆 lèw gwèn
(be) hungry 饿的 àu dé
husband 老公 lǎo gōng

I

I 我 wàu
identification (card) 身份证 sēn fèn zèn
ill 生病的 sēn bīn dé
important 重要的 zòng yào dé
injury (harm) 侮辱 wóo ròo
injury (wound) 伤口 sāng kò
insurance 保险 bào shyèn
internet 因特网 yīn tèr wàng
interpreter 翻译 fān èe

J

jewellery 珠宝 zōo bǎo
job 工作 gōng zàu

K

key 钥匙 yáu sèe
kilogram 公斤 gōng jīn

kitchen 厨房 chóo fáng
knife 小刀 shyǎo dāo

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 shì ēe dyèn
lawyer 律师 lèw sēe
left (direction) 左 zāu
leg (body) 腿 twày
lesbian 女同性恋 lèw tóng shìn lyěn
less 少 sào
letter (mail) 信 shìn
light n 光 gwūng
like v 喜欢 shèe hwēn
lock n 锁 sôo-àu
long 长的 cháng dé
lost (items) 过了的 go làu dé
love v 爱 ài
luggage 行李 shín lèe
lunch 午饭 wòo fàn

M

mail n 信 shìn
man 男人 lán rén
map 地图 dèe tóo
market 市场 sēe chàng
matches 火柴 hàu tsái
meat 肉 rǒ
medicine 药 yào
message 信息 shìn shēe
milk 牛奶 lyó lài
minute 分钟 fēn zōng
mobile phone 手机 sò jēe
money 钱 chyìn
month 月 ywàir
morning 早上 zào sàng
mother 母亲 mòo chīn
motorcycle 摩托车 máu táu chāy
mouth 口 kò

N

name 名字 mín zèe
near 近的 jìn dé
neck n 脖子 bó zèe
new 新的 shīn dér
newspaper 报纸 bào zèe
night 夜晚 yèe wàn
no (not at all) 一点都不 yēe dyěn dō bòo
no (wrong) 不对头 bóo dwáy tó
noisy 闹哄哄的 lào hōng hōng dér
nonsmoking 禁止吸烟 jìn zèe shēe yān
north 北 báy
nose 鼻子 bée zèe
now 现在 shyèn zài
number 数字 sòo zèe

O

old (people) 老 lào
old (things) 旧 jèw
one-way ticket 单程票 dān chén pyào
open a 开的 kāi dé
outside 外头的 wài tó dé

P

passport 护照 fù zào
pay v 付钱 fù chyèn
pharmacy 药店 yào dyèn
phonecard 电话卡 dyèn hwà kà
photo 照片 zāo pyěn
police 警察 jìn chà
postcard 明信片 mín shẽe pyěn
post office 邮局 yó jéw
pregnant 怀孕的 hwái yòon dé
price n 价格 jyà gér

Q

quiet a 安静的 ān jīn dé

R

rain n 雨 yèw
razor 刮胡刀 gōo-wā hóo dāo
receipt n 收据 sō jèw
refund n 退款 twày kwèn
registered (mail) 已挂号的 èe gōo wà hào dé
rent v 出租 chū zōo
repair v 修理 shyō lèe
reserve v 预订 yèw dìn
restaurant 餐厅 tsān tīn
return (give back) 还 hwén
return (go back) 回来 hwáy lái
return ticket 返程票 fàn chēn pyào
right (direction) 右 yèw
road 路 lòo
room n 房间 fán jyēn

S

safe a 安全的 ān chwēn dé
sanitary napkin 卫生棉 wày sēn myén
seat n 座位 zōo-àu wày
send 发送 fá sòng

sex (intercourse) 性 shìn
sex (gender) 性别 shìn byáir
shampoo 洗发精 shì fà jīn
share (a dorm) 分享 fēn shyùng
she 她 tā
sheet (bed) 床单 chòn dān
shirt 衬衫 tsòon sān
shoes 鞋 shyáir
shop n 商店 sāng dyěn
short 短的 dwèn dé
shower n 淋浴 lín yèw
single room 单人房 dān rén fáng
skin n 皮肤 pée fōo
skirt n 裙子 chee-óon zèe
sleep v 睡 swày
slow 慢的 màn dé
small 小的 shyào dé
soap 肥皂 fáy zào
some 一些 ée shyāir
soon 马上 mà sǎng
south 南 lán
souvenir 纪念品 jèe lyěn pìn
stamp 邮票 yó pyào
stand-by ticket 站台票 zàn tái pyào
station (train) 火车站 hàu chāy zàn
stomach 胃 wày
stop v 停止 tín zěe
stop (bus) n 站台 zàn tái
street 街 gāi
student 学生 shōo-àu sēn
sun 太阳 tài yáng
sunscreen 防晒油 fáng sài yó
swim v 游泳 yó yòng

T

tampon 止血棉球 zèe shyàir myén chyó
telephone n 电话 dyèn hwà
temperature (weather) 温度 wēn dòo
that 那个 là gàu
they 他们 tā mèn
(be) thirsty 口干的 kò kàu
this 这个 zè gàu
throat 喉咙 hó lóng
ticket 票 pyào
time 时间 sée jyēn
tired 累的 lày dé
tissues 卫生纸 wāy sēn zèe
today 今天 jīn tyēn
toilet 厕所 tsè sǎu
tomorrow 明天 mín tyēn
tonight 今晚上 jīn wàn sàng
tooth 牙齿 yá chi
toothbrush 牙刷 yá swā
toothpaste 牙膏 yá gāo
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 sò dyèn tòng
tour n 旅行 lèw shín
tourist office 旅行社 lèw shín sèr
towel 毛巾 máo jīn
train n 火车 hàu chāy
translate 翻译 fān èe
travel agency 旅行社 lèw shín sèr
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lèw shín zēe pyòo
trousers 裤子 kòo zèe
twin-bed room 标间 byāo jyēn

U

underwear 内衣裤 lwày ēe kòo
urgent 紧急的 jīn jée dé

V

vacancy 空缺 kòng chee-ēw
vegetable n 蔬菜 sōo chāi
vegetarian a 吃素的 ts sòo dē
visa 签证 chyēn zēn

W

walk v 步行 bòo shìn
wallet 钱包 chyén bāo
wash (something) v 洗 shèe
watch n 观看 gwēn kēn
water n 水 swày
we 我们 wàu mèn
weekend 周末 zō màu
west 西 shēe
wheelchair 轮椅 lóon yèe
when 什么时候 sén máu sée hò
where 在哪里 zài là lèe
who 谁 swáy
why 为什么 wày sà zèe
wife 老婆 lǎo pó
window 窗户 tswūng fōo
with 和 hāu
without 没有 māy yò
woman 女人 lèw rén
write 写 shyàir

Y

yes (right) 对头 dwáy tó
yesterday 昨天 záu tyēn
you sg inf 你 lèe
you sg pol 您 lín
you pl 你们 lèe mén

Xi'an

TONES	206
ABOUT XI'AN	207
PRONUNCIATION	208
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	209
TIME & DATES	210
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	211
ACCOMMODATION	212
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	213
SIGHTSEEING	214
SHOPPING	215
MEETING PEOPLE	215
MAKING CONVERSATION	216
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	219
FAREWELLS	219
EATING OUT	220
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	223
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	224
ENGLISH–XI'AN DICTIONARY	225

tones

Xi'an is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). In this chapter Xi'an is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Xī'an

Ancient Xī'ān, in the central northern province of Shaanxi, is one of the cradles of Chinese civilisation – legend has it that over four millennia ago a scribe from Shaanxi invented Chinese characters. During the Zhou dynasty (1100–221 BC) the city's dialect, a form of Old Chinese noted for its melodiousness and singsong intonation, was promoted as the standard language across the realm. During the same era, the stony-faced warriors of the Terracotta Army that has made Xī'ān so famous were created by speakers of this 'elegant dialect'. Situated at the eastern terminus of the fabled Silk Road, Xī'ān has absorbed speakers of countless languages over the years, yet always remained a bastion of the Mandarin language. These days, Xi'an dialect (shee·un hwā 西安话) is considered to be representative of the Shaanxi dialects of Mandarin spoken across the central plains and the reaches of the Yellow River. It doesn't share its ancient predecessor's reputation for melodiousness, but is characterised by its clever use of adjectives related to body parts and the 12 animals of the zodiac.

xi'an



Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	ch	**ch**eat
ao	M**ao**	d	**d**og
ay	s**ay**	f	**f**un
e	b**e**t	g	**g**o
ee	s**ee**	h	**h**at
er	h**er**	j	**j**ump
ew	n**ew** with rounded lips	k	**k**id
ewe	ew followed by e	l	**l**ot
i	h**i**t	m	**m**an
o	c**o**ld	n	**n**ot
oo	t**oo**l	ng	ri**ng**
or	m**or**e	p	**p**et
u	c**u**t	r	**r**un
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	c**ats**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	l**ads**

In this chapter, the Xi'an pronunciation is given in brown after each phrase.

The nasal sound ng (found in English at the end or in the middle of words, eg 'ringing'), can represent an entire word in Xi'an.

Some syllables are separated by a dot, and should be pronounced closely together.
For example: 一点 dyen·er

For pronunciation of tones, see p206.

essentials		
Yes./No.	是。/不是。	sī/bǒo sī
Please …	请 …	chìng …
Hello.	你好。	nì hào
Goodbye.	再见。	zāi jyēn
Thank you.	谢谢你。	shyē shye ni
Excuse me. (to get past)	借光。	jyē gwung
Excuse me. (asking for directions/assistance)	麻烦一下。	má fún yèe ha
Sorry.	对不起。	dwāy boo chèe

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?
你会说(英语)不? nèe hwāy shwor (yǐng yèw) boo

I (don't) speak Xi'an.
我(不)会说西安话。 ng (boo) hwāy shwor shee un hwā

Do you understand?	你明白吗?	nì míng bay boo
I (don't) understand.	我(不)明白。	ng (boo) míng bay
Could you please …?	请你 …?	chìng nì …
repeat that	再说一遍	zāi shwor yee byēn
speak more slowly	慢一点说	mūn dyen·er shwor

numbers					
0	零	líng	**20**	二十	ēr shí
1	一	yee	**30**	三十	sun shí
2	二/两	ēr/lyùng	**40**	四十	sēe shí
3	三	sun	**50**	五十	wòo shí
4	四	sī	**60**	六十	lyo shí
5	五	wòo	**70**	七十	chee shí
6	六	lyo	**80**	八十	ba shí
7	七	chee	**90**	九十	jyò shí
8	八	ba	**100**	一百	yée bay
9	九	jyò	**1000**	一千	yée chyen
10	十	shí	**1,000,000**	一百万	yée bay wūn

time & dates

What time is it?	现在几点钟?	chyēn zāi jee dyèn
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点钟。	(shí) dyèn
Quarter past (10).	(十)点十五分。	(shí) dyèn shí wòo fern
Half past (10).	(十)点三十分。	(shí) dyèn sun shí fern
Quarter to (11).	(十)点四十五分。	(shí) dyèn sī shí wòo fern
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)		
At what time (does it start)?	啥时候(开始)?	sā sí ho (kǎi sì)
(It starts) At 10.	十点钟(开始)。	shí dyèn (kǎi sì)
It's (18 October).	(十月十号)。	(shí ywē shír ba hāo)





yesterday	昨天	zó tyen
today	今天	jin tyen
now	现在	shyēn zāi
tonight	今晚	jīn wùn
tomorrow	明天	míng tyen
this …	这个 …	jày ger …
morning (after breakfast)	早上	zào shung
morning (before lunch)	上午	shǔng wòo
afternoon	下午	shyā wòo
sunrise	日出	rí choo
sunset	日落	rí lwor
spring	春天	choon tyen
summer	夏天	shyā tyen
autumn	秋天	chyǒ tyen
winter	冬天	dòong tyen

Monday	星期一	shīng chée yee
Tuesday	星期二	shīng chée ēr
Wednesday	星期三	shīng chée sun
Thursday	星期四	shīng chée sī
Friday	星期五	shīng chée wòo
Saturday	星期六	shīng chée lyo
Sunday	星期天	shīng chée tyen

January	一月	yee ywe
February	二月	ēr ywe
March	三月	sun ywe
April	四月	sī ywe
May	五月	wòo ywe
June	六月	lyo ywe
July	七月	chee ywe
August	八月	ba ywe
September	九月	jyò ywe
October	十月	shí ywe
November	十一月	shí yee ywe
December	十二月	shí ēr ywe

transport & directions

Is this the … to Xī'ān?	这 … 到 (西安) 去不?	jèr … dāo (shee·un) chēe boo
boat	船	shwún
bus	车	cher
train	火车	hwòr cher
Where's a/the …?	… 在啥地方?	… zāi sā dēe fung
bank	银行	yín húng
place to change foreign money	换外币的地方	hwūn wāi bēe der dēe fung
post office	邮局	yó jóo

Is this the road to (the Bell Tower)?
走这条路能到 (钟楼) 不?
zò jèr tyáo lōo nérng dāo (jōong ló) boo

Can you show me where it is on the map?
能帮我寻下它在地图上的位置不?
nérng bung ng shín ha tà zāi dēe tóo shung dee wāy jí boo

What's the address?	啥地方?	sā dēe fung
How far is it?	有多远?	yò dwor ywùn
Is it walking distance?	要走多远?	yāo zò dwŏr ywùn
How do I get there?	咋走?	zà zò
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	wūng zwòr/yō gwài
It's straight ahead.	一直往前。	yee jí wūng chyén

It's …	在 …	zāi …
behind …	… 后边	… hō byen
in front of …	… 前边	… chyén byen
near …	… 附近	… fōo jīn
on the corner	拐角	gwài jewe
opposite …	… 对过	… dwāy gwōr
there	无达	wóo da



accommodation

Where's a guest house?
啥地方有宾馆?
sā dēe fung yò bin gwùn

Where's a hotel?
啥地方有酒店?
sā dēe fung yò jyò dyēn

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你能推荐个便宜点的住处不?
nèe nérng tway jyen ger pyén yee dyen·er dee jōo chòo boo

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你能推荐个好点的住处不?
nèe nérng tway jyen ger hào dyen·er dee jōo chòo boo

I'd like to book a room.
我想订房。
ng shyùng dīng fúng

I have a reservation.
我预订咧。
ng yōo dīng lye

Do you have a … room?	有没有 … 间?	yò mer yò … jyen
double (suite)	套	tāo
single	单人	dun rérn
twin	双人	shwung rérn

How much is it per night?
每天多钱?
mày tyen dwor chyen

How much is it per person?
每人多钱?
mày rérn dwor chyen

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
住(三)天。
jōo (sun) tyen

Could I have my key, please?
能给把房间钥匙不?
nérng gày bà fúng jyen yewe si boo

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我能多拿一条(毛毯)不?
ng nérng dwor ná ee tyáo (máo tùn) boo

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有问题。
(kòng tyáo) yò wérn tée

What time is checkout?
几点退房?
jee dyèn twāy fúng

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿回我的 …	ng shyùng ná hwáy ng dee …
deposit	押金	ya jin
passport	护照	hōo jāo

banking & communications

Where's the local internet cafe?
附近有没有网吧?
fōo jīn yò mer yò wùng ba

Where's a/an …?	… 在啥地方?	… zāi sā dēe fung
ATM	自动取款机	zīr dōng chèw kwèn jee
public phone	公用电话	gong yōng dyēn hwā

I'd like to …	我想 …	ng shyùng …
get internet access	上网	shūng wùng
use a printer	打印	dà yīn
use a scanner	扫描	sào myáo

What's your phone number?
你电话号码是多少? nì dyēn hwā hāo mà si dwor shào

The number is …
号码是 … hāo mà si …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
我想看看本地景点儿。 ng shyùng kūn kun bèrn dēe jìng dyèn·er

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
我想去人少的景点儿。 ng shyùng chēe rérn shào dee jìng dyèn·er

How long is the tour?
出行要多长时间? choo shíng yāo dwor chúng sí jyen

I'd like to see …
我想看 … ng shyùng kūn …

What's that?
握是啥? wòr si sā

Can I take a photo?
我能拍不? ng nérng pay boo





sightseeing		
Army of Terracotta Warriors	西安兵马俑	shee·un bīng mà yòong
Big Goose Pagoda	大雁塔	dā yūn ta
Famen Temple	法门寺	fǎ mérn sī
Huà Shān	华山	hwā sun
Hukou Waterfall	壶口瀑布	hòo kò pōo bōo
Qian Tomb	乾陵	chyén líng
Tang Paradise Theme Park	大唐芙蓉园	dā túng fóo róong ywún

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在啥地方?	… zāi sā dēe fung
camera shop	照相馆	jāo shyūng gwùn
market	市场	sī chùng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	jēe nyēn pìn dyēn

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?
啥地方可买地方纪念品? sā dēe fung kèr yee mài dēe fung jēe nyēn pìn

What's this made from?	这是用啥做的?	jer si yōng sā zō dee
I'd like to buy …	我想买 …	ng shyùng mài …
Can I look at it?	我能看下不?	ng nérng kūn ha boo
How much is it?	多钱?	dwor chyén
That's too expensive.	太贵咧。	tāi gwāy lye

Please write down the price.
请把价钱写下来。 chìng ba jyā chyen shyè hā lai

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱。 gày nì (woo kwài) chyen

Do you accept credit cards?
收信用卡不? sho shīn yōng kà boo

less	少	shào
enough	足够	zóo gō
more	多	dwor
bigger	大一点	dā yee dyèn·er
smaller	小一点	swāy yee dyèn·er

meeting people

Hello.	你好。	nì hào
Good morning.	早上好。	zào shung hào
Good afternoon.	下午好。	shyā wòo hào
Good evening.	晚上好。	wùn shang hào
Goodbye.	再见。	zāi jyēn
Good night.	晚安。	wùn un

Mr	先生	shyen serng
Mrs	女士	nèw sī
Ms/Miss	小姐	shyao jye
How are you?	最近咋样?	zwāy jīn zà yūng
Fine. And you?	不错。你咋样?	bóo tswor nì zà yūng
What's your name?	你叫啥?	nì jyāo sā
My name is …	我叫 …	ng jyāo …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	shīng hwāy
This is my …	这是我 …	jer sī ńg …
brother	兄弟	shyoong dee
child	娃	wā
daughter	女子	nèw zi
father	爸	bā
friend	朋友	pérng yo
husband	丈夫	jūng foo
mother	妈	má
partner (intimate)	对象	dwāy shyūng
sister	姐妹	jyè may
son	儿子	ér zi
wife	媳妇	shee fer





making conversation

Do you live here?	你住这儿?	nì jōo jèr·er
Where are you going?	去阿达?	chēe á da
Do you like it here?	喜欢这儿不?	shèe hwun jèr·er boo
I love it here.	我很喜欢这儿。	ng hèrn shèe hwun jèr·er
Have you eaten?	吃咧么?	chee lye mer
Are you here on holiday?	你来这旅游不?	nì lái jèr lèw yó boo
I'm here …	我来这 …	ng lái jer·er …
for a holiday	旅游	lèw yó
on business	出差	chóo tsai
to study	留学	lyó shéwe

How long are you here for?
你在这儿住多久? nì jāi jèr·er jōo dwŏr jyò

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)个星期。 ng joo (sī) ger shing chee

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我可以给(你)拍张照片不? ng kè yee gày (nì) pay jung jāo pyēn boo

Do you speak (Xi'an)?
你会说(西安话)不? nì hwāy shwor (shee·un hwā) boo

What language do you speak at home?
你在家说啥话? nì zāi jya shwor sā hwā

What do you call this in (Xi'an)?
这个用(西安话)咋说? jày ger yōong (shee·un hwā) za shwor

What's this called?
这叫啥? jèr jyāo sā

I'd like to learn some (Xi'an).
我想学(西安话)。 ng shyùng shéwe (shee·un hwā)

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你愿意让我教你英文不? nì ywūn yee rūng ng jyao nì yīng wóon boo

Is this a local custom?
这是不是地方风俗? jer sī boo sī dēe fung ferng sóo

local talk

Great!	聊地很!	lyáo dee hèrn
Hey!	劳驾!	láo jyā
It's OK.	还行。	hái shíng
Just a minute.	稍微等一下。	sāo wáy dèrng yee ha
Just joking.	开玩笑。	kāi wún shyāo
Maybe.	有可能。	yò kèr nérng
No problem.	末麻达。	mŏr má da
No way!	没门!	mŏr mérn·er
Sure, whatever.	能成。	nérng chérng
That's enough!	够咧!	gō lye

Where are you from?	你从阿达来?	nì tsóong á da lai
I'm from …	我从 … 来。	ng tsóng … lai
Australia	澳大利亚	āo dā lēe yà
Canada	加拿大	jyǎ ná dā
England	英国	yìng gway
New Zealand	新西兰	shin shee lún
the USA	美国	mày gway
What's your occupation?	你做啥工作?	nì zō sā gong zwor
I'm a/an …	我是 …	ng sī …
businessperson	商人	shǔng rern
office worker	白领	báy lìng
tradesperson	工匠	gong jyung
How old …?	… 多大咧?	… dwǒr dā lye
are you	你	nì
is your daughter	你女子	nǐ nèw zi
is your son	你儿子	nǐ ér zi
I'm … years old.	我 … 岁。	ng … swāy
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	tà … swāy
Too old!	太老咧 !	tāi lào lye
I'm younger than I look.	我还小。	ng hái sway
Are you married?	你结婚咧吗?	nì jyé hoon lye mer
I live with someone.	我有伴儿。	ng yò bùn·er
Do you have a family?	你成家咧吗?	nì chérng jya lye mer
I'm …	我 …	ng …
married	结婚咧	jyé hoon lye
single	单身	dún shern
Do you like …?	你喜欢 … 不?	nì shèe hwun … boo
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢 …	ng (boo) shèe hwun …
art	艺术	yēe shōo
film	看电影	kūn dyēn yìng
music	听歌	tíng ger
reading	看书	kūn shoo
sport	体育	tèe yēw

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不) …	ng (boo) …
Are you …?	你 … 不?	nì … boo
cold	冷	lèrng
hot	热	rer
hungry	饿	ng
thirsty	渴	ker
tired	累	lāy
I (don't) feel …	我(不)感到 …	ng (boo) gùn dāo …
Do you feel …?	你感到 … 不?	nì gùn dāo … boo
happy	高兴	gǎo shīng
sad	不高兴	boo gǎo shīng
worried	着急	jao jée
What do you think of it?	你觉得咋样?	nèe jewe dee za yūng
It's …	它 …	tà …
awful	差劲地很	tsǎ jīn dee hèrn
beautiful	漂亮地很	pyāo lyung dee hèrn
boring	无聊地很	wóo lyáo dee hèrn
great	增送地很	jěrng sóng dee hèrn
interesting	有意思地很	yò yēe si dee hèrn
OK	还行	hái shíng
strange	奇怪	chée gwāi

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要走。 míng tyen ng yāo zò

If you come to (Scotland), you can stay with me.
有机会来(苏格兰), yò jee hway lái (sŏo ger lún)
可以来寻我。 kèr yee lái shín ng

Keep in touch!	保持联系!	bào chée lyén shēe
Here's my (address).	这是我的(地址)。	jèr si ng dee (dēe zì)
What's your (email)?	你(邮箱)是啥?	nì (yó shyung) si sā

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	yěe lōo píng un
Congratulations!	恭喜，恭喜！	gōng shèe, gōng shèe
Good luck!	祝你好运！	jōo nì hào yōon
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	sěrng ri kwāi ler
Happy New Year!	新年好！	shīn nyén hào

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 该到啥地方?	… gāi dāo sā dēe fung
banquet	办宴席	būn yūn shée
celebration	举行庆祝会	jèw shíng chīng jōo hwāy
cheap meal	吃得便宜一点儿	chee dee pyén yee dyèn·er
local specialities	地方小吃	dēe fung shyào chi
yum cha	喝茶	hwŏr tsá
Can you recommend a …?	能推荐个 … 不?	nérng twāy jyēn ger … boo
bar	酒吧	jyò ba
cafe	咖啡屋	ká fáy woo
dish	盘儿	pún·er
noodle house	面馆	myēn gwùn
restaurant	饭店	fūn dyen
snack shop	小吃店	shyào chee dyēn
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊	(hóon toon) tun·er
street vendor	大排档	dā pái dūng
teahouse	茶馆	tsá gwùn
I'd like (a/the) …	我要 …	ng yāo …
table for (five)	一张(五个人的)桌子	yée jung (wòo ger rérn dee) jwor zi
bill	帐单	jūng dun
drink list	酒水单	jyò shwày dun
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	yěe gēr dēe fung táy say tsāi
menu	菜单	tsāi dun
(non)smoking table	(不)吸烟的桌子	(boo) shée yun dee jwor zi

Are you still serving food?
还营业不? hái yíng ye boo

What would you recommend?
有啥菜可以推荐? yò sà tsài kèr yee twǎy jyēn

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早饭)一般吃啥? (zào fūn) yée bun chee sā

What's in that dish?
这道菜用啥东西做的? jèr dāo tsāi yōng sā dong shee zō dee

What's that called?
为个叫啥? wày ger jyāo sā

I'll have that.
来一个。 lái yee ger





I'd like it with …	多放点儿 …	dwǒr fūng dyen·er …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	boo yāo fūng …
chilli	辣子	là zi
garlic	大蒜	dā swēn
MSG	味精	wāy jing
nuts	果仁	gwòr rér
oil	油	yó
I'd like …, please.	请给我 …	chìng gày ng …
one slice	一块	yěe kwài·er
a piece	一份	yěe fùn·er
a sandwich	一个三明治	yěe gē sǔn míng jēe
that one	为个	wày ge
two	两个	lyùng ge
This dish is …	这道菜 …	jèr dāo tsāi …
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tāi) la
superb	好地很	hào dee hèrn
That was delicious!	好吃地很!	hào chee dee hèrn
I'm full.	吃饱咧。	chěe bào lye

breakfast	早饭	zào fūn
lunch	午饭	wòo fūn
dinner	晚饭	wùn fūn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jyò
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yìn lyāo
… water	… 水	… fày
boiled	开	kāi
cold	凉开	lyúng kāi
sparkling mineral	矿泉汽	kwūng chwún chēe
still mineral	矿泉	kwūng chwún
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(yée bay) ká fay …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(yée bay) tsá …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	jyǎ (nyó nài)
without (sugar)	不加(糖)	bóo jya (túng)
black tea	红茶	hóng tsá
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jéw hwa tsá
green tea	绿茶	lew tsá
jasmine tea	花茶	hwa tsá
oolong tea	乌龙茶	woo lúng tsá
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	swǔn nài
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chérng) ji
lychee juice	荔枝	lēe ji
soft drink	汽水	chēe fày
sour plum drink	酸梅汤	shwǎn máy tung





I'll buy you a drink.
我请客。 ng chìng kay

What would you like?
吃啥? chěe sā

Cheers!
干! gun

I'm feeling drunk.
我有点儿喝高咧。 ng yò dyèn·er hér gao lye

a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	yee … pée jyò
glass	杯	bay
large bottle	大瓶	dà píng
small bottle	小瓶	shyào píng
a shot of (whisky)	一杯(威士忌)	yée bay (wāy shèe jèe)
a bottle/glass	一瓶/杯	yěe píng/bay
of … wine	… 葡萄酒	… póo tao jyò
red	红	hóng
white	白	báy

street eats

deep-fried persimmon pastry	黄桂柿子饼	hwúng gwāy sī zi bìng
dumpling stuffed with hot gravy	贾三灌汤包	jyà sun-er gwūn túng bao
Qíshān pancake	岐山锅盔	chée sun gwor kway
Qíshān spiced noodles	岐山哨子面	chée sun sāo zi myĕn
rice and jujube cake	甑糕	jīng gao
roasted mutton cubes on spit	烤羊肉串	kào yúng ro chwùn-er
Shaanxi sandwich	肉夹馍	rō jya mōr
shredded pancake with beef	牛羊肉泡馍	nyó yúng ro pāo mōr
steamed cold noodles	凉皮	lyúng pée

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
有没有素食食品? yò mer yò sōo shí

Could you prepare a meal without …?
能不能做一个不放 … 的菜? nérng boo nérng zō yee ge bŏo fūng … dee tsāi

I'm allergic to …	我对 … 过敏。	ng dwāy … gwōr mìn
dairy produce	奶制品	nài jī pìn
eggs	鸡蛋	jĕe dūn
meat	肉	rō
nuts	果仁	gwòr rérn-er
seafood	海鲜	hài shyen

emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	jyō mīng
Go away!	走开！	zò kai
Fire!	着火咧！	chwór hwòr lye
Watch out!	操心！	tsáo shin
Where's the nearest …?	最近的 … 在哪儿?	zwāy jīn dee … zāi nà
dentist	牙医	yá yee
doctor	医生	yēe serng
hospital	医院	yěe ywūn
pharmacist	药房	yěwe fúng

Could you please help?
能帮个忙不？ nérng bǔng ger múng boo

Can I use your phone?
能借你电话用一下不? nérng jyē nèe dyên hwā yōng yee ha boo

Where's the police station?
派出所在哪里? pāi choo swòr zāi nà

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪儿? tsǎy swòr zāi nà

I'm lost.
我迷路咧。 ng mée lōo lye

english–xi'an dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾祸 zāi hwòr
accident (traffic) 交通事故 jyāo tong sì gòo
accommodation 食宿 shí sòo
adaptor 编剧 byèn jēw
address n 地址 dēe zì
after 之后 zí hò
air conditioning 空调 kòng tyáo
airplane 飞机 fāy jee
airport 机场 jēe chùng
alcohol 酒 jyò
all 所有的 swòr yò dee
allergy 过敏 gwòr mìn
ambulance 救护车 jyò hòo cher
and 和 hér
ankle 踝 hwái
antibiotics 抗生素 kùng serng sòo
arm 手臂 shò bēe
ATM 自动取款机 zìr dòng chèw kwèn jee

B

baby 婴儿 yīng er
back (of body) 背 bāy
backpack 背包 bāy bao
bad 坏的 hwái dee
bag 包 bao
baggage 行李 shíng lee
bank 银行 yín húng
bar 酒吧 jyò ba
bathroom 澡堂 zao tung
battery 电池 dyèn chí
beautiful 漂亮的 pyāo lyung dee
bed 床 chwúng
beer 啤酒 pée jyò
before 之前 zí chyén
behind 之后 zí hò
bicycle 自行车 zí shíng cher
big 大的 dà dee
bill 帐单 jùng dun
blanket 毛毯 máo tùn
blood group 血型 shěwe shíng
boat 船 shwún
book (make a reservation) v 预订 yēw dìng
bottle 瓶 píng
boy 男娃 nún wá
brakes (car) 煞车 sá cher
breakfast 早饭 zào fùn
broken (out of order) 坏掉的 hwái dyào dee
bus 车 cher
business 生意 sērng yee
buy v 买 mài

C

camera 相机 shyūng jee
cancel 取消 chèw shyāo
car 汽车 chē cher
cash n 现金 shyèn jīn
cash (a cheque) v 取钱 chèw chyén
cell phone 手机 shò jee
centre n 中心 jōng shin
change (money) v 零钱 líng chyén
cheap 便宜的 pyén yee dee
check (bill) 帐单 jùng dun
check-in n 登记 dēng jē
chest (body) 胸膛 shyōng túng
children 儿童 ér tóng
cigarette 香烟 shyūng yun
city 城市 chèrng sí
clean a 干净的 gūn jīng dee
closed 关闭的 gwūn bē dee
cold a 冷的 lèrng dee
collect call 对方付费电话 dwāy fung fòo fāy dyèn hwà
come 来 lái
computer 电脑 dyèn nào
condom 避孕套 bèe yòon tào
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yìn shíng nyèn jìng
cook v 烹饪 pērng rērn
cost n 价格 jyà gay
credit card 信用卡 shìn yòng kà
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hwòr bē dwāy hwùn
customs (immigration) 海关 hài gwūn

D

dangerous 危险的 way shyèn dee
date (time) 日子 er zi
day 天 tyen
delay v 延迟 yún tsí

dentist 牙医 yā yee
depart 出发 chóo fa
diaper 尿布 nyāo bòo
dinner 晚饭 wùn fùn
direct a 直接的 jī jye dee
dirty 脏的 zung dee
disabled 残废的 tsún fāy dee
discount v 打折 dà jér
doctor 医生 yēe serng
double bed 双人床 shwūng rérn chwúng
double room 双人房 shwūng rérn fúng
drink n 饮料 yìn lyāo
drive v 开车 kāi cher
driving licence 驾照 jyā jāo
drug (illicit) 毒品 dóo pìn

E

ear 耳朵 èr dwor
east 东 dong
eat 吃 chi
economy class 经济舱 jīng jēe tsung
electricity 电 dyēn
elevator 电梯 dyēn tee
email 电子邮件 dyēn zì yó jyēn
embassy 大使馆 dà sì gwùn
emergency 紧急状况 jìn jée jwūng kwūng
English (language) 英语 yīng yèw
evening 傍晚 bùng wùn
exit n 出口 chōo kò
expensive 贵的很 gwāy dee hèrn
eye 眼睛 nyèn jing

F

far 远的很 ywùn dee hèrn
fast 快的很 kwāi dee hèrn
father 爸 bā
film (camera) 胶卷 jyāo jwùn
finger 指头 zǐ to
first-aid kit 急救箱 jée jyō shyung
first class 头等舱 tó dèrng tsung
fish n 鱼 yéw
food 食物 shí pìn
foot 脚 jewe
free (of charge) 免费的 myèn fāy dee
friend 朋友 pérng yo
fruit 水果 shway gwòr
full 满的 mùn dee

G

gift 礼物 lèe woo
girl 女娃 nèw wā
glass (drinking) 杯子 bāy zi
glasses 眼镜 nyèn jìng
go 去 chēe
good 好的 hào dee
guide n 导游 dào yó

H

half n 一半 yēe ber
hand 手 shò
happy 高兴的 gāo shīng dee
he 他 tā
head n 头 tó
heart 心 shing
heavy 重的很 jòng dee hèrn
help 帮助 bùng zō
here 制达 jí da
high 高的 gāo dee
highway 高速公路 gāo sòo gōng lōo
hike v 徒步旅行 tóo bōo lèw shíng
holiday 假期 jyà chee
homosexual 同性恋 tóng shìng lyēn
hospital 医院 yēe ywūn
hot 热的 rèr dee
hotel 旅馆 lēw gwùn
(be) hungry 饿的很 ng dee hèrn
husband 丈夫 jùng foo

I

I 我 ng
identification (card) 身份证 shērn fern jērng
ill 有病的 yò bìng dee
important 重要的 jòng yāo dee
injury (harm) 侮辱 wòo ròo
injury (wound) 伤口 shūng kò
insurance 保险 bǎo shyèn
internet 因特网 yīn ter wùng
interpreter 翻译 fūn yee

J

jewellery 首饰 shò shi
job 工作 gòng zwor

K

key 钥匙 yēwe si
kilogram 公斤 gōng jīn
kitchen 厨房 chóo fúng
knife 小刀 shyào dao

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 sèe yee dyèn
lawyer 律师 lêw si
left (direction) 左 zwòr
leg (body) 腿 twày
lesbian 女同性恋 nèw tóng shîng lyèn
less 少 shào
letter (mail) 信 shîn
light n 光 gwung
like v 喜欢 shèe hwun
lock n 锁 swòr
long 长的 chúng dee
lost (items) 遗失的 yée shi dee
love v 爱 ài
luggage 行李 shíng lèe
lunch 午饭 wòo fùn

M

mail n 信 shîn
man 男人 nún rérn
map 地图 dèe tóo
market 市场 sî chùng
matches 火柴 hwòr tsái
meat 肉 rō
medicine 药 yewe
message 信息 shîn shèe
milk 牛奶 nyó nài
minute 分钟 fêrn jong
mobile phone 手机 shò jee
money 钱 chyén
month 月 yewe
morning 早上 zào shung
mother 妈 ma
motorcycle 摩托车 mwór twór cher
mouth 口 kò

N

name 名字 míng zi
near 近的 jîn dee
neck n 脖子 bór zi
new 新的 shîn dee
newspaper 报纸 bào zi
night 晚上 wùn shung
no (not at all) 一点儿也不 yêe dyèn-er yè boo
no (not this) 不是 bôo sì
noisy 喧闹的 shyùn nāo dee
nonsmoking 禁止吸烟 jîn zi shêe yun
north 北 bay
nose 鼻子 bée zi
now 现在 shyèn zāi
number 数字 shôo zî

O

old (people) 老 lào
old (things) 旧 jyō
one-way ticket 单程票 dūn chérng pyāo
open a 开着的 kāi jer dee
outside 外部的 wāi bōo dee

P

passport 护照 hōo jāo
pay v 付钱 fòo chyén
pharmacy 药房 yèwe fúng
phonecard 电话卡 dyèn hwā kà
photo 照片 jāo pyèn
police 警察 jing tsa
postcard 明信片 míng shîn pyèn
post office 邮局 yó jóo
pregnant 怀孕的 hwái yôon dee
price n 价格 jyā ger

Q

quiet a 安静的 ùn jîng dee

R

rain n 雨 yèw
razor 刮胡刀 gwā hóo dao
receipt n 收据 shō jêw
refund n 退款 twày kwùn
registered (mail) 记名的 jêe míng dee
rent v 出租 chóo zoo
repair v 修理 shyō lèe
reserve v 预订 yèw dîng
restaurant 饭店 fùn dyen
return (give back) 还 hwún
return (go back) 回来 hwáy lai
return ticket 返程票 fùn chérng pyāo
right (direction) 右 yò
road 路 lôo
room n 房间 fúng jyen

S

safe a 安全的 ūn chwún dee
sanitary napkin 卫生棉 wāy sêrng myén
seat n 座位 zwòr wày
send 发送 fā sông
sex (intercourse) 性行为 shîng shíng way
sex (gender) 性别 shîng byé
shampoo 洗发香波 shèe fā shyúng bor
share (a dorm) 分享 fêrn shyùng

she 她 tā
sheet (bed) 床单 chwúng dun
shirt 衬衫 tsern sun
shoes 鞋 hái
shop n 商店 shūng dyēn
short 短的 dwùn dee
shower n 洗澡 shèe zào
single room 单人房 dūn rérn fúng
skin n 皮肤 pée foo
skirt n 裙子 chóon zi
sleep v 睡眠 shwāy myén
slow 慢的 mūn dee
small 小的 swāy dee
soap 肥皂 fáy zāo
some 一些 yēe shye
soon 马上 mà shūng
south 南 nún
souvenir 纪念品 jēe nyēn pìn
stamp 邮票 yó pyāo
stand-by ticket 站台票 zūn tái pyāo
station (train) 火车站 hwòr cher zūn
stomach 胃 wày
stop v 停止 tíng zì
stop (bus) n 站台 zūn tái
street 街 jye
student 学生 shéwe serng
sun 太阳 tài yung
sunscreen 防晒油 fúng sāi yó
swim v 游泳 yó yòng

T

tampon 止血棉球 zì shěwe myēn chyó
telephone n 电话 dyēn hwà
temperature (weather) 温度 wērn dōo
that 为个 wày ger
they 他们 ta mern
(be) thirsty 口渴的 kò kĕr dee
this 这个 jày ger
throat 喉咙 hó long
ticket 票 pyāo
time 时间 sí jyen
tired 累的 lày dee
tissues 卫生纸 wāy sērng zì
today 今天 jīn tyen
toilet 厕所 tsāy swòr
tomorrow 明天 míng tyen
tonight 今晚 jīn wùn
tooth 牙 nyá
toothbrush 牙刷 nyá shwa
toothpaste 牙膏 nyá gāo
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 shò dyēn tòng
tour n 旅行 lèw shíng
tourist office 旅行社 lèw shíng shĕr
towel 毛巾 máo jin
train n 火车 hwòr cher
translate 翻译 fūn yee
travel agency 旅行社 lèw shíng shĕr
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lèw shíng zī pyāo
trousers 裤子 kòo zi
twin-bed room 标间 byāo jyen

U

underwear 内衣裤 nāy yēe kòo
urgent 紧急的 jīn jée dee

V

vacancy 空缺 kōng chewe
vegetable n 蔬菜 shōo tsai
vegetarian a 素 sōo
visa 签证 chyēn jērng

W

walk v 步行 bōo shíng
wallet 钱包 chyén bao
wash (something) 洗 shèe
watch n 观看 gwūn kùn
water n 水 fāy
we 我们 ng mern
weekend 周末 jó mor
west 西 shee
wheelchair 轮椅 lóon yèe
when 当…时 dūng … sír
where 在啊达 zāi á da
who 谁 sáy
why 为啥 wāy sá
wife 老婆 lào pwor
window 窗户 chūng hoo
with 和 hér
without 没有 mĕr yò
woman 女人 nèw rern
write 写 shyè

Y

yes 是 sì
yesterday 昨天 zó tyen
you sg inf 你 ni
you sg pol 您 ní
you pl 你们 ni mern

Yunnan Hua

TONES	230
ABOUT YUNNAN HUA	231
PRONUNCIATION	232
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	233
TIME & DATES	234
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	235
ACCOMMODATION	236
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	237
SIGHTSEEING	238
SHOPPING	239
MEETING PEOPLE	240
MAKING CONVERSATION	241
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	243
FAREWELLS	244
EATING OUT	245
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	248
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	248
ENGLISH–YUNNAN HUA DICTIONARY	249

tones

Yunnan Hua is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). In this chapter Yunnan Hua is represented with four tones, as well as a fifth one, the neutral tone. Apart from the unmarked neutral tone, we have used symbols above the vowels to indicate each tone, as shown in the table below for the vowel 'a'. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.

high tone ā	high rising tone á	low falling-rising tone ǎ	high falling tone à
			

about Yunnan Hua

Yúnnán may well be China's most diverse province. In the far southwest of the country it borders Vietnam, Laos, Burma and Tibet; it's noted for the variety of its topography and myriad plant species, and is the most ethnically diverse province in China, boasting communities of 25 of China's 56 recognised nationalities. These various communities speak a range of tongues from Tibeto-Burmese, Tai and Hmong-Mien language families. Despite this linguistic diversity, Yunnan Hua (yìn nùn hwà 云南话) is broadly lumped together with other southwestern dialects of Mandarin because of its similarity to Standard Mandarin. Yunnan Hua evolved this way due to the influx of Mandarin speakers from northern China in recent centuries. To the trained ear the only different elements of Yunnan Hua are a strong accent and some minor differences in pronunciation and grammatical structure. The idiom of the 'City of Eternal Spring', Kūnmíng, capital of Yúnnán province, is said to constitute a distinct dialect of Yunnan Hua, featuring some idiosyncratic pronunciations.

yunnan hua



Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**ther	b	**b**ed
ai	**ai**sle	ch	**ch**eat
air	l**air** with strong 'r'	d	**d**og
ao	M**ao**	f	**f**un
ay	s**ay**	g	**g**o
e	t**a**ken	h	**h**at
ea	y**ea**h	j	**j**ump
ee	s**ee**	k	**k**id
er	h**er**	l	**l**ot
ew	as in n**ew**, with rounded lips	m	**m**an
i	h**i**t	n	**n**o
o	l**o**w	ng	ri**ng**
oo	t**oo**l	p	**p**et
or	m**or**e	r	**r**un
u	c**u**t	s	**s**un
In this chapter, the Yunnan Hua pronunciation is given in brown after each phrase. For pronunciation of tones, see p230.		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	c**ats**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	l**ads**

essentials		
Yes.	活呢。	hòr nē
No.	不活。	bóo hòr
Please …	请 …	chìng …
Hello.	你好。	nī hào
Goodbye.	再见咯。	zài jyèn gèr
Thank you.	谢谢你噶。	shàir shāir nì gà
Excuse me.	麻烦一哈。	mà fún yì hà
Sorry.	不好意思咯。	bòo háo yì sī gē

language difficulties

Do you speak English?
你咯会讲英文? ní gē hwày jùng yīng wèn

Do you understand?
你咯懂呢? ní gē dòng nē

I (don't) understand.
我认(不)得。 wór ryèn (bōo) dèr

I (don't) speak Yunnan Hua.
我讲得(不)来云南话。 wór júng dè (bōo) lài yìn nùn hwà

Could you please …?	你咯能 …?	ní gē nyèn …
repeat that	重新讲一遍	chòng shīng júng yì byén
speak more slowly	说慢叠	shòr mùn déa

numbers					
0	零	lìng	**20**	二十	ér shì
1	一	yì	**30**	三十	sūn shì
2	二	ér	**40**	四十	sì shì
3	三	sūn	**50**	五十	wóo shì
4	四	sì	**60**	陆十	lòo shì
5	五	wóo	**70**	七十	chì shì
6	陆	lòo	**80**	八十	bà shì
7	七	chì	**90**	九十	jyéw shì
8	八	bà	**100**	一百	yí bèr
9	九	jyéw	**1000**	一千	yí chyēn
10	十	shì	**1,000,000**	一百万	yí bèr wūn

time & dates

What time is it?	这阵几点?	jyè jyèn jée dyén
It's (10) o'clock.	(十)点。	(shì) dyén
Quarter past (10).	(十)点过十五。	(shì) dyén gōr shì wōo
Half past (10).	(十)点半。	(shì) dyén bùn
Quarter to (11).	(十)点过四十五。	(shì) dyén gōr sì shí wōo
(literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)		
At what time (does it start)?	哪哈(开始)?	ná hà (kāi shì)
(It starts) At 10.	十点(开始)。	shì dyén (kāi shì)
It's (18 October).	(十月十八号)。	(shì yeā shì bà hào)





yesterday	昨天	zòr tyēn
today	今天	jīn tyēn
now	这哈	jyè hà
tonight	今天晚上	jīn tyēn wún shùng
tomorrow	明天	mìng tyēn
sunrise	日出	rí chòo
sunset	日落	rí lòr
this …	这个 …	jyè gè …
morning (after breakfast)	早上	záo shùng
morning (before lunch)	上午	shúng wóo
afternoon	下午	shyàr wóo
spring	春天	chwēn tyēn
summer	夏天	shyàr tyēn
autumn	秋天	chyēw tyēn
winter	冬天	dōng tyēn

Monday	星期一	shīng chī yì
Tuesday	星期二	shīng chī ér
Wednesday	星期三	shīng chī sūn
Thursday	星期四	shīng chī sì
Friday	星期五	shīng chī wóo
Saturday	星期陆	shīng chī lòo
Sunday	星期天	shīng chī tyēn

January	一月	yì yeā
February	二月	ér yeā
March	三月	sūn yeā
April	四月	sì yeā
May	五月	wóo yeā
June	陆月	lòo yeā
July	七月	chì yeā
August	八月	bà yeā
September	九月	jéw yeā
October	十月	shì yeā
November	十一月	shì yì yeā
December	十二月	shì ér yeā

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Kūnmíng)?	这个 … 咯克(昆明)呢?	jyè gè … gē kè (kwēn mìng) nē
boat	船	chùn
bus	公交车	gōng jyāo chē
train	火车	hór chē
Where's a/the …?	… 在哪叠?	… zài nā dèa
bank	银行	yìn hùng
place to change foreign money	换外币呢地方	hùn wài bì nē dì fūng
post office	邮局	yèw jèe

Is this the road to (the Green Lake)?
这个咯是克(翠湖)呢路? jèr gè gē shì kè (tswày hóo) nē lòo

Can you show me where it is on the map?
麻烦帮我找一哈它在地图上呢位置。 mà fún būng wòr yào yì hā tā zài dì tóo shùng nē wày jyì

What's the address?	地址是哪样?	dì jyī shì ná yùng
How far is it?	隔多远啊?	gè dôr yēn ā
Is it walking distance?	走过去咯远呢?	zō gòr kè gē yēn nē
How do I get there?	咋个走?	zà gè zō
Turn left/right.	往左/右拐。	wūng zòr/yèw gwài
It's straight ahead.	一直朝前。	yí jyì chào chyèn

It's …	在 …	zài …
behind …	… 呢后首	… nē hò shò
in front of …	… 呢前首	… nē chyèn shò
near …	… 呢附近	… nē fòo jìn
on the corner	… 拐角	… gwài jòr
opposite …	… 呢对面	… nē dwáy myèn
there	内叠	này dèa



accommodation

Where's a guest house?
哪叠有宾馆? nà dèa yèw bīn gùn

Where's a hotel?
哪叠有酒店? nà dèa yèw jéw dyèn

Can you recommend somewhere cheap?
你咯能推荐一个便宜叠呢地方住? nì gē nyèn twāy jyèn yì gè pyèn yì dèa nē dì fùng jyòo

Can you recommend somewhere good?
你咯能推荐一个好叠呢地方住 nì gē nyèn twāy jyèn yì gè hào dèa nē dì fùng jyòo

I'd like to book a room.
我想订哈房间。 wōr shyūng dìng hà fùng jyen

I have a reservation.
我有预定呢。 wōr yéw yée dìng nē

Do you have a …	嘎有 …	gē yéw …
room?	房间呢?	fùng jyēn nē
double	套	tào
single	单人	dūn ryèn
twin	双人	shwūng ryèn

How much is it per night?
多少钱一天?
dōr shào chyèn yì tyēn

How much is it per person?
多少钱一个人?
dōr shào chyèn yì gè ryèn

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
住上(三)天。
jyòo shùng (sān) tyēn

Could I have my key, please?
咯能个我房间呢钥匙?
gē nyèn gē wòr fùng jyēn nē yòr chī

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
我咯能多拿一条(毛毯)?
wòr gē nyèn dōr nà yì tyào (mào tún)

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(空调)有毛病。
(kōng tyào) yéw mào bìn

What time is checkout?
几点退房?
jí dyēn twày fùng

Could I have my …, please?	我想拿哈我呢 …	wòr shyūng nà hà wòr nē …
deposit	押金	yà jīn
passport	护照	hòo jyào

banking & communications

Where's the local internet cafe?
附近咯有网吧?
fòo jìn gē yēw wùng bā

Where's a/an …?	… 在哪叠?	… zài ná dèa
ATM	自动取款机	zì dòng chí kùn jī
public phone	公用电话	gōng yòng dyèn hwà
I'd like to …	我想 …	wōr shyūng …
get internet access	上网	shùng wūng
use a printer	打印	dā yìn
use a scanner	扫描	sāo myào

What's your phone number?

你呢电话号码是多少?	nì nē dyèn hwà hào mā shì dōr shào

The number is …

号码是 …	hào mā shì …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.

我想逛哈本地风光。	wōr shyūng gwùng hà byēn dì fōng gwūn

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.

我想去人少叠呢景点。	wōr shyung kè ryèn shào dèa nē jīng dyēn

How long is the tour?

这趟旅游要花多长时间?	jyè tùng lī yèw yào hwā dōr chùng shì jyēn

I'd like to see …

我想看哈 …	wōr shyūng kùn hà …

What's that?

内个是哪样?	này gè shì ná yùng

Can I take a photo?

我咯能拍呢?	wōr gē nyèn pè nē

sightseeing		
Dàlǐ three pagodas	大理三塔	dà lǐ sūn tà
Ěrhǎi Hú (Ear-shaped Lake)	洱海湖	eā hài hóo
Green Lake	翠湖	tswày hóo
Hǔtiào Xiá (Tiger Leaping Gorge)	虎跳峡	hōo tyào shyà
Lìjiāng	丽江	lì jyūng
Shangri-la	香格里拉	shyūng gè lée lā
Téngchōng	腾冲	tyèn chōng
Yùlóng Xuěshān (Jade Dragon Snow Mountain)	玉龙雪山	yì lòng shyeá shūn

shopping

Where's a …?	… 在哪叠?	… zài nā dèa
camera shop	照相馆	jyào shyung gwūn
market	市场	shì chūng
souvenir shop	纪念品店	jì nyèn pīn dyèn
supermarket	超市	chāo shì

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?
哪叠有卖纪念品呢? ná dèa yéw mài jì nyèn pīn nē

What's this made from?
这个是拿哪样整呢? jyè gè shì nà ná yùng jyéng nē

I'd like to buy …	我想买 …	wōr shyūng māi …
Can I look at it?	我咯能看一哈?	wōr gē nyèn kùn yì hà
How much is it?	多少钱?	dōr shào chyèn
That's too expensive.	太贵了。	tài gwày lē



Please write down the price.
麻烦把价钱写下来的。 mà fún bà jyà chyèn shyēa shyàr lài dē

I'll give you (five kuai).
给你(五块)钱。 gē nī (wōo kwāi) chyèn

Do you accept credit cards?
你们咯收信用卡呢? nì myēn gē shō shìn yòng kà nē

less	少	shào
enough	足够	zòo gò
more	多	dōr
bigger	更大	gyèn dà
smaller	更小	gyèn shyāo

meeting people

Hello.	你好。	nī hào
Good morning.	你早。	nī zào
Good afternoon.	下午好。	shyàr wōo hào
Good evening.	晚上好。	wūn shùng hào
Goodbye.	再见噶。	zài jyèn gè
Good night.	休息啦。	shēw shì lā
Mr	大哥	dà gōr
Mrs	大姐	dà jêa
Ms/Miss	姑娘	gōo nyūng



How are you?	你咯好呢?	nī gē hāo nē
Fine. And you?	好呢。你呢?	hāo nē, nī nē
What's your name?	你叫哪样名字?	nī jyào nà yùng mìng zì
My name is …	我叫 …	wōr jyào …
I'm pleased to meet you.	幸会。	shìng hwày
This is my …	这个是我呢 …	jyè gè shì wōr nē …
brother	兄弟	shyōng dì
child	娃娃	wà wā
daughter	姑娘	gōo nyūng
father	爹	dēa
friend	朋友	pòng yēw
husband	男人	nùn ryèn
mother	妈妈	mā mā
partner (intimate)	对象	dwày shyung
sister	姊妹	zí mày
son	男娃娃	nùn wà wā
wife	媳妇	shèe fòo

making conversation

Do you live here?	你住的这叠咯?	nì jyòo dē jyè dèa gē
Where are you going?	克哪叠克?	kè nā dèa kè
Do you like it here?	咯喜欢这叠?	gē shī hūn jyè dèa
I love it here.	我很喜欢这叠。	wōr hyèn shī hūn jyè dèa
Have you eaten?	咯吃的啦?	gē chī dè lā
Are you here on holidays?	你咯是来这叠玩呢?	nī gē shì lài jyè dèa wùn nē

I'm here …	我来这叠 …	wōr lài jyè dèa …
for a holiday	玩	wùn
on business	出差	chù chāi
to study	留学	lyèw shòr

How long are you here for?
你要在这叠住到哪哈? nī yào zài jyè dèa jyòo dào nā hà

I'm here for (four) weeks.
我住(四)周。 wōr jyòo (sì) jyō

Can I take a photo (of you)?
我咯可以拍(你)? wōr gē kòr yì pè (nī)

Do you speak (Yunnan Hua)?
你咯讲(云南话)? nī gē jùng (yìn nùn hwà)

What language do you speak at home?
你在家头讲哪样话? nī zài jyā tò jùng nā yùng hwà

What do you call this in (Yunnan Hua)?
你们用(云南话) nī myēn yòng (yìn nùn hwà)
喊这个喊哪样? hùn jyè gè hùn nā yàng

What's this called?
这个喊哪样? jyè gè hùn nā yàng

I'd like to learn some (Yunnan Hua).
我想学一哈(云南话) wōr shyùng shyòr yì hà (yìn nùn hwà)
咋个喊法。 zà gè hūn fà

Would you like me to teach you some English?
你咯想跟的我学英语? ní gé shyùng gēn dē wōr shyòr yīng yì

Is this a local custom?
这个咯是地方上呢风俗? jyè gè gē shì dì fūng shùng nē fōng sòo

local talk

Great!	板扎！	bún jyà
Hey!	麻烦！	mà fùn
It's OK.	整的成！	jyéng dè chèng
Just a minute.	等一头。	dyén yī tò
Just joking.	开玩笑。	kāi wùn shyào
Maybe.	有可能。	jéw kór nyèn
No problem.	某得事。	mó dè sì
No way!	不可能！	bòo kór nyèn
Sure, whatever.	好呢，好呢。	hào nē, bòo pà dè nē
That's enough!	可以了噶！	kór yí lē gà



Where are you from?	你从哪叠来?	ní tsòng nā déa lài
I'm from …	我从 … 来。	wór tsòng … lài
Australia	澳大利亚	ào dà lì yà
Canada	加拿大	jyā nà dà
England	英国	yīng gòr
New Zealand	新西兰	shīn shī lùn
the USA	美国	máy gòr
What's your occupation?	你是整哪样呢?	ní shì jyéng ná yùng nē
I'm a/an …	我当 …	wór dūng …
businessperson	做生意呢	zòr sēn yì nē
office worker	白领	bèr líng
tradesperson	师傅	sī fōo
How old …?	… 几岁啦?	… jí swày lā
are you	你	ní
is your daughter	你呢姑娘	ní jyā gōo nyūng
is your son	你呢儿子	ní jyā éer zì

I'm … years old.	我 … 岁。	wór … swày
He/She is … years old.	他/她 … 岁。	tā/tā … swày
Too old!	太老啦！	tài láo lā
I'm younger than I look.	我还是小呢。	wór hài shì shyāo nē
Are you married?	你咯结的婚啦?	ní gē jèa dè hwēn lā
I live with someone.	我有伴。	wór yéw bèr
Do you have a family?	你咯成家啦?	ní gē chèn jyā là
I'm …	我 …	wór …
married	结的婚了	jèa dè hwēn lē
single	单个	dūn shēn
Do you like …?	你咯喜欢 …?	ní gē shí hūn …
I (don't) like …	我(不)喜欢 …	wór (bòo) shí hūn …
art	艺术	yí shòo
film	电影	dyèn yíng
music	听歌	yīng yòr
reading	看书	kùn shōo
sport	体育	tí yì

feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	我(不)…	wór (bòo) …
Are you …?	你咯 …?	ní gē …
cold	冷呢	lèng nē
hot	热呢	rèr nē
hungry	饿呢	òr nē
thirsty	口渴呢	kó kòr nē
tired	累呢	lày nē
I (don't) feel …	我(不)觉得 …	wór (bòo) jòr dè …
Do you feel …?	你咯觉得 …?	ní gē jòr dè …
happy	高兴呢	gāo shìng nē
sad	不高兴	bòo gāo shìng
worried	着急	jyòr jì
What do you think of it?	你觉得咋个样?	ní jòr dè zá gè yùng

It's …	它 …	tā …
awful	差得很	chá dè hyén
beautiful	美丽呢	máy lì nē
boring	太无聊啦	tài wóo lyáo là
great	板扎	bún jyà
interesting	好玩呢	háo wùn nē
OK	还可以	hài kór yí
strange	稀奇	shī chì



farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
明天我要克啦。 mìng tyēn wór yào kè lā

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.
有机会么来(苏格兰)， yéw jī hwày mē lài (sōo gè lún)
可以来找我呢。 kòr yī lài jyāo wór nē

Keep in touch!
常联系！ chùng lyèn shì

Here's my (address).
个你我呢(地址)。 gē ní wór nē (dì jyī)

What's your (email)?
你呢(网址)是哪样? ní nē (wúng jyī) shì ná yùng

well-wishing		
Bon voyage!	一路平安！	yì lù píng ōn
Congratulations!	恭喜，恭喜！	gōng shì, gōng shì
Good luck!	祝你好运！	jyù ní hào yìn
Happy birthday!	生日快乐！	sēn rì kwài lòr
Happy New Year!	新年好！	shīn nyén hào

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… 该克哪叠克?	… gāi kè ná dèa kè
banquet	办酒席	bùn jéw shì
celebration	举行庆祝会	jí shìng chìng jyóo hwày
cheap meal	吃呢稍微便宜叠呢	chì nē shāo wāy pyèn yí dèa nē
local specialities	地方小吃	dì fūng shyáo chì
yum cha	喝茶	hōr chà
Can you recommend a …?	你咯能推荐一个 …?	ní gē nyèn twāy jyèn yì gè …
bar	酒吧	jéw bā
cafe	咖啡馆	kā fāy gùn
dish	盘子	pùn zī
noodle house	面馆	myèn gùn
restaurant	馆子	gùn zī
snack shop	小吃店	shyáo chì dyèn
(wonton) stall	(馄饨)摊	(hwèn dyèn) tān
street vendor	街头小吃	jēa tò shyáo chì
teahouse	茶室	chà shì
I'd like (a/the) …	我要 …	wór yào …
table for (five)	一张(五个人呢)桌子	yì jyūng (wóo gè ryèn nē) jyòr zì
bill	账单	jyùng dūn
drink list	酒水单	jéw shwāy dūn
local speciality	一个地方特色菜	yì gè dì fūng tè sè tsài
menu	菜单	tsài dūn
(non)smoking table	(不)抽烟呢桌子	(bòo) chō yēn nē jyòr zì

Are you still serving food?
你们咯还营业呢? ní mēn gē hài yíng yè nē

What would you recommend?
咯有喃菜可以推荐一哈? gē yéw nùn tsài kòr yī twāy jyèn yì hà

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?
(早点)吃喃? (zāo dyēn) chì nùn

What's in that dish?	这道菜是用喃做呢?	jyè dào tsài shì yòng nùn zòr nē
What's that called?	内个喊哪样?	này gè hùn ná yùng
I'll have that.	整叠来嘛。	jyèng dèa lài mà
I'd like it with …	多放叠 …	dōr fùng dèa …
I'd like it without …	不要放 …	bòo yào fùng …
chilli	辣子	là zī
garlic	大蒜	dà swùn
MSG	味精	wày jīng
nuts	果仁	gōr ryèn
oil	油	yèw
I'd like …, please.	请给我 … 一哈。	chìng gē wór … yì hà
one slice	一块	yí kwài
a piece	一份	yí fyèn
a sandwich	一个三明治	yí gè sūn mìng jyì
that one	内一个	náy yí gè
two	两个	lyùng gè
This dish is …	这个菜 … 了。	jyè gè tsài … lē
(too) spicy	(太)辣啦	(tái) là lā
superb	太好啦	tái hào lā
That was delicious!	太好吃啦!	tái hào chī lā
I'm full.	吃饱的了。	chī báo dè lē
breakfast	早点	zào dyèn
lunch	中午饭	jyōng wóo fùn
dinner	晚饭	wún fùn
drink (alcoholic)	酒	jèw
drink (nonalcoholic)	饮料	yīng lyào
… water	… 水	… shwày
boiled	涨	jyùng
cold	冷开	lèng kāi
sparkling mineral	矿泉汽	kùng chwùn chì
still mineral	矿泉	kùng chwùn
(cup of) coffee …	(一杯)咖啡 …	(yì bāy) kā fāy …
(cup of) tea …	(一杯)茶 …	(yì bāy) chà …
with (milk)	加(牛奶)	jyā (nèw nài)
without (sugar)	不要加(糖)	bòo yào jyā (tàng)

black tea	红茶	hòng chà
chrysanthemum tea	菊花茶	jí hwā chà
green tea	绿茶	lòo chà
jasmine tea	花茶	hwā chà
oolong tea	乌龙茶	wōo lóng chà
fresh drinking yoghurt	酸奶	swūn nái
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chèng) jyī
lychee juice	荔枝汁	lì jyī jyi
soft drink	汽水	chèe shwày
sour plum drink	酸梅汁	swūn mày jyī
I'll buy you a drink.	我请客。	wóo chíng kèr
What would you like?	你喜欢哪样?	nì shì hūn ná yùng
Cheers!	干掉!	gūn dyào
I'm feeling drunk.	我有叠醉啦。	wóo yéw dèa zwày lá
a … of beer	一 … 啤酒	yì … pèe jèw
glass	杯	bāy
large bottle	大瓶	dà pìng
small bottle	小瓶	shyáo pìng
a shot of (whisky)	一樽(威士忌)	yì zūn (wāy sì jì)
a bottle/glass of	一瓶/杯	yì píng/bāy
… wine	… 葡萄酒	… pòo tāo jèw
red	红	hòng
white	白	bèr

street eats

cold clear bean-flour noodles	凉粉	lyùng fèn
corn on the cob	包谷	bāo gòo
dumpling (boiled)	饺子	jáo zī
dumpling (fried)	煎饺	jyēn jyào
dumpling (steamed)	包子	bāo zi
pork pie (small)	馅饼	shyèn bìng
rice cake	饵块	ér kwài
rice noodles	米线	mí shyèn
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	粽子	zòng zī
wonton soup	馄饨	hwèn dyèn

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
咯有素食？ gē yéw sòo shì

Could you prepare a meal without …?
咯能做一个不放 … 呢菜？ gē nyèn zòr yì gè bòo fùng … nē tsài

I'm allergic to …	我 … 过敏。	wóo … gòr mìn
dairy produce	奶制品	nái jyì pìn
eggs	鸡蛋	jī dùn
meat	肉	rò
nuts	果仁	gór ryèn
seafood	海鲜	hái shyēn

emergencies & health

Help!	救命！	jèw mìng
Go away!	让开！	rùng kāi
Fire!	着火啦！	jyòr hór lā
Watch out!	小心咯！	shyáo shīn gè

Where's the nearest …?	最近呢 … 在哪叠？	zwày jìn nē … zài ná dèa
dentist	牙医	yàr yī
doctor	医生	yī sēn
hospital	医院	yī yèn
pharmacist	药房	yòr fùng

Could you please help?
你咯能帮哈我呢忙？ ní gé nyèn bùng hà wór nē mùng

Can I use your phone?
我咯能借哈你呢电话用用？ wór gé nyèn jèa hà ní nē dyèn hwà yòng yōng

Where's the police station?
派出所在哪叠？ pài chòo sór zài ná dèa

Where are the toilets?
厕所在哪叠？ tsè sór zài ná dèa

I'm lost.
我迷路了说。 wór mèe lóo lē shòr

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) 灾祸 zāi hòr
accident (traffic) 交通事故 jyāo tōng sì gòo
accommodation 食宿 shí sòo
adaptor 编剧 byēn jèe
address n 地址 dì jyī
after 之后 jyī hò
air conditioning 空调 kōng tyào
airplane 飞机 fāy jī
airport 机场 jī chùng
alcohol 酒 jéw
all 所有呢 sòr yèw nē
allergy 过敏 gòr mìn
ambulance 救护车 jèw hòo chē
and 和 hòr
ankle 踝 hwái
antibiotics 抗生素 kùn sēn sòo
arm 手膀子 shò bùng zī
ATM 自动取款机 zì dòng chí kùn jī

B

baby 毛娃娃 mào wà wā
back (of body) 背 bāy
backpack 背包 bāy bāo
bad 坏呢 hwài nē
bag 包 bāo
baggage 行李 shìng lī
bank 银行 yín hùng
bar 酒吧 jéw bā
bathroom 浴室 yée shì
battery 电池 dyén chì
beautiful 美丽呢 máy lì nē
bed 床 chùng
beer 啤酒 pée jéw
before 之前 jyī chyén
behind 后首 hò shò
bicycle 单车 dūn chē
big 大呢 dà nē
bill 帐单 jyùng dūn
blanket 毛毯 máo tún
blood group 血型 shyeá shìng
boat 船 chún
book (make a reservation) v 预订 yèe dìng
bottle 瓶 píng
boy 男娃娃 nùn wà wā
brakes (car) 煞车 sà chē
breakfast 早点 zāo dyèn
broken (out of order) 坏掉呢 hwài dyáo nē
bus 公交车 gōng jyāo chē
business 生意 sēn yì
buy v 购买 gò māi

C

camera 相机 shyùng jī
cancel 取消 chée shyāo
car 汽车 chì chē
cash n 现金 shyèn jīn
cash (a cheque) v 兑现 dwày shyèn
cell phone 手机 shò jī
centre n 中心 jyōng shīn
change (money) v 零钱 líng chyèn
cheap 便宜呢 pyèn yì nē
check (bill) 帐单 jyùng dūn
check-in n 登记 dēn jì
chest (body) 胸膛 shyōng tùng
children 儿童 wà wā
cigarette 香烟 shyūng yēn
city 城市 chèng shì
clean a 干净呢 gūn jìng nē
closed 关闭呢 gwūn bì nē
cold a 冷呢 lèng nē
collect call 对方付费电话 dwày fūn fòo fāy dyèn hwà
come 来 lài
computer 电脑 dyèn náo
condom 避孕套 bì yìn tào
contact lenses 隐形眼镜 yín shìng yēn jìng
cook v 烹饪 pēng ryèn
cost n 花费 hwā fāy
credit card 信用卡 shìn yòng kā
currency exchange 货币汇兑 hòr bì hwày dwày
customs (immigration) 海关 hái gwūn

D

dangerous 危险呢 wāy shyēn nē
date (time) 日期 rì chēe
day 天 tyēn

delay v 延迟 yén chí
dentist 牙医 yàr yī
depart 出发 chòo fà
diaper 尿布 nyào bòo
dinner 晚饭 wún fùn
direct a 直接呢 jyì jèa nē
dirty 脏呢 zūng nē
disabled 残废呢 tsún fày nē
discount v 打折 dá jyè
doctor 医生 yī sēn
double bed 双人床 shwūng ryèn chùng
double room 套房 tào fúng
drink n 饮料 yīn lyào
drive v 开车 kāi chē
driving licence 驾照 jyà jyào
drug (illicit) 毒品 dòo pǐn

E

ear 耳朵 ār dòr
east 东 dōng
eat 吃 chī
economy class 经济舱 jīng jì tsūng
electricity 电 dyèn
elevator 电梯 dyèn tī
email 电子邮件 dyèn zǐ yéw jyèn
embassy 大使馆 dà shǐ gwún
emergency 紧急状况 jīn jí jyùng kwùng
English (language) 英语 yīng yì
evening 傍晚 bùn wún
exit n 出口 chòo kǒ
expensive 贵呢 gwày nē
eye 眼睛 yěn jīng

F

far 远呢 yěn nē
fast 快呢 kwài nē
father 爹 dēa
film (camera) 影片 dyèn yíng
finger 手指头 shǒ jyǐ tō
first-aid kit 急救箱 jí jèw shyūng
first class 头等舱 tò dèng tsūng
fish n 鱼 yèe
food 食物 shì wòo
foot 脚 jòr
free (of charge) 免费呢 myěn fày nē
friend 朋友 póng yěw
fruit 水果 shwǎy gòr
full 饱呢 bào nē

G

gift 礼物 lǐ wòo
girl 姑娘 shyào gōo nyūng
glass (drinking) 杯子 bāy zi
glasses 眼镜 yěn jìng
go 去 kè
good 好呢 hào nē
guide n 导游 dǎo yèw

H

half n 一半 yi bùn
hand 手 shò
happy 高兴呢 gāo shìng nē
he 他 tā
head n 头 tò
heart 心 shīn
heavy 重呢 jyòng nē
help 帮助 būng jyòo
here 这叠 jyè déa
high 高呢 gāo nē
highway 高速公路 gāo sòo gōng lòo
hike v 徒步旅行 tòo bòo lí shìng
holiday 假期 jyà chī
homosexual 同性恋 tòng shìng lyèn
hospital 医院 yī yèn
hot 热呢 rèr nē
hotel 酒店 jéw dyèn
(be) hungry 饿呢 ór nē
husband 老公 lào gōng

I

I 我 wòr
identification (card) 身份证 shēn fèn jyèng
ill 生病呢 sēn bìng nē
important 重要呢 jyòng yào nē
injury (harm) 侮辱 wóo ròo
injury (wound) 伤口 shūng kò
insurance 保险 bào shyèn
internet 因特网 yīn tè wùng
interpreter 翻译 fūn yèe

J

jewellery 珠宝 jyōo bào
job 工作 gōng zòr

K

key 钥匙 yòr chī
kilogram 公斤 gōng jīn

kitchen 厨房 chòo fùng
knife 小刀 shyào dāo

L

laundry (place) 洗衣店 shī yī dyèn
lawyer 律师 lì sí
left (direction) 左 zòr
leg (body) 腿 twày
lesbian 女同性恋 nǐ tòng shìng lyèn
less 少 shào
letter (mail) 信 shìn
light n 光 gwūng
like v 喜欢 shí hūn
lock n 锁 sòr
long 长呢 chúng nē
lost 失去呢 shì chì nē
love v 爱 ài
luggage 行李 shìng lǐ
lunch 中午饭 jyōng wóo fùn

M

mail n 信 shìn
man 男人 nùn ryèn
map 地图 dì tòo
market 市场 shì chūng
matches 火柴 hôr chài
meat 肉 rò
medicine 药 yòr
message 信息 shìn shī
milk 牛奶 nèw nài
minute 分钟 fēn jyōng
mobile phone 手机 shò jī
money 钱 chyèn
month 月 yeā
morning 早上 záo shùng
mother 妈妈 mā mā
motorcycle 摩托车 mòr tòr chē
mouth 嘴巴 zwày bā

N

name 名字 mìng zì
near 附近 fòo jìn
neck n 脖子 bòr zǐ
new 新呢 shīn nē
newspaper 报纸 bào jyī
night 夜晚 yeà wūn
no (not at all) 一叠也不 yī dèa yē bòo
no (not this) 不活 bóo hòr
noisy 喧闹呢 shyēn nào nē
nonsmoking 禁止吸烟 jìn jyī shì yēn
north 北 bèr
nose 鼻子 bì zī
now 这哈 jyè hà
number 数字 shòo zì

O

old (people) 老 lào
old (things) 旧 jèw
one-way ticket 单程票 dūn chyèn pyào
open a 开呢 kāi nē
outside 外面呢 wài myèn nē

P

passport 护照 hòo jyào
pay v 付钱 fòo chyèn
pharmacy 药房 yòr fúng
phonecard 电话卡 dyèn hwà kā
photo 照片 jyào pyèn
police 警察 jǐn chà
postcard 明信片 mìng shìn pyèn
post office 邮局 yèw jèe
pregnant 怀孕呢 hwài yìn nē
price n 价格 jyà gè

Q

quiet a 安静呢 ōn jìng nē

R

rain n 雨 yèe
razor 剃刀 tì dāo
receipt n 收据 shō jì
refund n 退款 twày kūn
registered (mail) 已挂号呢 yī gwà hào nē
rent v 出租 chòo zōo
repair v 修理 shyēw lì
reserve v 预订 yée dìng
restaurant 馆子 gùn zǐ
return (give back) 还 hài
return (go back) 回来 hwày lài
return ticket 返程票 fūn chèng pyào
right (direction) 右 yèw
road 路 lòo
room n 房间 fùng jyēn

S

safe a 安全呢 ōn chyèn nē
sanitary napkin 卫生棉 wày sēn myèn
seat n 座位 zòr wày
send 发送 fà sòng
sex (intercourse) 性 shìng

sex (gender) 性别 shìng beàr
shampoo 洗发精 shǐ fà jīng
share (a dorm) 分享 fēn shyùng
she 她 tā
sheet (bed) 床单 chùng dūn
shirt T恤 tī sheà
shoes 嘅子 hài zī
shop n 商店 shūng dyèn
short 短呢 dwùn nē
shower n 淋浴 lín yée
single room 单人房 dūn ryèn fúng
skin n 皮肤 pèe fôo
skirt n 裙子 chìn zī
sleep v 睡 shwày
slow 慢呢 mùn nē
small 小呢 shyào nē
soap 肥皂 fày zào
some 一些 yì shēa
soon 马上 mǎ shùng
south 南 nún
souvenir 纪念品 jì nyèn pǐn
stamp 邮票 yèw pyào
stand-by ticket 站台票 jyùn tài pyào
station (train) 火车站 hór chē jyùn
stomach 胃 wày
stop v 停止 tín jyī
stop (bus) n 站台 jyùn tài
street 街 gāi
student 学生 shòr sēn
sun 太阳 tài yúng
sunscreen 防晒油 fúng shài yèw
swim v 游泳 yèw yōng

T

tampon 止血棉球 jyī shèa myēn chèw
telephone n 电话 dyèn hwà
temperature (weather) 温度 wēn dòo
that 那个 này gè
they 他们 tā mēn
(be) thirsty 口渴呢 kó kòr nē
this 这个 jyè gè
throat 喉咙 hó lòng
ticket 票 pyào
time 时间 shì jyēn
tired 累呢 lày nē
tissues 卫生纸 wày sēn jyī
today 今天 jīn tyēn
toilet 厕所 tsè sór
tomorrow 明天 mìng tyēn
tonight 今晚 jīn wùn
tooth 牙齿 yàr chī
toothbrush 牙刷 yàr shwà
toothpaste 牙膏 yàr gāo
torch (flashlight) 手电筒 shō dyèn tōng
tour n 旅游 lǐ yèw
tourist office 旅行社 lǐ shìng shè
towel 毛巾 mào jīn
train n 火车 hór chē
translate 翻译 fūn yèe
travel agency 旅行社 lǐ shìng shè
travellers cheque 旅行支票 lǐ shìng jyī pyào
trousers 裤子 kòo zī
twin-bed room 双人间 shwūng ryèn jyēn

U

underwear 内衣裤 này yēe kòo
urgent 紧急呢 jǐn jí nē

V

vacancy 空缺 kòng chyeà
vegetable n 蔬菜 sōo tsài
vegetarian 素食呢 sòo shì nē
visa 签证 chyēn jyèng

W

walk v 步行 bòo shìng
wallet 钱包 chyèn bāo
wash (something) 洗 shì
watch n 观看 gwūn kùn
water n 水 shwày
we 我们 wòr mēn
weekend 周末 jyō mòr
west 西 shī
wheelchair 轮椅 lwèn ēe
when 哪哈 nǎ hà
where 在哪叠 zài nǎ dèa
who 哪个 nǎ gè
why 为哪样 wày nǎ yùng
wife 媳妇 shèe fòo
window 窗户 chūng hōo
with 和 hòr
without 没得 māy dè
woman 女人 nǐ ryèn
write 写 shyèa

Y

yes 是 shì
yesterday 昨天 zòr tyēn
you sg inf 你 nì
you sg pol 您 nín
you pl 你们 nì mēn

Zhuang

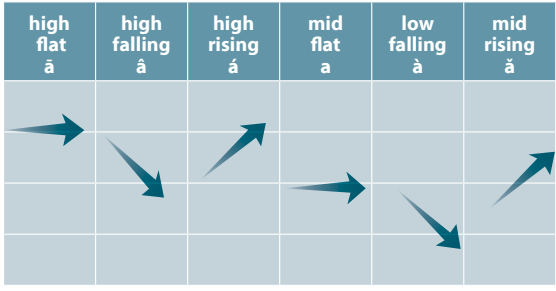
TONES	254
ABOUT ZHUANG	255
PRONUNCIATION	256
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	257
TIME & DATES	258
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	259
ACCOMMODATION	260
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	261
SIGHTSEEING	262
SHOPPING	262
MEETING PEOPLE	263
MAKING CONVERSATION	264
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	267
FAREWELLS	268
EATING OUT	268
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	272
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	272
ENGLISH–ZHUANG DICTIONARY	273

tones

Zhuang is a tonal language ('tonal quality' refers to the raising and lowering of pitch on certain syllables). Tones in Zhuang fall on vowels. The same combination of sounds pronounced with different tones can have a very different meaning.

Zhuang has nine tones. In our pronunciation guide they've been simplified to six tones, indicated with accents on the letters, as shown in the tables below for the vowel 'a'. We've represented the following tones with one symbol: high flat, high even and high even short (eg ā); high rising and high rising long (eg á); mid flat and mid flat short (eg a). The last value for all three tones applies when the syllable ends in k, p or t.

Higher tones involve tightening the vocal cords to get a higher sounding pitch, while lower tones are made by relaxing the vocal cords to get a lower pitch. Bear in mind that the tones are relative to the natural vocal range of the speaker, eg the high tone is pronounced at the top of one's vocal range. Note also that some tones slide up or down in pitch.



about Zhuang

Zhuang (vaa·shueng) is a Tai-Kadai language related to Thai and Lao. It's spoken primarily in the Guǎngxī Autonomous Region of southern China, but also in nearby areas of Guìzhou, Guǎngdōng, Húnán and Yúnnán. The Zhuang are China's largest minority group, with a population of around 18 million. Zhuang is tonal and largely monosyllabic. For many centuries, Zhuang has been written with a script borrowed from Chinese (the so-called *fangkuaizi,* 'square characters'), but since the 1950s the government has promoted a system of romanisation called Zhuangwen. Zhuangwen can be seen on road signs, official documents and in newspapers, and educated people may be able to read and write it. Often, however, people continue to use the Chinese script to write Zhuang. In this chapter, we have provided a more user-friendly transliteration system rather than Zhuangwen. There are two main dialects of Zhuang: northern and southern. The northern dialect represented here is based on that of Wǔmíng, a county directly to the north of Nánníng. Travellers going to other areas in Guǎngxī may find that the vocabulary varies somewhat, but armed with this phrasebook and a spirit of goodwill and adventure, you'll get along surprisingly well.

zhuang



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	r**u**n	b	like English b, but unvoiced
aa	f**a**ther	d	like English d, but unvoiced
e	b**e**t	f	**f**at
ee	like e, but longer	g	like English g, but unvoiced
ew	as the 'oo' in 'soon', with the lips spread widely	h	**h**at
i	h**i**t	k	as in 'lu**ck**', but with no puff of air following
ii	mach**i**ne	l	**l**ot
o	v**o**te	m	**m**an
oo	like o, but longer	mb	a strongly voiced b
u	p**u**t	n	**n**ot
uu	like u, but longer	nd	a strongly voiced d
In this chapter, the Zhuang pronunciation is given in blue after each phrase.		ng	ri**ng** (both at the start and at the end of words)
In Zhuang, vowels can appear in combinations of two (diphthongs) or three (triphthongs). At the beginning of a word some consonants can also appear in combination, eg by, gv, gy, my, ngv, ny. All sounds in these combinations are simply pronounced in series.		p	as in 'na**p**', but with no puff of air following
		r	**r**oach (guttural)
		sh	**sh**ip
		t	as in 'ha**t**', but with no puff of air following
Syllables within a word are separated by a dot, eg: dǒo·shii.		th	**th**ing
		v	**v**ote
For pronunciation of tones, see p254.		y	**y**es

essentials

Yes./No.	dewk/mbōu dewk
Hello.	mèwng nděi
Goodbye. (said by person leaving)	gǒu bǎi góon lo
Goodbye. (said by person staying)	nděi byāai
Please …	shīng …
Thank you.	dǒo·shii
Excuse me. (to get past)	shīng vée ndǎang di
Excuse me. (asking for assistance)	gǒu thīeng hēeu mèwng …
Sorry.	dói·mbōu·hēwn

language difficulties

Do you speak (English)?
mèwng rôo gāang (vaa·ying·yīi) mbōu
Do you understand?
mèwng rôo·yīu mbōu shàng
I (don't) understand.
gǒu (mbōu·shàng) rôo·yīu
I (don't) speak Mandarin.
gǒu (mbōu) rôo gāang būu·dung·vǎa
Could you please repeat that?
shīng mèwng sháai gāang bài hee
Could you please speak more slowly?
shīng mèwng gāang meen dii

numbers

0	lìng	**20**	ngei·ship
1	īt/nděu	**30**	thǎam·ship
2	ngei/thôong	**40**	théi·ship
3	thǎam	**50**	hāa·ship
4	théi	**60**	rōk·ship
5	hāa/ngûu	**70**	shāt·ship
6	rōk/lok	**80**	béet·ship
7	shāt	**90**	gōu·ship
8	béet/báat	**100**	īt·báak
9	gōu	**1000**	īt·shǐen
10	ship	**1,000,000**	īt·báak·faan

time & dates

What time is it?
thèi·nêi gēi·dīem shǔng
It's (10) o'clock.
(ship) dīem lo
Quarter past (10).
(ship) dīem ship·hāa fǎn lo
Half past (10).
(ship) dīem búen shǔng lo
Quarter to (11). (literally: Forty-five minutes past (10).)
(ship) dīem théi·ship·hāa fǎn lo
At what time (does it start)?
dāa thèi·làew (hǎai·shīi)
(It starts) At 10.
ship dīem shǔng (hǎai·shīi)
It's (18 October).
ngòn·nêi (ship nyiet ship·béet haau)



this …	… nêi
morning (after breakfast)	gyǎang·hāt
morning (before lunch)	bǎan·ngòn
afternoon	bǎan·rìng·gváa
yesterday	ngòn·lèw·en
today	ngòn·nêi
now	thèi·nêi
tonight	ham·nêi
tomorrow	ngòn·shook
sunrise	bǎan·hāt
sunset	gyǎang·ham
spring	thèi·shīn
summer	thèi·haa
autumn	thèi·shǒu
winter	thèi·dǒng

Monday	thing·gìi·īt
Tuesday	thing·gìi·ngei
Wednesday	thing·gìi·tháam
Thursday	thing·gìi·théi
Friday	thing·gìi·hāa
Saturday	thing·gìi·rôk
Sunday	ngòn·thing·gìi

January	īt·nyiet
February	ngei·nyiet
March	thǎam·nyiet
April	théi·nyiet
May	ngûu·nyiet
June	lok·nyiet
July	shāt·nyiet
August	béet·nyiet
September	gôu·nyiet
October	ship·nyiet
November	ship·īt·nyiet
December	ship·ngei·nyiet

transport & directions

Is this the … to (Wǔmíng)?	… nêi bǎi (vūu·mìng) ma
boat	ǎn·rùu
bus	gung·gǔng gīi·shee
train	ǎn·hôo·shee

Where's a/the …?	… yóu gìi·làew
bank	ngàn·hàang
place to change foreign money	diek vuen shìen gúek·rook
post office	yòu·děen·gìi

Is this the way to (Nánníng)?
dìu rŏn nêi dewk bǎi (nàam·nìng) mbōu
What village is this?
mbāan·nêi mbāan màa
Can you show me where it is on the map?
shīng mèwng ǎu mbǎew dei·dòo nêi rǎa ǎn dei·fǔeng nêi óok·dāu

What's the address?
diek·yóu yóu gìi·làew
How far is it?
mìi gēi·lǎai gyǎi
Can I get there on foot?
byāai rǒn gváa·bǎi ndāi mbōu
How do I get there?
bàn·làew byāai
Turn towards the left/right.
yieng baai·sêwi/baai·gvàa văan·gváa·bǎi
It's straight ahead.
īt·shìk byāai·bǎi shoo baai·nāa

It's …	yóu …
behind …	baai·lăng …
in front of …	baai·nāa …
near …	théi·hèen …
on the corner	báak·rǒn
opposite …	dóoi·mien …
there	gìi·hân

accommodation

Where's a guest house/hotel?
gìi·làew mìi bin·gvāan/līi·gvāan
Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?
mèwng hāew gòu gāew ăn diek shien/nděi·yóu, ndāi mbōu
I'd like to stay at a locally run hotel.
gŏu thīeng yóu ăn héek·díem dăang·diek ging·yìng nei dòo
I'd like to book a room, please.
gŏu thīeng ding fùeng
I have a reservation.
gŏu théen shǐi yāew·ding gváa

Do you have a … room?	mìi fùeng … rô nděwi
double (suite)	dáau
single	dăn vùn
twin	thŏong vùn

How much is it per night/person?
ngòn·nděu/bôu·nděu gěi·lǎai shìen
I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
dāa·thúen dòo (thǎam) ngòn
Could I have my key, please?
fáak·yāk·thèi ǎn fùeng hāew gǒu, ndāi mbōu
Can I get an extra (blanket)?
sháai hāew gǒu (fǎan·dāam) nděu, ndāi mbōu
The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(gung·dìu) vaai lo
What time is checkout?
thèi·làew dóoi fùeng

Could I have my …, please?	shīng mèwng dóoi … hāew gǒu
deposit	shìen·áat
passport	hǔu·shǎau





banking & communications

Where's the local internet cafe?
gìi·nêi mìi vāang·baa lewi

Where's a/an …?	… yóu gìi·làew
ATM	thěw·dǔng lîng·shìen·gii
public phone	gung·yung děen·vǎa
I'd like to …	gǒu thīeng …
get internet access	hēwn vāang
use a printer/scanner	yung dāa·yǐn·gii/thāau·myàau·gii

What's your phone number?
děen·vàa mèwng dewk gěi·lǎai
The number is …
haau·mâa dewk …

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
gǒu thīeng bǎi yāew gīi gīng·thāk bōon·diek
I'd like to see …
gǒu thīeng bǎi yāew …
What's that?
gii·hàn dewk gīi·màa
Can I take a photo?
gǒu īng thíeng ndāi lewi
I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
gǒu thīeng bǎi yāew gīi līi·yòu·dēen dōk·gûng dii
How long is the tour?
dāau·yòu ǎu gēi·lǎai thèi·gǎan

sightseeing	
Guìlín	gvěi·lìn
Huà Shān cliff paintings	vee·bâang·dáat byǎa·ràai
International Song Festival	shíet·fēwen tháam nyiet tháam
local chieftain's residence in Xīnchéng	yin·shìng háak·dōo yàa·mòon
museum	bōo·vùu·gvāan
Yiling Cave in Wǔmíng	vūu·mìng yii·līng·ngàan
Zhuang village	mbāan shueng

shopping

Where's a …?	… yóu gìi·làew
camera shop	shǎau·thīeng·gvāan
market	shìeng·hǎew
souvenir shop	gīi·nēen·gvāan
supermarket	shaau·gii thīi·shàang

Where can I buy locally produced goods/souvenirs?
gīi dô·gáai géi·niem dǎang·diek hàn yóu gìi·làew shâew ndāi
What's this made from?
ǎn dô·gáai nêi yung gīi·màa shàai·lǐu shâau ha

I'd like to buy …
gǒu thīeng shâew …
Can I look at it?
gǒu yāew·yāew ndāi lewi
How much is it?
gēi·lǎai ngàn
Please write down the price.
shīng ràai gīi gyáa·shìen ròng·dāu hāew gǒu
That's too expensive.
dáai bèeng lo
I'll give you (five kuai).
hāew mèwng (hāa màn) ngàn
Do you accept credit cards?
yung thǐn·yǔng·gāa gyǎau shìen ndāi lewi
There's a mistake in the bill.
mbǎew dǎan nêi mìi vêwn·dìi

less	dáai nôoi
enough	gáu
more	dáai lǎai
bigger	hǔng dii
smaller	íi dii

meeting people

Hello. (said to one person)	mèwng
Hello. (said to more than one person)	thǒu nděi
Welcome.	hoon·yìng
Goodbye. (said by person leaving)	gǒu bǎi góon lo
Goodbye. (said by person staying)	nděi byāai
Good night.	māa nìn lo
How are you?	mèwng nděi ma
Fine. And you?	nděi, mèwng ne
What's your name?	mìng·shoo mèwng heu·guu màa
My name is …	gǒu heu·guu …
I'm pleased to meet you.	sháu mèwng rǎn·nāa, áang râai·shâai

a manner of speaking

When approaching people to ask assistance, it's polite to address them with one of the following terms, which differ according to the gender and age of the person you're speaking to.

female older than your parents	mee·bāa
female (adult) younger than your parents	mee·thīm
male older than your parents	boo·lùng
male (adult) younger than your parents	boo·ǎau

This is my …	bôu·vùn nêi dewk … gǒu
brother (older/younger)	dak·gǒo/dak·nûeng
child	lewk
daughter	daa·lewk
father	dâa·boo
friend	bàng·yôu
husband	gvǎan
mother	dâa·mee
partner (intimate)	dak·yôu/daa·yôu m/f
sister (older/younger)	daa·shēe/daa·nûeng
son	dak·lewk
wife	yaa

making conversation

Do you live here?
mèwng yóu gìi·làew dòo
Where are you going?
mèwng bǎi gìi·làew
Do you like it here?
diek·nêi dewk·gyài lewi
I love it here.
diek·nêi dewk·gyài râai·shâai
Have you eaten?
mèwng gěwn hâu shàng
Are you here on holidays?
mèwng dàng gìi·nêi lîi·yòu ma

I'm here …	gŏu dàng gìi·nêi …
for a holiday	lîi·yòu
on business	óok·shǎai
to study	lòu·haak

How long are you here for?
mèwng yóu gìi·nêi yóu gêi·nàan
I'm here for (four) weeks.
gŏu yóu gìi·nêi yóu (théi) ăn thìng·gìi
Can I take a photo (of you)?
gŏu îng thíeng (mèwng) ndăi lewi
Do you speak (Zhuang)?
mèwng rôo gāang (vaa·shueng) lewi
What language do you speak at home?
mèwng yóu ndåew ràan gāang vaa gîi·màa
What do you call this in (Zhuang)?
gáai·nêi gāang (vaa·shueng) heeu·guu màa
What's this called?
gáai·nêi heeu·guu màa
I'd like to learn some (Zhuang).
gŏu thîeng haak dii (vaa·shueng) yāew
Would you like me to teach you some English?
gŏu thŏon mèwng/thŏu vaa·ying·yîi ndĕi mbōu sg/pl
Is this a local custom?
yieng·nêi guu dewk fúng·thuk dăang·diek ma

local talk

Great!	shăn ndĕi
Hey!	vei
It's OK.	lîi ndāi ba
Just a minute.	shāa dii
Just joking.	mèwng sháu gŏu gāang·rĭu
Maybe.	lăau dewk yieng·nêi
No problem.	mbōu mìi màa
No way!	mbōu ndāi lo
Oh, spare me!	mbōu guu lo
Sure, whatever.	ndāi, ndāi
That's enough!	gáu lo, gáu lo

Where are you from?	mèwng dāa gìi·làew dāu
I'm from …	gǒu dewk vùn …
Australia	aáu·dǎa·líi·yáa
Canada	gyaa·nàa·dǎa
England	ying·gòo
New Zealand	thin·thii·làan
the USA	mēi·gòo
What's your occupation?	mèwng guu gīi·màa hǒong
I'm a/an …	gǒu dewk …
businessperson	vùn thěeng·éi
office worker	vùn·baan·gǒng
tradesperson	vùn shaang
How old …?	… mìi gēi·lǎai bǐi lo
are you	mèwng
is your daughter	daa·lewk mèwng
is your son	dak·lewk mèwng

I'm … years old.
gǒu mìi … bǐi
He/She is … years old.
děe mìi … bǐi
Too old!
dáai lâau lo
I'm younger than I look.
gǒu hâau·thěeng gváa gīi yieng gǒu
Are you married? (asking a man)
mèwng ǎu la
Are you married? (asking a woman)
mèwng háa la

I'm …	gǒu …
married (said by a man)	ǎu yaa lo
married (said by a woman)	háa vùn lo
single	bôu·dok
I live with someone.	gǒu sháu yôu gǒu dòng·yóu
Do you have a family of your own?	mèwng bàn·gyǎa shàng

Do you like …?	mèwng gyài … ma
I (don't) like …	gǒu (mbōu) gyài …
art	yïi·thùu
film	bǎi yāew dēen·yīng
music	díng yin·yòo
reading	dok thǎew
sport	dïi·yù



feelings & opinions

I'm (not) …	gǒu (mbōu) …
Are you …?	mèwng … ma
cold	nīt
hot	héwng
hungry	dûng íek
thirsty	hòo·háew
tired	bak
I (don't) feel …	gǒu (mbōu) rôo·nyin …
Do you feel …?	mèwng rôo·nyin … ma
happy	áang
sad	mbōu áang
worried	vǔeng
What do you think of it?	mèwng rôo·nyin nděi mbōu nděi
It's …	děe …
awful	yáak râai·shâai
beautiful	gyǎu·nděi
boring	shǎn mbéw
great	gik nděi
interesting	yîn râai·shâai
OK	lïi nděi
strange	gìi·gváai/gèi·hei

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.
ngòn·shook gŏu yāk băi lo
If you come to (Scotland), you can stay with me.
daang·nàu mèwng dāu (thuu·gew·làan) hoon·yìng mèwng dāu sháu dŏu dòo yóu
Keep in touch!
shìeng·thèi ràai thín
It's been great meeting you.
sháu mèwng rôo·nāa shăn váai·vuet
Here's my (address).
gīi·nĕi dewk (diek·yóu) gŏu
What's your (email)?
(dĕen·thēw thĭn·thieng) mèwng bàn·làew ràai

well-wishing	
Bon voyage!	ndĕi byāai
Congratulations!	gŏng·hĕi
Good luck!	hoo mèwng thèi·héi ndĕi
Happy birthday!	ngòn·thēeng váai·vuet
Happy (Chinese) New Year!	bĭi·móo váai·vuet







eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… shéi ndĕi dàng gìi·làew băi
banquet	baan dàai·lāu
celebration	baan hoi hoo
cheap meal	gīi hâu byāk bìen·ngèi
local specialities	hâu byāk bōon·dei
yum cha	gĕwn shàa

Can you recommend a …? mèwng gāang … shéi nděi yóu gìi·làew
- **bar** bóu·lāu
- **cafe** gaa·fei·gvāan
- **dish** byāk
- **noodle house** bóu mien·fān
- **restaurant** bóu·hâu
- **snack shop** dǎan thīi·thīk
- **(wonton) stall** dǎan (vùn·dan)
- **street vendor** dǎan hèen·gǎai
- **teahouse** shàa·gūen

I'd like (a/the) … gǒu ǎu …
- **table for (five)** ǎn dàai (hāa vùn)
- **bill** shǎang·daan
- **drink list** dǎan·lāu
- **local speciality** shūng byāk mìi dak·dīem bōon·dei hân
- **menu** shǎai·daan
- **(non)smoking table** ǎn dàai (mbōu) hāew shīt ǐen

Are you still serving food?
thôu thèi·nêi līi hǎai·dǒu ma
What would you recommend?
mìi gīi·màa byāk shéi nděi
What's in that dish?
shūng byāk nêi yung gīi·màa dong·yieng mǎa long
I'll have that.
ǎu shūng nêi

I'd like it with … lǎai shúeng dii …
I'd like it without … shīng gāi shúeng …
- **chilli** lewk·maan
- **garlic** hǒo
- **MSG** věi·shing
- **nuts** máak·fâi
- **oil** yòu

What do you normally eat for breakfast?
hāt·nàng gěwn màa
What's that called?
shūng·nêi heeu·guu màa

I'd like …, please.	shīng hāew gǒu …
one slice	gáai nděu
a piece	fan nděu
a sandwich	ăn thaan·mìng·shíi nděu
that one	ăn·hân
two	thŏong ăn
This dish is …	shūng byāk nêi … lo
(too) spicy	(dáai) maan
superb	nděi gěwn râai·shâai

I love this dish.
shūng byāk nêi shăn hŏom
I love the local cuisine.
byāk bōon·dei shăn nděi·gěwn
That was delicious!
shăn nděi·gěwn
I'm full.
gěwn ím lo

breakfast	ngàai
lunch	rìng
dinner	shàu
drink (alcoholic)	lāu
drink (nonalcoholic)	yīn·lĭu
… water	… râm
boiled	gōn
cold	gyōt
sparkling mineral	gvăang·shèen·thūi dăai gĭi·băau
still mineral	gvăang·shèen·thūi
(cup of) coffee …	(shēen) gaa·fei nděu …
(cup of) tea …	(shēen) shàa nděu …
with (milk)	dēwk (nìu·nāai)
without (sugar)	mbōu dēwk (dàang)
black tea	hòng·shàa
chrysanthemum tea	shàa văa·gūt
green tea	shàa hěeu
jasmine tea	văa·shàa
oolong tea	vuu·lùng shàa

fresh drinking yoghurt	thoom nìu·nāai
(orange) juice	râm (máak·dōng)
lychee juice	râm lei·cěi
soft drink	gīi·thūi
a … of beer	… bìi·shīu nděu
glass	shēen
large bottle	bìng hǔng
small bottle	bìng íi
a shot of (whisky)	shǔng (věi·thěw·gīi) nděu
a bottle of … wine	bìng bùu·dàau·shīu … nděu
a glass of … wine	bòoi bùu·dàau·shīu … nděu
red	hòng
white	hǎau
What are you drinking?	gěwn màa
I'll buy you a drink.	gòu shīng héek
What would you like?	gěwn gīi·màa lāu
Cheers!	gěwn lāu
This is hitting the spot.	dáai nděi gěwn lo
I think I've had one too many.	gǒu lǎau gěwn dáai lǎai lo
I'm feeling drunk.	gǒu mìi dii fii





street eats

corn on the cob	lún hâu·yàang
dumpling (boiled)	shèi
dumpling (fried)	shèi shīen
dumpling (steamed)	bǎau
flat bread with sesame seeds	thaau·bīng
rice noodles	fān
sticky rice in bamboo leaves	fâng
wonton soup	vùn·dan

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?
mìi byāk shǎai nděwi
Could you prepare a meal without …?
guu byāk mbōu shúeng … ndāi mbōu

I'm allergic to …	gǒu dóoi … gǒo·mīn
dairy produce	nāai·bīn
eggs	gyái·gái
meat	noo
nuts	ngvei·máak
seafood	gīi dô·gěwn ndǎew hāai

emergencies & health

Help!	góu ming
Go away!	váai byāai bǎi
Fire!	dàew fèi lo
Watch out!	thīu·thǐm

Could you please help?
mèwng bǎang gǒu ndāi mbōu
Can I use your phone?
gǒu shíi ǎn děen·vǎa·gǐi mèwng ndāi mbōu
I'm lost.
gǒu byāai lǒng lo
Where are the toilets?
shèe·thōo yóu gìi·làew
Where's the police station?
bǎai·shùu·thōo yóu gìi·làew

Where's the nearest …?	… shéi gyāew yóu gìi·làew
dentist	yàa·yii
doctor	shaang·yěw
hospital	yii·yěn
pharmacist	yòo·fàang

english–zhuang dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) thai·mēwt
accident (traffic) òok·thai
accommodation diek·gěwn·yóu
adaptor shàa·dòu shōon·shêe·gīi
address n diek·yóu
after dôk·lâng
air conditioning gung·dìu
airplane fei·gii
airport fei·gii·shàang
alcohol lâu
all dâng
allergy gō·mīn·shēwng
ambulance giu·hǔu·shee
and shàu
ankle dăa·bău
antibiotics gǎang·gīn·thǔu
arm gēen
ATM thêw·dūng lîng·shìen·gii

B

baby lewk·ndīng
back (of body) baai·lăng
backpack dai·thǎew
bad yáak
bag dai
baggage hìng·lī
bank ngàn·hàang
bar bóu·lâu
bathroom théwi·fèwng·geen
battery dēen·shìi
beautiful gyău·ndēi
bed shòong
beer bii·shìu
before (time) góon
behind baai·lăng
bicycle daan·shee
big hûng
bill shǎang·daan
blanket dăam
blood group lewt·hìng
boat ăn·rù
book (make a reservation) v ding
bottle bing
boy lewk·thăai
brakes (car) kaap·shīi
breakfast ngàai
broken (out of order) vaai lo
bus gung·gûng gīi·shee
business thēeng·éi
buy v shâew

C

camera shǎau·thìeng·gii
cancel mbōu ău
car gīi·shee
cash n shìen·ngàn
cash (a cheque) v dóoi·yien (shii·byǎau)
cell phone thōu·gii
centre n shúng·gyàang
change (money) v vuen (shìen)
cheap bìen·ngèi
check (bill) shǎang·daan
check-in n dewng·gīi
chest (body) nǎa·ăk
children lewk·nyèe
cigarette ĭen
city ndǎew·thìng
clean a thǎew
closed gvēen dōu lo
cold (food/water) a shāp
cold (weather) a nīt
collect call dēen·vǎa dóoi·fûeng hǎew·shìen
come dāu
computer dēen·nǎau
condom bīi·yīn·dâu
contact lenses ngàan·gíng yīn·hìng
cook v thǎew
cost n bōon·shìen
credit card thìn·yúng·gǎa
currency exchange diek vuen shìen
customs (immigration) hǎai·gvaan

D

dangerous yúng·yīem
date (time) that·shēi
day ngòn
delay v ngu

dentist yàa·yii
depart lii
diaper vāa·nyou
dinner shàu
direct a shik·thoo
dirty úu
disabled féi
discount v dāa shīng·thóo
doctor shaang·yēw
double bed shòong thǒong·vùn
double room fùeng thǒong·vùn
drink n yīn·lĭu
drive v hăai (shĭi)
drivers licence gyăa·thĭi shii·shăau
drug (illicit) dùu·bĭn

E

ear rèw
east dōng
eat gēwn
economy class ging·shĭi shaang
electricity dēen·gìi
elevator dēen·dii
email dēen·thēw yòu·gēen
embassy dăa·thĭi·gvāan
emergency thai gān·gĭp
English (language) vaa ying·yii
evening gyăang·ham
exit n shùu·gōu
expensive bèeng
eye dăa

F

far gyăi
fast váai
father dăa·boo
film (camera) gyaau·gēen
finger lewk·fēwng
first-aid kit gii·gĭu yòo·thieng
first class shaang dàu·dāng
fish n byăa
food gii·gēwn
foot dĭn
free (of charge) mēen·fái
friend bàng·yŏu
fruit máak
full (container) rĭm
full (stomach) ím

G

gift lâi
girl lewk·mbēwk
glass (drinking) shēen
glasses yàang·gíng
go băi
good ndēi
guide n bôu·dáai·rŏn

H

half n búen
hand fēwng
happy áang
he dēe
head n gyāu
heart thĭm
heavy năk
help v băang
here gìi·nēi
high thăang
highway gung·lŭu
hike v byāai loo
holiday gyāa·gèi
homosexual dùng·thĭng·lèen·shēe
hospital yii·yĕn
hot (temperature/weather) ndáat
hotel lii·gvāan
(be) hungry dúng·íek
husband gvāan

I

I gŏu
identification (card) thin·fēwn·shēwng
ill bing lo
important yóu·gān
injury (harm) thīeng·haai
injury (wound) báak·thīeng
insurance bāau·yēen
internet hŭu·lèen·vāang
interpreter faan·yii·yèen

J

jewellery shăew·bāau
job hôong

K

key yāk·thèi
kilogram gông·gān

kitchen ràan-dãa-shãew
knife shåa

L

laundry (place) thïi-yii-díem
lawyer lii-thew
left (direction) thêwi
leg (body) gãa
lesbian nïi-thïng dùng-thïng-lêen-shêe
less nôoi
letter (mail) thín
light n dên-dewng
like v gyài
lock n thũu
long rài
lost lǒng-rǒn
love v gyài
luggage hìng-lïi
lunch ring

M

mail n yòu-gêen
man vùn
map dei-dòo
market shìeng-hãew
matches haab-fèi
meat noo
medicine yêw
message shìen-vaa
milk niu-nãai
minute fân
mobile phone thôu-gii
money shìen
month ndêwen
morning gyåang-hãt
mother dåa-mee
motorcycle moo-dòo-shee
mouth báak

N

name mìng-shoo
near gyãew
neck n hòo
new móo
newspaper báau-shèi
night gyåang-ham
no mbôu
noisy shàau
nonsmoking mbôu shït ïen
north bãk
nose ndãng
now thèi-nèi
number haau

O

old (people) låau
old (things) gée
one-way ticket bíu daan-shèwng
open a hãai-dêwk
outside baai-roog

P

passport hùu-shåau
pay v gyåau shìen
pharmacy yòo-fàang
phonecard dêen-våa-gãa
photo mbãew-thíeng
police gïng-shàa
postcard ming-thïn-bêen
post office yòu-dêen-gii
pregnant mii ndåang
price n gyáa-shìen

Q

quiet a yàm

R

rain n fêwn
razor faak-dái
receipt n thôu-dìu
refund n bòoi
registered mail yòu-gêen gváa-haau
rent v shôo ràan
repair v shooi
reserve v bãau-lòu
restaurant bóu-hâu
return (give back) hòoi
return (go back) bãi-mãa
return ticket bíu bãi-dáau
right (direction) baai gváa
road rôn
room n fûeng

S

safe a ãan-shìen
sanitary napkin thãai dàew-thak
seat n díek-nang
send thóng

sex (intercourse) dô-ēe
sex (gender) dak rô daa
shampoo thīi-fàa-shīi
share (a dorm) dòng-yóu
she dēe
sheet (bed) dāam
shirt buu
shoes hàai
shop n bóu
short dám
shower n lìn-yù-thìi
single room fùeng vùn-ndēu
skin n nāng
skirt n gùn
sleep v nìn
slow meen
small íi
soap gēen
some mbāng
soon shou
south nàam
souvenir dô-gáai géi-niem
stamp yòu-bíu
stand-by ticket bēi-yung-bíu
station (train) shee-shàan
stomach dūng
stop v dìng
stop (bus) n gung-gūng gīi-shee shàan
street gāai
student haak-thēeng
sun dāng-ngòn
sunscreen fàang-thǎai-yòu
swim v yòu-rám

T

tampon mèen-thǎai
telephone n dēen-vǎa
temperature (weather) gīi-vewn
that hàn
they gyóng-dēe
(be) thirsty hòo-háew
this nēi
throat hòo
ticket bíu
time thèi-gǎan
tired bak
tissues shēi-gǎn
today ngòn-nēi
toilet shèe-thōo
tomorrow ngòn-shook
tonight ham-nēi
tooth hēeu
toothbrush gáai-sháat-hēeu
toothpaste yàa-gaau
torch (flashlight) thōu-dēn-dùng
tour n līi-hìng
tourist office līi-hìng bǎan-gung-thìi
towel thūu-báa
train n hòo-shee
translate faan-yìi
travel agency līi-hìng-thēe
travellers cheque līi-hìng shii-byǎau
trousers váa
twin-bed room fùeng thōong shòong

U

underwear buu-ndǎew
urgent gān-gīp

V

vacancy fùeng hóng
vegetable n byāk
vegetarian a bòu gēwn shǎai
visa shīem-shíng

W

walk v byāai
wallet shien-bǎau
wash (something) thak
watch n thōu-byāau
water n rām
we (including 'you') ràu
we (not including 'you') dōu
weekend shōu-mòo
west thāi
wheelchair ēi-lōk
when thèi-làew
where gìi-làew
who bòu-làew
why vii-màa
wife yaa
window báak-dáang
with sháu
without mbōu mìi
woman mee-mbēwk
write rāai

Y

yes dewk
yesterday ngòn-lèwen
you sg mèwng
you pl thòu

Mongolian

ALPHABET	278
ABOUT MONGOLIAN	279
PRONUNCIATION	280
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	281
TIME & DATES	282
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	283
ACCOMMODATION	285
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	286
SIGHTSEEING	286
SHOPPING	288
MEETING PEOPLE	289
MAKING CONVERSATION	290
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	294
FAREWELLS	295
EATING OUT	296
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	300
IN THE GRASSLANDS	301
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	303
ENGLISH–MONGOLIAN DICTIONARY	305

alphabet

Initial	Medial	Final	Romanisation
			a, aa
			u
			i, ee
			o, ŭ
			ŭ, oo
			n
			ng
			b, v, w
			p
			h, kh
			h, kh
			g
			g
			l
			m
			s, sh
			sh
			t, d
			ch
			j

Initial	Medial	Final	Romanisation
			y
			r
			w, v, e
Extended letters (for Chinese and other foreign words) are listed below.			
			f
			k
			lh
			ts
			z
			h
			zh
			zh
			chö
Mongolian is written vertically, ie from top to bottom (and read from left to right), in a cursive alphabetic script consisting of 23 basic letters with the addition of several extra characters used mainly to write words borrowed from other languages. Not all sounds listed in this table are found in the phrases within this chapter. See the pronunciation guide, p280. Where two options are given in the table, you might see either symbol used.			

about Mongolian

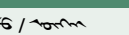
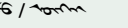
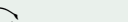
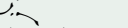
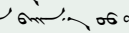
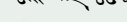
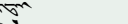
Mongolian (*mong·gol hul* ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ) is a Mongolic language, thought to be related to Turkish, Japanese and Korean. It's written using a cursive script in vertical lines read from left to right (also see p282) – one of few languages to be written this way. According to legend, the script was instituted by order of Genghis Khan in 1204. Today, there are estimated to be around 10 million Mongols worldwide, the majority living in the Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region of China. The standard language for Mongols in China is based on the Chahar dialect (used in this chapter), an official language alongside Mandarin Chinese. Mongolian restaurants and stores can be found throughout Inner Mongolia, and if the Mongolian writing on the signs is larger than the Chinese, you can be sure those inside speak Mongolian. Of course, a trip to Inner Mongolia should include a visit to its famous grasslands. Travellers here will often be met by locals and presented with a ceremonial scarf, called a *khadag* (*had·dug* ᠬᠠᠳᠠᠭ), along with verbal blessings. Foreigners speaking Mongolian cause great delight – even more so if you say *tan·nē yir·rool tog·tukh bol·too·gē* ᠲᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠶᠡᠷᠦᠶᠡᠯ ᠲᠥᠭᠥᠰᠬᠡᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠭᠠᠢ, meaning 'May your blessings come to pass!'

mongolian



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	f**a**t	b	**b**it
aa	f**a**ther	ch	**ch**in
ai	**ai**sle	d	**d**og
ao	M**ao**	f	**f**un
ay	d**ay**	g	**g**o
e	b**e**t	h	**h**ot
ē	th**e**re	j	**j**ump
ee	s**ee**	k	**k**id
i	p**i**g	kh	as the 'ch' in Scottish 'lo**ch**'
o	h**o**t	l	**l**ip
ô	al**o**ne	m	**m**ap
ö	'e' pronounced with rounded lips	n	**n**o
oi	**oi**l	ng	si**ng**
öö	slightly longer ö	p	**p**et
oo	t**oo**l	r	**r**un (very strong and trilled)
u	c**u**t	s	**s**ip
ŭ	g**oo**d	sh	**sh**oe
In this chapter, the Mongolian pronunciation is given in green after each phrase. The 'r' in Mongolian is a hard, trilled sound. Note that s should always be pronounced as in 'sip' regardless of the sounds around it. Syllables are separated by a dot and the stressed syllable is marked by italics. For example: ᠠᠷᠪᠤᠨ *ar·bun*		t	**t**op
		ts	c**ats**
		v	**v**ery
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**ou
		z	l**ads**

essentials		
Yes./No.		teem/oo·*gway*
Yes, that's right.		*tu*·gu
Yes, that would be OK.		bol·*nē*
Hello.		sēn bēn nô
Goodbye.		ba·yur·*tē*
Thank you.		ba·yur·*laa*
Excuse me./Sorry.		ôch·*lē*·rē

language difficulties

Do you speak English?

ta *ang*·gul hul *mu*·tun nô

Do you understand?

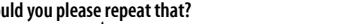
ta *oil*·goj jô

I (don't) understand.

bee *oil*·og·sun·(gway)

Could you please repeat that?

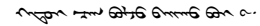
dēkh·*aad* nig ŭd·*daa*
hilj *bol*·un nô

Could you please speak more slowly?

aa·jim shig hilj *bol*·un nô

numbers					
0		tig	20		hur
1		nig	30		gŭch
2		*hoi*·yur	40		dŭch
3		gŭ·*roo*	50		teb
4		dŭ·*roo*	60		jir
5		tav	70		dal
6		jŭr·*gaa*	80		nai
7		dol·*lô*	90		yir
8		nēm	100		jô
9		yis	1000		myang
10		*a*·ra·oo	1,000,000		jôn tŭm

time & dates

What time is it?



hut·tee chag bolj bēkh vē

It's (10) o'clock.

() 

(*ar*·bun) chag bolj bēn

Quarter past (10).



( )

(*ar*·bun) chag *ar*·ban *ta*·vun *min*·nut

Half past (10).

() 

(*ar*·bun) chag *ha*·gas

Forty-five minutes past (10).



( ) 

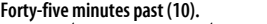
(*ar*·bun) chag *dü*·chin *ta*·vun *min*·nut

At what time (does it start)?



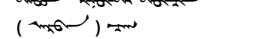
hut·tee chagt (*ukh*·lukh vē)

(It starts) At 10.



ar·bun chag·*aas* (ukh·lun·*nē)*

It's (18 October).



oo·*noo*·dur (ar·bun sar·in ar·bun nē·mun)

the day before yesterday		ŭr·*jee*·dur
yesterday		*oo*·chig·dur
today		oo·*noo*·dur
tomorrow		mar·*gaash*
the day after tomorrow		nŭg·*oo*·dur

just a twist to the right

Mongolian script is written vertically and read from left to right. So if you want to have a go at reading the script in this chapter, or when asking a local to read it for you, simply turn the book 90 degrees clockwise. Our coloured pronunciation guides, however, should simply be read the same way you read English.

Monday		ga·rug·*een nig*·un
Tuesday		ga·rug·*een* hoir
Wednesday		ga·rug·*een gŭr*·bun
Thursday		ga·rug·*een dŭr*·bun
Friday		ga·rug·*een ta*·vun
Saturday		ga·rug·*een* jur·*gaa*
Sunday		ga·rug·*een ŭd*·dur



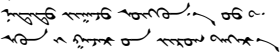
transport & directions

Is this the …		un (ŭ·*laan*·ad)
to (Ulaan Hada)?		*och*·ikh … mŭn ô
bus		*neet*·in *ma*·shin *tur*·rug
train		galt *tur*·rug
plane		*nis*·gul
Where's a/the …?		… haa bēkh vē
bank		benk
convenience store		khit dul·*goor*
currency exchange		jôs *so*·likh *gaj*·jur
pharmacy		um·*meen* dul·*goor*
post office		*shô*·dang tob·*chô*
restaurant		*hô*·lan gur

Is this the road to (the Inner Mongolia Museum)?

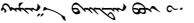
	un bol (*oo*·woor *mong*·gol·in
	moo·*zēi*)·d *ya*·vukh
	jam mŭn nô

Can you show me where it is on the map?



oon·*ee gaj*·rin *jir*·rug döör
nad·ad jaaj *ŭg*·gŭn nô

Where is it located?



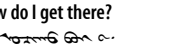
haa *bē*·dug vē

How far is it?



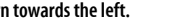
hut·tee hol vē

How do I get there?



bee yaaj tund
och·chikh vē

Turn towards the left.

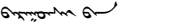


joonsh·ön

Turn towards the right.

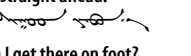
ba·*rônsh*·ön

It's straight ahead.



shôt *ya*·vun

Can I get there on foot?

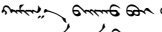


bee *yav*·gun *o*·chij
bol·un nô



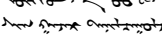
behind		*ar*·dun
in front of		*oom*·nun
near		oi·rul·*chô*
on the corner		*ün*·chügt bēn
opposite		*us*·rug *tal*·dun
there		tund

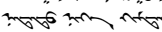
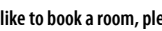
accommodation

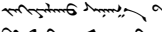
Where's a guest house?

joch·*deen bô*·tul
haa bēkh vē

Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

nad·ud nig *hyemd*·hun/sēn shig

gaj·jur tan·il·*chôlj*

ŭg·gun nô

I'd like to book a room, please.

bee nig ŭr·*röö*

jakh·*aal*·dakh san·*naa*·tē

I have a reservation.

bee nig ŭr·*röö* jakh·*aald*·jai

Do you have a … room?

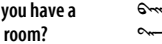
tand … ŭr·*röö* bēn nô

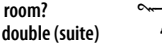
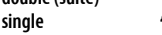
double (suite)

hoi·yur *hoo*·nē

single

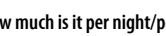
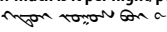
ganch *hoo*·nē

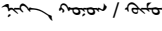
twin

hoi·yur or·*tē*

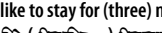
How much is it per night/person?

nig *ho*·nug/hoon

hut·tee jôs vē

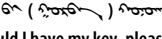
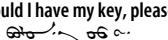
I'd like to stay for (three) nights.

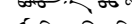
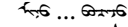
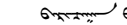
bee (*gŭ*·roo) *hon*·nokh san·*naa*·tē

Could I have my key, please?

tŭl·*khoor*·öön *ŭgch*

bol·un nô

Can I get an extra (blanket)?

öör nig (tans) ügch *bol*·un nô

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.

(*kong*·tee·aa·oo) uv·dur·*jē*

What time is checkout?

mar·*gaash hut*·tee chagt

yav·vakh vē

Could I have my …, please?		*min*·nee … *bô*·chaj ŭgch
deposit		*bol*·un nô
passport		bar·ree·*chaan*·nē mŭngk
		*pas*·port

banking & communications

Where's a/an …?		… haa bēkh vē
ATM		tee kwan jee
public phone		*neet*·in *ô*·tas
internet cafe		net baar

How much is it per hour?

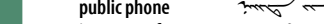
 nig chag *hut*·tee jôs vē

What's your phone number?

 tan·*nē ŭ*·tus·un *no*·mur

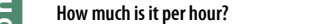
 *hut*·tee vē

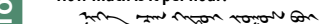
The number is …

 *min*·nee *no*·mur bol …

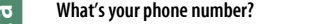
sightseeing

What time does it open/close?

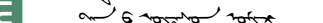
 *hut*·tun chagt

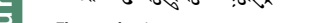
 *nö*·dug/*haa*·dug vē

What's the admission charge?

 pee·*aa*·oo *hut*·tee jôs vē

Is there a discount for student/children?

 sŭ·ragch·*een*/hookh·*deen*

 pee·*aa*·oo bēn nô

I'd like a …		bee … av·*yaa*
catalogue		jô·*gaa*·chul·een *div*·tir
guide		jam·*chee*·lugch
map		*gaj*·reen *jŭ*·rug

I'd like to see …

… *ŭ*·jikh san·*naa*·tē

What's that?



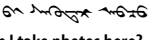
tir yoo bē

Can I take a photo?



bee *soo*·dur avch
bol·un nô

Can I take photos here?



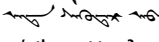
und *soo*·dur avch
bol·un nô

When's the next tour?



hut·tee chag·*aas* da·*raa*·cheen
jô·*gaa*·chikh ölj *bol*·ukh vē

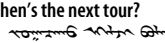
How long is the tour?



hut·tee *hŭg*·chaa vē

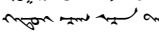
sightseeing

Arjai Grotto (Utag Banner)



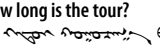
ar·jai *a*·goi

Bái Tǎ (White Pagoda)



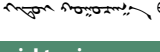
cha·*gaan sŭv*·rag

Dà Zhào Monastery



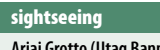
yikh jô som

Dali Lake



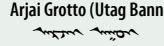
dal nôr

Daqingqou Nature Reserve (Tōngliáo)



chŭng·khul·een gao

Five Pagoda Temple



ta·vun *sŭv*·ragt som

Genghis Khan's Mausoleum in Ordos



ching·gis·seen *ong*·gun

Tomb of Zhaojun



jao jee·yun·*nē ong*·gun

Yuan Dynasty Upper Capital (Shàngdū/Xanadu)



yoo·an *ŭl*·seen
döödˆ *nees*·lul

shopping

Where's a …? … haa *bē*·dug vē

… ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠋

camera shop	ᠰᠤᠤᠷᠢ	*soo*·dur *ta*·takh
	ᠠᠭᠠᠷᠵᠠᠭ ᠳᠡᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷ	*ga*·jar
market	ᠵᠠᠭ ᠳᠤᠯᠤᠭᠤᠷ	jakh dul·*goor*
souvenir shop	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ	*mong*·gol·een onch
	ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ	*ga*·rul·teen
	ᠳᠤᠯᠭᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠥᠩᠴᠡ	dul·*goor*

Where can I buy locally produced goods/souvenirs?

ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠤ᠋᠃ *haan*·aas *tan*·nē und·*kheen*

ᠲᠠᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠷᠭᠤ onch *gar*·ult avch

ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠭᠰᠢ ᠵᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠷᠭᠤ ᠵᠢ *dee*·lukh vē

What's this made from?

ᠡᠨᠡ ᠶᠤᠭᠤ ᠠᠴᠠ ᠬᠢᠵᠡᠭᠡᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃ un·*nee yoo*·gaar *hee*·sun vē

I'd like to buy …

ᠪᠢ … ᠠᠪᠬᠤ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠴᠢᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ bee … *a*·vukh san·*naa*·tē

Can I look at it?

ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠷᠢᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ᠃ bee *ŭ*·jij *bol*·un nô

Can I have it sent overseas?

ᠪᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ᠃ gad·*aad ŭl*·sud ya·*vôlj*

ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠠᠭᠤᠯᠰᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠳᠤᠯ *bol*·un nô

How much is it?

ᠬᠡᠳᠦ ᠬᠥᠷᠦᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠡ᠃ *hut*·tee jôs vē

Please write down the price.

ᠦᠨᠡ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ᠃ ŭ·*nee*·geen *bi*·chij

ᠦᠭᠴᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠵᠢᠷᠤᠭ ŭgch *bol*·un nô

That's too expensive.

ᠮᠠᠰᠢ ᠬᠤᠵᠢᠮᠲᠠᠢ mash ŭn·*tē*

I'll give you (five kuai).

ᠲᠠᠨᠳ tand (*ta*·vun *tŭg*·rug)

ᠤᠭᠠ (ᠲᠠᠪᠤᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠷᠭᠤ) ŭg·gee·*yöö*

Can you lower the price?
hyamd·run nô

Is that enough?
jôs *hŭ·*run nô

It's faulty.
uv·dur·*jē*

I'd like a refund.
mŭngk·*öön bo·*chaj avch
*bol·*un nô

I'd like …, please. … … ŭg·*gē·*rē
a bag *sô·*lee·ao ôt
a receipt *ba·*rimt

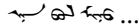


meeting people

Hello. sēn bēn nô
Hi. sēn nô
Goodbye. ba·yur·*tē*
Good night. sēn am·*raa·*rē

Mr/Mrs av·*gē*
Ms/Miss av·*khē*

How are you? sēn bēn nô
Fine. And you? sēn sēn
sēn nô
What's your name? tan·*nē al·*dur
My name is … min·*nee* nur …
I'm pleased to meet you. *sē·*khun ta·nilch·*laa*

This is my …		un bol min·*nee* …
brother (older)		akh
brother (younger)		doo
child		*hoo*·khud
daughter		*hoo*·khun
father		aav
friend		nēj
husband		*nŭ*·khur
mother		ööj
partner (intimate)		*gu*·reen hoon
sister (older)		ugch
sister (younger)		*hoo*·khun doo
son		hoo
wife		*ukh*·nur



making conversation

Do you live here?

und sôj bēn nô

Where are you going?

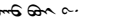
haa *ya*·vukh vē

Do you like it here?

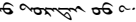
und sôkh *dür*·tē yô

I love it here.

mash *dür*·tē

Have you eaten?

id·sun nô

Are you here on holidays?

und *am*·rilt ŭng·gö·*rö*·khör

yir·sun nô

local talk

Great!	*yaa*·sun sēn bē
Hey!	hoo·*yee*
It's OK.	ha·*maa*·gway
Just a minute.	bag hŭl·*lĕj* bē
Just joking.	*sho*·gulj bēn
Maybe.	bol·ul·*chô*·tē
No problem.	ha·*maa*·gway
No way!	*bolkh*·gway
Sure, whatever.	*bol*·un *bol*·un
That's enough!	*bol*·chi·khun

I'm here …	bee … und yir·*jē*
on business	*mē*·mē *hee*·khöör
for a holiday	*am*·rilt ŭng·gö·*rö*·khöör
for a meeting	hŭ·rul hee·*khöör*
to study	sŭ·rülch·*khaar*
for travel	jô·gaach·*khaar*
to work	a·jil·*khaar*
to visit family	sa·dun·*aan* ŭj·*khöör*

How long are you here for?

ta und *hut*·tee *ŭ*·dukh vē

How long have you been here?

ta und yi·*röörd hut*·tee *ŭ*·daj bēkh vē

I'm here for (four) weeks.

bee und (*dŭr*·bun *ga*·rag) sôkh san·*naa*·tē

Can I take a photo of you?

tan·*nee soo*·durlj *bol*·un nô

Are you Mongolian?

ta *mong*·gol hoon nô

Do you speak Mongolian?

ta *mong*·gol hul *chat*·tun nô

What's this called?

un yoo bē

How do you say … in Mongolian?

… *gu*·sun ŭ·*gee mong*·gol·ôr

yaaj *hu*·lukh vē …

I'd like to learn some (Mongolian).

bee (*mong*·gol hul) sŭrkh

san·*naa*·tē

Would you like me to teach you some English?

ta nad·*aar ang*·gul hul

jaal·gan·*nô*

Sorry, I didn't mean to do anything wrong.

ôch·*lē*·rē

bee al·*vaar* bish

I didn't do it on purpose.

bee al·*vaar* bish

Is this a local custom?

un *tan*·nē end·*kheen*

jang·shil mŭn·*nô*

Where are you from?

ta *haa*·naas *yir*·see

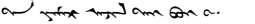
Where is your home county?

tan·*nē nŭ*·tug chin



I'm from …	…	bee … hoon
Australia		av·straa·*lee*·yaa
Canada		*ka*·na·da
England		*ang*·gul
New Zealand		shin *zee*·land
the USA		am·*e*·rik

What's your occupation?



ta *ya*·mur a·jil·*tē* vē

I'm a/an …		bee …
businessperson		*mē*·mē·chin
doctor		umch
foreign language teacher		ga·*daad hul*·nee bagsh
nurse		*sov*·lugch
office worker		*al*·ban *a*·jil·tun
photographer		*soo*·dur·lugch
reporter		sŭr·vul·*jee*·lugch
student		*sŭ*·rugch
teacher		bagsh

How old are you? (asking someone younger or close to your age)



ta *hut*·tun *nas*·tē vē

How old are you? (asking someone noticeably older than you)



tan·*nē nas*·sun *soo*·dur

How old is …?		tan·*nē* … *hu*·tun
		*nas*·tē vē
your daughter		*hoo*·hun
your son		hoo

I'm … years old.



bee … *nas*·tē

He/She is … years old.



tir … *nas*·tē

I'm younger than I look.



bee mash ja·*lô*

ha·rag·duj bēn

Are you married?



ta *hor*·mul·sun nô

I'm …		bee …
single		ho·rum·*lö*·dē
married		*hor*·mul·chikh·sun

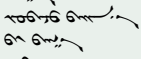
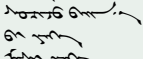
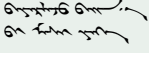
I live with someone.		bee nig *hoon*·tē hamt
		sôj bēn
Do you have a family of your own?		ta *hookhd*·tē yô
Do you like …?	…	ta … *dür*·tē yô
I like …	…	bee … *dür*·tē
I don't like …	…	bee … *dür oo*·gway
art		*jŭ*·rugt
film		*kee*·nô *ŭ*·jikh
music		*hŭg*·jimt
reading		nom *ŭn*·shikh
sport		tem·*reen*
		hŭ·dul·*göönd*

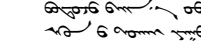


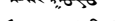
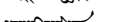
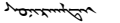
feelings & opinions

I feel …	…	bee … bēn
I don't feel …	…	bee … *oo*·gway
Are you …?	…	ta … bēn nô
cold		daarch
drunk		*sog*·tuj bēn
happy		*ba*·yurlj bēn
hot		ha·*lô*·chij
hungry		ŭlsch
sad		jobj bēn
thirsty		ŭn·*daasch*
tired		*ya*·durj

mixed emotions

a little		bag sag
I'm a little sad.		bee bag jobj bēn
very		yikh
I'm very surprised.		bee yikh *so*·chij bēn
extremely		mash yikh
I'm extremely happy.		bee mash yikh *ba*·yurlj bēn

What do you think of it?

oon·nē to·*khē* yoo
bo·duj bēn nô

awful		mash mô
beautiful		mash goi
boring		weed·gar·*tē*
great		*yaa*·sun sain bē
interesting		*son*·nir·khol·tē
OK		*jŭ*·gur shig
strange		*so*·nin *ha*·chin

farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.

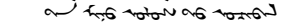
bee mar·*gaash ya*·vun

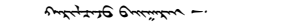
If you come to my country you can stay with me.

ta *min*·nee *ŭls*·ad *och*·bul *nad*·tē
hamt sôj *bol*·un

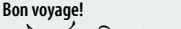
Keep in touch!

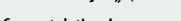
ha·ril·chij bē·ga·*rē*

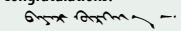
Here's my (address).

un bol *min*·nee (gir·*reen ha*·yig)

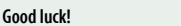
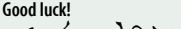
What's your (email)?

tan·*nē* (*ee*·mēl) chin

well-wishing

Bon voyage!

sēn ya·va·*rē*

Congratulations!

ba·yur hŭr·*gee*

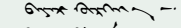
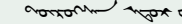
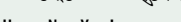
Good luck!

aaj *jar*·gal hoo·*see*

Happy birthday!

tŭr·sun *ŭd*·reen

ba·yur hŭr·*gee*

Happy New Year!

sēn shin·ul·*voo*

eating out

Can you recommend a (restaurant)?

ta *na*·dud un *hö*·vöör *ya*·mar

sain (*hô*·lung gur) *bē*·khee

hilj ŭgch *bol*·un nô

bar		baar
cafe		*hô*·lung gur
dish		hôl
teahouse		*chē*·geen *mŭkh*·lukh

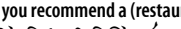
I'd like a table for (five).

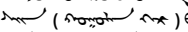
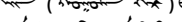
(*ta*·vun) *hoon*·nē shir·*röö*

What are the local specialities?

und *ya*·mar onch

ga·rul·tē vē

I'd like to see the menu.

tsay·dan ŭj·jee·*yöö*

Can we have a private room?

höb·een ŭr·*röö*

bēn nô

Can we have the bill?

dang·*saan* bod·dee·*yöö*

Are you still serving food?

o·*dô* bas hôl bēn nô

What would you recommend?

und *ya*·mar *sē*·khun hôl bēkh vē

What do you normally eat for (breakfast)?

ta yŭr·*döön ya*·mar (ŭg·*löö*·geen hôl) *it*·dug vē

What's that called?

tur yoo vē

What's in that dish?

yoo·gur *hee*·dug vē

I'll have that.

tur·*ee* a·*vee*





I'd like it with …		… *gee*·gin i·*loo* *hee*·chikh
I'd like it without …	…	*bit*·gee … hee
chilli		*laa*·jao
garlic		*sa*·rim·sug
MSG		wee jing
nuts		*ho*·shig
oil		tos
I'd like …	…	bee … a·*vee*
a piece		nig *hu*·sug
one bottle		nig longk
one box/carton		nig *hĕr*·chug
one *jing* (500gm)		nig jing
that one		tu·*ree*
two		*hoi*·ree

This dish is …	…	un hôl …
(too) spicy	( )	(mash) ha·*lôn*
superb		mash *amt*·tē

I love this dish.

bee un hôl·*lee i*·dukh
dür·tē

I love the local cuisine.

bee un *gaj*·reen *hôl*·lund
dür·tē

That was delicious!

mash *amt*·tē

I'm full.

bee *chat*·tul id·*löö*

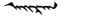
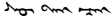
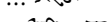
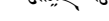




breakfast		üg·*löö*·geen hôl
lunch		üd·*een* hôl
dinner		ö·*röö*·geen hôl
drink (alcoholic)		*a*·rikh
drink (nonalcoholic)		un·*daan*
… water	…	… üs
boiled		*bo*·chil·sun
cold		*hwee*·tun
still mineral		*chu*·vur

not your cup of tea?

Mongols are generally tea, rather than coffee, drinkers. Be warned, though, that Mongolian food and drink customs are quite different to those in other parts of China. For instance, 'milk tea' sounds innocent enough, but many people are surprised to find lumps of flour and meat, as well as animal fats, butter, millet and salt added to a Mongolian cuppa. And don't expect a cup and saucer – locals usually drink their tea from a bowl.

(cup of) coffee		kôf
(cup of) tea		chē
black tea		har chē
fresh drinking yoghurt		*ē*·rug
kumiss **(fermented mare's milk)**		*chu*·gu
milk tea		*soo*·tē·chē
… of beer		… peev
a glass		nig cho·*mo*
a large bottle		tom *longk*·tē
a small bottle		bag *longk*·tē
red/white wine		ŭl·*aan*/cha·*gaan*
		*ŭj*·meen *a*·rikh
a shot of (rice wine)		nig *hŭn*·dug
		(har *a*·rikh)

What are you drinking?



ta yoo ôkh vē

I'll buy you a drink.



tand un·*daan*



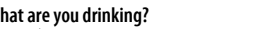
avch ŭg·*yöö*

What would you like?



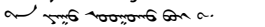
ta yoond *dŭr*·tē vē

Cheers!



tog·toi·*yo*

This is hitting the spot.



yaa·sun sēn bē

I'm feeling drunk!

bee *sog*·tuj bēn

I'm totally drunk!
(lit: I've become a domestic animal)



bee mal bol·chikh·*lô*

street eats		
boiled dumplings		bēnsh
boiled meat		*chan*·sun makh
butter (to add to milk tea)		shar tos
dried beef strips		borch
fried bread		*hēr*·sun bôb
fried-meat pancake		*shal*·bing
fried millet		*hôr*·sun bo·*daa*
fried millet with sweet cream		*jöö*·khē·tē bo·*daa*
huruud **(a type of curd)**		hür·*ood*
noodles		*mee*·en·ti·yor
örööm **(hardened skin of milk)**		oo·*room*
steamed dumplings		bôs



special diets & allergies

I'm a vegetarian.

bee *saa*·yô

I can't eat pork.

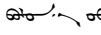
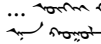
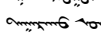
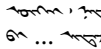
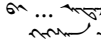
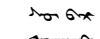
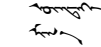
bee *ga*·khēn makh
it·dug·gway

Where can I find halal food?

haa *ho*·tüng *ŭn*·dus·tun·nē
hôl bēkh vē

I only want to eat vegetables.

bee no·*gô* id·ee·*yöö*
gij *bo*·doj bēn

Could you prepare a meal without …?		un *hôl*·ee … *oo*·gway heej *bol*·un nô
I'm allergic to …		bee … *i*·duj bolkh gway *nad*·ud *taa*·rukh·gway
dairy produce		*soo*·gaar *hee*·sun yim
eggs		*ŭn*·dug
meat		makh
nuts		*hosh*·ug
seafood		*dal*·lēn id·*dön*

in the grasslands

I'd like to visit a Mongolian family on the steppe.



bee hu·*döö*·geen *mong*·gol ēlt
o·chij *ŭ*·jikh san·*naa*·tē

I'd like to see some traditional Mongolian life.



bee *ŭ*·lam·jee·lalt *mong*·gol
am·dur·lee *ŭ*·jikh
san·*naa*·tē

I'd like to find a company that arranges tours of the grasslands.



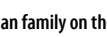
bee tal *nŭt*·geen
jü·*gaa*·chil·een
kom·pan *ur*·ikh san·*naa*·tē

Can you help me?



ta na·*mēg* tŭs·ul·*nô*

How much is it per person?



nig hoon
hut·tee jôs vē

I'd like to see a traditional Mongolian yurt.



bee *mong*·gol gur *ŭ*·jikh
san·*naa*·tē

Where can I hire a horse?

haa·naas mur
tür·*öös*·ulj
bol·ukh vē

How much is it per hour?

nig chag
hut·tee jôs vē

Can I have a guide?

jamch olj ŭgch
bol·un nô

I'd like to …	…	bee … san·*naa*·tē
do some archery		nŭm süm *har*·vukh
ride a buggy		*tu*·rug *ba*·rikh
do some wrestling		bŭkh *ba*·ril·dukh



horse		mur
horse riding		mur *ô*·nakh
reins		jol·*lô*
saddle		um·*ööl*
steppe/grasslands		tal *nŭ*·tug
stirrup		dŭ·*röö*

Stop!

jogs·*sôch*

My saddle is hurting me.

un um·*ööl* na·*mēg*
ŭbt·göj bēn

Can I change horses?

bee mur·*öön* sol·*lee*·yô
bol·un nô

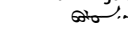
Can we stop here?

und jogs·*ô*·*yöö*
bol·un nô

just a twist to the right

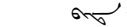
Mongolian script is written vertically and read from left to right. So if you want to have a go at reading the script in this chapter, or when asking a local to read it for you, simply turn the book 90 degrees clockwise. Our coloured pronunciation guides, however, should simply be read the same way you read English.

Can we go back now?



bid o·*dô he*·rij
bol·un nô

Let's go back now.



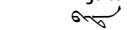
bid o·*dô* he·ree·*yaa*

Can you help me get off this horse?

nad·dee bôl·gaa·*gaach*

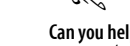
emergencies & health

Help!



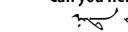
em av·*raa*

Could you help me, please?



ta *nad*·dee *khav*·sŭrch
bol·un nô

I've been injured.



bee shar·khug·tich·ukh·*laa*

My friend has been injured.



min·*nee* nēj shar·khug·tich·ukh·*laa*

There's been an accident.

un·dul gar·chikh·*laa*

Where's the nearest phone?

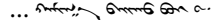
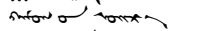
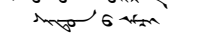
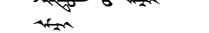
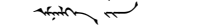


ham·geen öör *ô*·tas
haa bēkh vē

We need to get to a doctor.



bid *umch*·ud
hŭr·dun *och*·ikh *hu*·rug·tē

Where's the		*ham*·geen öör
nearest …?		… haa bēkh vē
dentist		*shood*·nē umch
doctor		umch
hospital		*um*·nul·geen
		hor·*rô*
pharmacist		*um*·een dul·*goor*

I'm ill.



bee ŭvd·chikh·*löö*

My friend is ill.



min·*nee* nēj ŭvd·chikh·*löö*

english–mongolian dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) *ües-sul un-dul*
accommodation bër
adaptor *bee-yen yaa chee*
after da-*raa*
air conditioning *kong-tee-aa-oo*
airplane *nis-gul*
airport *nis-gul-een bö-tul*
alcohol *a-rikh*
all bükh
ambulance *tür-gun av-ral-teen ma-shin*
and ba
ankle shaa
arm gar

B

baby *nyel-ukh khoo-khud*
back (of body) nü-*rö*
backpack bogch
bad mö
bag öt
baggage *bö-tul*
bank benk
bar baar
bathroom *ü-gaal-gin gur*
battery *dee-en chö*
beautiful goi
bed or
beer peev
before *ü-mün*
behind höön
bicycle dü-*gway*
big tom
bill dangs
blanket *khoon-jil*
blood group *chü-sun too-rool*
boat jab
book (make a reservation) v jakh-*aa-lukh*
bottle longk
boy hoo
breakfast üg-*löö-geen höl*
broken (out of order) uv-dur-*hë*
bus *neet-in ma-shin tur-rug*
buy v *a-vakh*

C

camera *soo-dur-lukh ma-shin*
car *ma-shin tur-rug*
cash n *bul-lun mongk*
cell phone gar-*ö-tas*
centre n tüv
change (money) v jös *so-likh*
cheap hyemd
check (bill) n dangs
chest (body) chööj
children *hoo-hud*
cigarette *ta-mukh*
city hot
clean a *chu-vur*
closed ood haa-*jë*
cold a *hwee-tun*
come *yi-rukh*
computer kom-*pyoo-tur*
condom bee *yoo-wun tao*
cook v hôl heekh
cost n ün
credit card it-gum-*jeen kaart*
currency exchange jös *so-likh ga-jur*
customs (immigration) *bôm-teen gël*

D

dangerous *a-yul-të*
date (time) *ü-dur*
day *ü-dur*
delay v *hoch-rukh*
dentist *shood-në umch*
depart *ya-vakh*
dinner ö-*röö-geen hôl*
direct a shôt
dirty *bü-jir*

disabled *jim*-dug
discount v hyemt-*rô*-lukh
doctor umch
double bed *hoi*-yur *hoo*-nē or
double room *hoi*-yur *hoo*-nē ür-*röö*
drink n *un*-daan
drink v ôkh
drive v jo-*lô*-dukh
driving licence jo-*lô*-cheen *tum*-dug
drug (illicit) hôrt um

E

ear chikh
east joon
eat *id*-dukh
electricity *cha*-khil-gun
elevator *cha*-khil-gun shat
email *ee*-mēl
embassy *ul*-chin *sē*-deen *ya*-mun
emergency *ba*-chim *hu*-rug
English (language) *ang*-gul hul
evening ö-*röö*
exit n ood
expensive *ün*-tē
eye nüd

F

far hol
fast *hur*-dun
father aav
finger hür-*rô*
first-aid kit *ba*-chim av-ral-*teen hēr*-chug
first class tur-*roon jir*-geen
fish n *jag*-gas
food hôl
foot hül
free (of charge) *jü*-göör
friend nēj
fruit *ji*-mus
full *doo*-rung

G

gift *bul*-lug
girl *o*-khin
glass (drinking) cho-*mô*
glasses nüd-un shil
go *ya*-vakh
good sēn
guide n jamch

H

half n *ha*-gus
hand gar
happy *ba*-yurlj bēn
he tir
head n tol-*gē*
heart jürkh
heavy hünd
help *tüs*-lamj
here und
high *ün*-dür
hike v *yav*-gun *ya*-vakh
holiday *am*-rult
homosexual i-jil *hwees*-tun-nē *am*-rug-lul
horse mur
hospital *um*-nul-geen hor-*rô*
hot ha-*lôn*
hotel *joch*-deen *bô*-tul
(be) hungry ül-sukh
husband ur *nü*-khur

I

I bee
identification (card) *bay*-yeen gurch
ill *ub*-chin-tē
injury n *sha*-rakh
insurance *bay*-yeen *daat*-gul
internet sül-*jöö*
interpreter *hul*-murch

J

jewellery *ur*-dun-is
job *a*-jil

K

key tül-*khoor*
kilogram kee-*lô*-gram

kitchen to-*gôn* gur
knife *khut*-ag

L

laundry (place) *hub*-chus ô-*gaakh ga*-jur
lawyer hölch
left (direction) joon
leg (body) hül
less chöön
letter (mail) *jakh*-dul
light n *gu*-rul
like v *dür*-tē
lock n *ün*-us
long ürt
lost (items) *göö*-sun
love v *hēr*-tē
luggage *bô*-tul
lunch *üd*-een hôl

M

mail n *shô*-dang
man hoon
map *gaj*-rin *jū*-ug
market jakh dul-*goor*
matches *chwee*-dung
meat makh
medicine um
message *jakh*-aa
milk soo
minute *min*-nut
mobile phone gar *ú*-tas
money jös
month sar
morning ŭg-*löö*
mother ööj
motorcycle *mo*-tur
mouth em

N

name nur
near öör
neck n hŭj-*joo*
new shin
newspaper *so*-nin
night sün
no (not at all) oo-*gway*
no (not this) bish
noisy shô-*gaan*-tē
north hööt
nose *ha*-mur
now o-*dô*
number *no*-mēr

O

old (people) *nas*-tē
old (things) *hô*-chin
open a *nölt*-tē
outside *ga*-dun

P

passport *pas*-port
pay v jös *üg*-gukh
pharmacy *um*-meen dul-*goor*
photo *soo*-dur
police chag-*daa*
post office *shô*-dang tob-*chô*
pregnant *jir*-um-sun
price n ün

Q

quiet a *tē*-vung

R

rain n bor-*ôn*
razor *sakh*-leen *hŭ*-tug
receipt n *pee*-ao
rent v khoo-*loos*-lukh
repair v *jas*-sukh
restaurant *hô*-lung gur
return (give back) *üg*-gukh
return (go back) *bo*-chuj *ya*-vakh
return ticket yavj *ha*-rikh bil-*lēt*
right (direction) ba-*rôn*
road jam
room n ŭr-*röö*

S

safe a *a*-mur *tüb*-shin
seat n *sô*-dul
send ya-*vô*-lukh
sex (act) *hor*-chul
sex (gender) *chan*-reen *yil*-gul
shampoo *gu*-jig ŭg-*aakh shing*-gun

she tir
sheet (bed) *khoon*·jil
shirt chamch
shoes *shaa*·khē
shop n dul·*goor*
short *bo*·gun
single room ganch *hoo*·nē ür·*röö*
skin n ars
skirt n *bang*·jil
sleep v *ün*·tukh
slow üd·*daan*
small *ji*·jig
soap *saa*·vung
some *jar*·rim
soon *ö*·dul·gway
south *üm*·un
souvenir *dürs*·khul·een ud
stamp *yö*·oo *pee*·ao
station (train) *galt tur*·gun ür·*töö*
stomach *gu*·dus
stop v *jog*·sukh
stop (bus) n jog·*sôl*
street *gô*·dumj
student *ö*·*yoo*·tun
sun nar
sunscreen fang *shaa*·yee *shoo*·wong
swim v *om*·bukh

T

telephone n *ô*·tas
temperature (weather) dü·*laa*·nē hum·*jöö*
that tir
they tund
(be) thirsty un·*daa*·sukh
this un
throat *hö*·lē
ticket *pee*·ao
time chag
tired *ya*·darch bën
tissues chaas
today oo·*noo*·dur
toilet *jor*·long
tomorrow mar·*gaash*
tonight ü·*noo* or·*röö*
tooth shüd
toothbrush *shü*·dun umch
toothpaste yaa gao
torch (flashlight) *dee*·am·bur
tour n *ay*·lul
towel *al*·choor
train n galt *tur*·rug
translate orch·*ö*·lukh
trousers ü·mud
twin-bed room *hoi*·yur or·*tē* ür·*röö*

U

underwear *do*·tur *ü*·mud
urgent *yaa*·rul·tē

V

vegetable n nog·*gô*
vegetarian a *saa*·yô
visa veez

W

walk v *yab*·gun *ya*·vakh
wallet *jös*·un bogch
wash (something) v ü·*gaakh*
watch n gar chag
water n üs
we bid
weekend *gar*·geen soolch
west ba·*rön*
when hu·*jöö*
where haa
who hun
why *yaa*·gaad
wife *ukh*·nur
window chongk
with … … tē
without oo·*gway*
woman *um*·ug·tē
write *bi*·chikh

Y

yes teem
yesterday *oo*·chig·dur
you sg inf chee
you sg pol ta
you pl ta nar
yurt gur

Tibetan

ALPHABET 310
ABOUT TIBETAN 311
PRONUNCIATION 312
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES 313
TIME & DATES 314
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS 315
ACCOMMODATION 317
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS 318
SIGHTSEEING 319
SHOPPING 320
MEETING PEOPLE 321
MAKING CONVERSATION 322
FEELINGS & OPINIONS 325
FAREWELLS 326
EATING OUT 327
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES 329
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH 329
ENGLISH–TIBETAN DICTIONARY 331

alphabet

Tibetan script consists of 30 basic characters and four symbols for vowels, which can be added to these characters.

Each of the consonants in the writing system includes an 'a'. This is because consonants in Tibetan are represented as syllabic units and all have an inherent 'a' sound in their basic form. Consonants are arranged according to where the sound comes from in your mouth (from the throat to the lips).

Symbols are added above or below the consonant to indicate different vowel sounds – we've used the first consonant, ཀ (ka), as an example. Note that the Tibetan symbol for each vowel can be pronounced in different ways because the pronunciation is affected by the letters around it.

Vowels (consonant 'ka' used as example)			
ཀི ki	ཀུ ku	ཀེ ke	ཀོ ko

Consonants			
ཀ ka	ཁ kha	ག ga	ང nga
ཅ ca	ཆ cha	ཇ ja	ཉ nya
ཏ ta	ཐ tha	ད da	ན na
པ pa	ཕ pha	བ ba	མ ma
ཙ tsa	ཚ tsha	ཛ dza	
ཝ wa	ཞ zha	ཟ za	
འ 'a	ཡ ya	ར ra	ལ la
ཤ sha	ས sa		
ཧ ha	ཨ a		

about Tibetan

The language of His Holiness the Dalai Lama, Tibetan (bod·skad བོད་སྐད་), belongs to the Tibeto-Burman group of the Sino-Tibetan language family, with Burmese its closest relative. It's spoken by more than six million people, mainly in Tibet but also in neighbouring Nepal, Bhutan, India and Pakistan. Tibetan has many dialects, but the Lhasa dialect (used in this chapter) is the most influential and considered the standard. Written Tibetan was devised in the 7th century by a scholar sent to India by the Tibetan King Songtsen Gampo to enable the translation of Buddhist literature into Tibetan. The new script was based on the Devanagari characters used to write many Indian languages. Since its introduction, the writing system of Tibetan has barely changed, but the spoken language has evolved considerably. As a result, written and spoken Tibetan are quite different. The importance of Mandarin Chinese is also a reality in Tibet – in urban areas almost all Tibetans speak Mandarin. Nevertheless, making an effort to get a few Tibetan phrases together will be greatly appreciated by the Tibetans you encounter on your travels.

tibetan



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	r**u**n	b	**b**ed
â	**a**go	c	**ch**eat
aw	l**aw**	d	**d**og
ay	s**ay**	dz	a**dds**
e	b**e**t	g	**g**o
ee	s**ee**	h	**h**at
i	h**i**t	j	**j**ar
o	s**o**	k	**k**it
ö	h**er**	l	**l**ot
oo	z**oo**	m	**m**an
u	gl**ue**	n	**n**ot
ü	fl**u**te (with a raised tongue)	ng	ri**ng**
In this chapter, the Tibetan pronunciation is given in pink after each phrase. Some consonants in Tibetan can be aspirated (pronounced with a puff of air after the sound). Aspirated sounds are represented with an h following the consonant: ch, kh, ph, th and tsh. An n, m or ng following a vowel indicates a nasalised sound (pronounced with air escaping through the nose). Tibetan also has tones but, unlike in some Asian languages, they aren't crucial to meaning and haven't been indicated in this chapter. Syllables are separated by a dot. For example: བྱ་སྐད་རྫེ་ཆེ། tu·jay·chay		ny	c**a**n**y**on
		p	**p**et
		r	**r**un (pronounced deep in the throat)
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ot
		t	**t**op
		ts	ha**ts**
		w	**w**in
		y	**y**es
		z	**z**ero
		zh	plea**s**ure

essentials

Hello.	བཀྲ་ཤིས་བདེ་ལེགས།	ta·shi de·lek
Goodbye. (by person staying)	གཱ་ལེར་ཕེབས།	ka·lee pay
Goodbye. (by person leaving)	གཱ་ལེར་བཞུགས།	ka·lee shu
Please.	ཐུགས་རྗེ་གཟིགས།	tu·jay·sig
Thank you.	ཐུགས་རྗེ་ཆེ།	tu·jay·chay
Sorry./Excuse me.	དགོངས་དག	gong·da

language difficulties

Do you speak English?
ཕྱིད་རང་དབྱིན་ཇི་སྐད་ཤེས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་དམ། kay·râng in·ji·kay shing·gi yö·bay

Do you understand?
ཁ་ཅི་སོང་ངམ། ha ko song·ngay

I understand.
ཁ་ཅི་སོང། ha ko·song

I don't understand.
ཁ་ཅི་མ་སོང། ha ko ma·song

Could you speak more slowly, please?
ཡང་སྐྱར་གཱ་ལེར་གསལ་བསྒྲགས་གནང་དང། yâng·kya ka·lee ka·lee soong nâng da

Could you repeat that, please?
དེ་ཡང་སྐྱར་གསལ་གནང་དང། te yâng·kya soong nâng·da

numbers

0	๐	lay·koh	**20**	๒๐	nyi·shu
1	๑	chig	**30**	๓๐	soom·chu
2	๒	nyi	**40**	๔๐	shib·chu
3	๓	soom	**50**	๕๐	ngâb·chu
4	๔	shi	**60**	๖๐	doog·chu
5	๕	nga	**70**	๗๐	dün·chu
6	๖	doog	**80**	๘๐	gyay·chu
7	๗	dün	**90**	๙๐	goob·chu
8	๘	gye	**100**	๑๐๐	gya
9	๙	gu	**1000**	๑๐๐๐	chig·tong
10	๑๐	chu	**1,000,000**	๑๐๐๐๐๐๐	sa·ya·chig

time & dates

What time is it?
དབྱུག་ཚོད་གཅིག་རེད། — tân·da chu·tsö kâ·tsay·ray

It's (two) o'clock.
ཚོད་ (གཉིས་) པ་རེད། — chu·tsö (nyi)·pa ray

It's quarter past (six).
ཚོད་ (དྲུག) དང་སྐར་མ་ — chu·tsö (doog)·dâng ka·ma
བཅོ་ལྔ་རེད། — chö·nga ray

It's half past (two).
ཚོད་ (གཉིས་) དང་ཕྱེད་གཅིག་རེད། — chu·tsö (nyi)·dâng chay·ka ray

It's quarter to (three).
(གསུམ་) པ་ཞིན་པ་སྐར་མ་ — (soom)·pa sin·ba ka·ma
བཅོ་ལྔ་ — cho·nga

The Western calendar date is (28 June).
དེ་རིང་ཕྱི་ལྟར་ (ཟླ་གཉིས་ཚོན་ — te·ring chin·da (doog·bay tsay
ཉི་ཤུ་རྩ་བརྒྱད་) རེད། — nyi·shu tsâb·gye) ray



now	དབྱུ་	tân·da
today	དེ་རིང་	te·ring
tonight	དོགོང་མཚན་	dho·gong·tshen
this morning	དེ་རིང་ཞོག་སྐྱ་	te·ring shoh·gay
this afternoon	དེ་རིང་ཕྱི་རྗེ་	te·ring chi·toh
yesterday	ཁ་ས་	kay·sa
tomorrow	སང་ཉིན་	sa·nyin
sunrise	ཉི་མ་ཤར་དུས་	nyin·ma shar·dü
sunset	ཉི་མ་ནུབ་དུས་	nyin·ma noob·dü

spring	དབྱིད་ཀ	chi·ka
summer	དབྱར་ག	yar·ga
autumn	སྟོན་ཀ	tön·ga
winter	དགུན་ག	gün·ga

Monday	གཟའ་ཟླ་བ	sa da·wa
Tuesday	གཟའ་མིག་དམར	sa mig·ma
Wednesday	གཟའ་ལྷག་པ	sa lhåg·bâ
Thursday	གཟའ་ཕུར་བུ	sa phu·bu
Friday	གཟའ་པ་སངས	sa pa·sâng
Saturday	གཟའ་སྤེན་པ	sa pem·pa
Sunday	གཟའ་ཉི་མ	sa nyi·mâ

Tibet uses both the traditional lunar calendar, in which each month has 30 days, and the Gregorian calendar, as used in the West. There are 12 months in each, and they are simply referred to as the '1st month', the '2nd month' etc. However, the Lunar New Year is about six weeks after the Western New Year.

1st month (Tibetan lunar)	ཟླ་བ་དང་པོ	da·wa dâng·po
2nd month	ཟླ་བ་གཉིས་པ	da·wa nyi·pa
3rd month	ཟླ་བ་གསུམ་པ	da·wa soom·pa
4th month	ཟླ་བ་བཞི་པ	da·wa shi·pa
5th month	ཟླ་བ་ལྔ་པ	da·wa nga·pa
6th month	ཟླ་བ་དྲུག་པ	da·wa doog·pa
7th month	ཟླ་བ་བདུན་པ	da·wa dün·pa
8th month	ཟླ་བ་བརྒྱད་པ	da·wa gye·pa
9th month	ཟླ་བ་དགུ་པ	da·wa gu·pa
10th month	ཟླ་བ་བཅུ་པ	da·wa chu·pa
11th month	ཟླ་བ་བཅུ་གཅིག་པ	da·wa chu·chig·pa
12th month	ཟླ་བ་བཅུ་གཉིས་པ	da·wa chu·nyi·pa

transport & directions

Where is this … going?	… འདི་གཤང་འགྲོ་གི་རེད།	… ka·bah doh·gi ray
boat	གྲུ་གཟིངས	dru·zing
bus	ཕྱི་སྐྱོད་བྱང་སྐད་འཕོར	chi·chö lâng·kho·di
plane	གནམ་གྲུ	nâm·du·

What time's the	སྐྱེས་སྐྱོང་གླ་རྟའི་ཚ	chi·chö lâng·kho
… bus?	… རླུང་རྟོག་ཚད་ལ	… chu·tsö kâ·tsay·la
	འགྲོ་གྱི་རེད།	doh·gi ray
first	དང་པོ་ཏེ་	tâng·po·te
last	མཐའ་མ་ཏེ་	tha·ma·te
next	རྗེས་མ་ཏེ་	je·ma·te
I'd like to hire a …	ང་ … གཡར་འདོད་ཡོད།	nga …·chig yar dhö·yö
car	མོ་ཏ་	mo·ta
donkey	བོང་གུ་	boong·gu
landcruiser	ལེན་ཀྲུ་རུ་ས	len cu·ru·sa

How much is it daily/weekly?

ཉིན་/བདུན་ཚེགས་རེ་རེར་	nyin/dun·tâg ray·ray
གོང་གཚད་རེད།	gong kâ·tsay ray

Where's the …?	… གནས་ཡོད་རེད།	… ka·bah yö·ray
bank	དངུལ་ཁང་	ngü·khâng
post office	སྐྱག་ཁང་	da·khâng
tourist information	ཡུལ་སྐོར་སྐྱོན་འཚམས་གྲྭ་	yu·kor to·châm
office	ལས་ཁུངས་	lay·khoong

Does this road lead to …?

ལམ་གཅིའི་ …	lâm·ga·di …
འགྲོ་ཡག་རེད་པས།	doh·ya re·bay

Can you show me (on the map)?

(ས་ལག་ཁའི་ནང་) སྟོན་གནང་དང།	(sâp·ta di·nâng) tön nâng·da

What's the address?

ཁ་བྱང་གི་རེ་རེད།	ka·châng kâ·ray ray

Is it far?

ཐག་རིང་པོ་རེ་དུས།	ta ring·po re·bay

How do I get to …?

… ལ་གང་འདྲས་འགྲོ་དགོས་རེད།	….·la kân·teh·si doh·gö ray

Turn left/right.

གཡོན་ལ་/གཡས་ལ་སྐྱོག་གནང་།	yön·la/yeh·la kyog·nâng

Go straight ahead.

ཁ་རྒྱག་འགྲོ།	ka·toog·do

behind …	… རྒྱབ་ལ་	… gyâb·lâ
in front of …	… མདུན་ལ་	… dün·lâ
near (to) …	… འཕྲལ་ལ་	… tee·lâ
opposite …	… ཕར་ཕྱོགས་ལ་	… pha·chog·lâ
there	ཕ་གཱིར་	pha·kay

accommodation

I'm looking for a …	… གཅིག་མིག་ཏ་གི་ཡོད།	…·chig mig ta·gi·yö
campsite	གུར་གཡབ་གནས་ སྡོད་སའི་ས་ཆ	gur gyâb·nay dö·say sa·cha
guest house	མཁྲོན་ཁང་	drön·khâng
hotel	འབྲུལ་ཁང་	drü·khâng
Where's the …	འབྲུལ་ཁང་ …	drü·khâng …
hotel?	གནས་ཡོད་རེད།	ka·bah yö·ray
best	ཡག་ཤོས	yâg·shö
cheapest	ཅི་ཤོས	ke·shö

I'd like to book a room, please.
ཁང་མིག་ཅིག་བླ་དགོས་ཡོད། khâng·mi·chig la gö·yö

Do you have a room with two beds?
ঌ་ཐུ་གཉིས་བྱེད་པའི་ཁང་མིག་ཡོད་དམ། nye·ti·nyi chay·pay khâng·mi yö·bay

Do you have a room with a double bed?
མི་གཉིས་གཤོང་སའི་ঌ་ཐུ་ mi·nyi shong·say nye·ti
བྱེད་པའི་ཁང་མིག་ཡོད་དམ། chay·pay khâng·mi yö·bay

How much for …?	…ལ་གོང་ཁ་ཚད་རེད།	…·la gong kâ·tsay ray
one night	མཚན་གཅིག	tsen chig
a week	བདུན་རྗེས་གཅིག	dun·tâ chig
two people	མི་གཉིས	mi·nyi

For (three) nights.	མཚན་(གསུམ་)རེད་	tsen (soom) ring
Could we have (a/an) …?	དང་རྩོར་ … དགོས།	ngân·tsoh … gö
(extra) blanket	ཉལ་ཆས་(་ཁྱོལ་པ་))	nye·chay (tö·bâ)
mosquito net	ཉལ་གུར་	nye·gur
our key	དང་རྩོའི་ལྡེ་མིག	ngân·tsö di·mig

The (heater) doesn't work.

(རླངས་ཐུལ་)འདི་སྐྱོན་	(tsa·log) di kyön
ཤོར་ཤག	shor·sha

Is there somewhere to wash clothes?

དུས་ལོག་བཀྲུ་སྒོ་ཡོད་རེད་པས།	du·log trü·sa yö re·bay

Can we use the kitchen?

ཐབ་ཚང་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ན་	tâb·tsâng bay·chö chay·na
འགྲིགས་རེ་རེད་པས།	di·gi re·bay

Do you have a safe where I can leave my valuables?

རིན་ཐང་ཅན་ཅ་ལག་ཁ	rin·tâng·chen cha·lâg
ཆོལ་ས་ཡོད་པས།	chö·sa yö·bay

What time do we have to check out?

དང་ཚུ་ཚོད་གཱས་རུ་	ngân·tso chu·tsö ka·tsay
ཏོན་རྒྱབ་དགོས་རེད།	tön·gö·ray

banking & communications

I'm looking for a/the …	… གཱབ་ཡོད་ཞེད་བ་ ཁྱོ་གི་ཡོད།	… ka·bah yö·may ta·gi yö
bank	དངུལ་ཁང་	ngü·khâng
public telephone	མི་དམངས་ཁ་པའང་	mi·mâng kha·pah

I want to exchange some money.

ང་ཡི་རྒྱུལ་དངུལ་བརྗེ་དགོས་ཡོད།	nga chi·gay ngü jay·gö·yö

What's the exchange rate?

དངུལ་བརྗེའི་གོང་ཚད་གཱ་རེ་རེད།	ngü·je·gong·tsay kâ·ray ray

Is there a local internet cafe?

ས་གནས་དེར་ཨིན་ཊ་ནེཊ་བེད་སྤྱོད་གཱ་ཏོང་ས་ཡོད་ པའི་ཐ་ཁང་ཡོད་རེད་པས།	sa·nay·day in·ta·net bay·chö tong·sa yö·pay cha·khâng

I'd like to get internet access.

ངའི་ནང་ནེཊ་ཅེད་སྤྱོད་ལྷུབ་དགོས་པོད། — nga in·ta·net bay·chö chay·go yö

How much is it for an hour?

ཆུ་ཚོད་གཅིག་ལྟ་རྩིས་ཚོད་རེད། — chu·tsö·chig la·ja kâ·tsay ray

I want to make a long-distance call to (Australia).

ང་ (ཨོ་ཊ་ལི་ཡ་) ལ་ཁ་པར་གཏང་དགོས་པོད། — nga (o·ta·li·ya)·la kha·pah tâng·go yö

I want to make a collect call.

ཁ་པར་གཏོང་བ་ལྟ་ལོངས་ནས་ཕྱིས་རྩིས་སྤྲུག་ཚོགས་པའི་ཁ་པར་གཏིག་གཏང་དགོས་པོད། — kha·pah tong·la phâ·chog·nay tsi·gya chog·pay kha·pah·chi tâng go·yö

The number is …

ཁ་པར་ཨང་གྲངས་ … རེད། — kha·pah ahng·dâng … ray







sightseeing

I'd like to see …

… མིག་ལྟ་འདོད་པོད། — … mig ta·dö yö

What's that place?

ས་ཆ་ཕ་གི་ཀ་རེ་རེད། — sa·cha pha·gi kâ·ray ray

Is it OK if I take a photo?

པར་རྒྱབ་ན་འགྱིག་གི་རེད་ལམ། — par gyâb·na di·gi re·bay

How long is the tour?

བསྐོར་སྐྱོན་རྒྱུན་རིང་ལོ་འགྲོ་ཡག་པོད་རེད། — ta·kor gyün ring·lö do·ya yö·ray

What time does it open/close?

ཆུ་ཚོད་ཀ་སྐོང་ལྟ་/ སྐོབ་རྒྱག་གི་རེད། — chu·tsö kâ·tsay·la go chay·gi/ gyâb·gi ray

Is there an admission charge?

འཛུལ་ལག་སྤྲད་དགོས་རེད་ལམ། — zü·la tay·go re·bay

sightseeing		
monastery	དགོན་པ་	gom·pa
mosque	ཕ་ཆེའི་ལྷ་ཁང་	ka·chay lha·khâng
mountain	རི་	ri
museum	འཚོལ་སྟོན་ཁང་	dem·tön khâng
old city	ཏྲོན་ཁྱེར་སྐྱེ་རབ་	dron·kay nying·ba
palace	ཕོ་བྲང་	pho·dâng
park	གླིང་ཀ་	ling·ga
statues	འདུ་རྟེན་	dâ·ku
temple	ལྷ་ཁང་	lha·khâng
waterfall	འབབ་ཆུ་	bâb·chu

How much is a guide?

གཞས་པ་ཤོད་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་ནམ། — nay·shay gya·khen

ལྕ་ཆ་གཅོད་རེད། — la·cha kâ·tsay ray

Where can I get a local map?

ས་གནས་ཀྱི་ས་ཁྲ་གནས་རབས་ཤིག་རེད། — sa·nay·ki sâp·ta kâ·nay ra·gi·ray

shopping

Where's the nearest …? … ཉེ་བོ་ཤོས་ཀ་བཅར་ཡོད་རེད། — … nyay·shö ka·bah yö·ray

- **camera shop** པར་ཚོང་ཁང་ — par tsong·khâng
- **market** ཁྲོམ་ — trom
- **souvenir shop** དྲན་རྟེན་ཅ་ལག་ཚོང་ཁང་ — dren·ten cha·lâg tsong·khâng

Do you have any …?

སྡུད་རང་ལ་ … བཏོན་ཡག་ཡོད་དམ། — kay·râng·la … tsong·ya yö·bay

Can you show me that?

ཕ་གི་དང་མཚུངས་སྟོན་དང་། — pha·gi ngah mik tön·dâ

Where can I buy locally produced souvenirs?

ས་གནས་རང་ནས་འཕེན་པའི་ དྲན་རྟེན་ཅ་ལག་ ཉོ་རྒྱུ་བཅར་ཡོད་རེད། — sa·nay râng·nay tön·pay den·ten cha·lâg nyo·sa ga·bah yö·ray

Is this made from …?	འདི་ཡི་རྫས་ཆ … རེད་བས།	diy gyub·ja … re·bay
leopard bone	གཟིག་གི་རུས་གོོག	sig·ki rü·koh
leopard skin	གཟིག་པགས་	sig·pâg
onyx	གཟི་	si
tiger bone	སྟག་གི་རུས་གོོག	tâg·gi rü·koh
tiger skin	སྟག་པགས་	tâg·pâg
turquoise	གཡུ་	yu

How much is it?
གོང་ཀ་ཚད་རེད། gong kâ·tsay ray

Can you write down the price?
གོང་ཨོག་བྱེོག་དགོས་གནང་དང་། gong shu·gu·tog dih nâng·da

It's too expensive.
གོང་ཆེ་དྲགས་ཤག gong chay·ta·sha

I'll give you …
ངས་ … སྤྲད་དགོོས། ngay … tay go

Do you accept credit cards?
བུ་ལོོན་ཨོག་ལྡང་ཡོོག bu·lön shog·jâng·tog
རིན་སྤྲད་ན་འཛིག་གི་རེད་བས། rim·pa tay·na di·gi re·bay

There's a mistake in the bill.
དངུལ་ཡིག་ནང་ཧོོར་ཤག ngü·tsi·nâng non·tü shor·sha

less	ཉུང་	nyoong·nga
enough	འདྲིགས་	dig·pa
more	མང་བ	mâng·wa



meeting people

Hello.	བཀྲ་ཤིས་བདེ་ལེགས།	ta·shi de·lek
Goodbye. (said by person staying/ leaving)	ག་ལེ་ཕེབས།/ ག་ལེ་བཞུགས།	ka·lee pay/ ka·lee shu
Good night.	གཟིམ་ཁང་གནམ་གནང་དགོོས།	sim·ja nâng·go

How are you?
ཁྱོད་རང་སྐུ་གཟུགས་བདེ་རྫོགས་ཡིན་པས། kay·râng ku·su de·po yin·bay

Fine. And you?
བདེ་རྫོགས་ཡིན། ཁྱོད་རང་ཡང་ de·bo·yin kay·râng·yâng
སྐུ་གཟུགས་བདེ་རྫོགས་ཡིན་པས། ku·su de·po yin·bay

What's your name?
ཁྱོད་རང་གི་མཚན་ལགས་རེ་རེད། kay·râng·gi tsen·lâ kâ·ray·ray

My name is …
ངའི་མིང་ལ་ … རེད། ngay·ming·la … ray

Pleased to meet you.
ཁྱོད་རང་མཇལ་བས་དགའ་རོ་བྱུང་། kay·râng jel·pa gâh·po choong

This is my …	ཁོང་ངའི་…རེད།	khong ngay·… ray
brother	སྤུན་སྲུན་བུ།	pün·kya bu
daughter	བུ་མོ།	bu·mo
father	པ་ཕ	pa·pha
friend	གྲོགས་པོ/གྲོགས་མོ།	tok·po/tok·mo m/f
husband	ཁྱོག	kyo·ka
mother	ཨ་མ།	ah·ma
sister	སྤུན་སྲུན་བུ་མོ།	pün·kya bu·mo
son	བུ།	bu
wife	སྐྱེས་དམན།	kye·man





making conversation

Do you live here?
ཁྱོད་རང་འདིར་བཞུགས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་པས། kay·râng·day shu·gi yö·bay

Where are you going?
ཁྱོད་རང་གཏར་ཨེའམ་གས། kay·râng ka·bah pay·kay

Do you like it here?
ཁྱོད་རང་འདིར་སྙིད་པོ་འདུག་གས། kay·râng·day kyi·po du·gay

I love it here.
ངོ་འདིར་སྙིད་པོ་འདུག kay day kyi·po du

I'm here …	ངའདིར་ … ཡིན།	nga day … yin
on business	ཚོང་ལས་ཆེད།	tsong·lay·chay
on holiday	གྱུང་གསེང་ཆེད།	goong·seng·chay
to study	སློབ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་ཆེད།	lob·jong je·chay

How long are you here for?

ཁྱེད་རང་འདིར་ཡུན་རིང་གོལོ	kay·râng·day yün ring·lö
བསྡད་ཀྱི་ཡིན།	day·ki·yin

I'm here for … weeks/days.

ངའདིར་བདུན་ཏ/	nga day dün·ta/
ཉིན་མ་ … བསྡད་ཀྱི་ཡིན།	nyin·ma … day·ki·yin

Can I take a photo (of you)?

(ཁྱེད་རང་) པར་ཅིག་རྒྱབ་ན	(kay·râng) par·chig gyâb·na
འགྲིགཝི་རེད་བམ།	di·giy ray·bay

I'd like to learn some of your local dialects.

ངཡུ་མི་ཡི་སྐད་སྐྱུར་འདོད་ཡོད།	nga yü·miy·kay jâng·dö·yö

Would you like me to teach you some English?

དས་ཁྱེད་རང་ལ་དབྱིན་སྐད་	ngay kay·râng·la in·ji·kay
བསླབ་བགོས་བམ།	lâb gö·bay

What's this called?

འདི་ལ་ག་རེ་ཟ།	di·la kâ·ray sa

How do you do this in your country?

ཁྱེད་རང་གི་ལུང་པའི་ལུགས་སྲོལ་	kay·râng·gi loong·pay
ལ་འདེ་གང་	loog·sö·la

Is this a local or national custom?

འདི་ཡུལ་ཕྱི་ཡི་ལུགས་སྲོལ་ཡིན་ནམ།	di yü·miy loog·söl yin·na
རྒྱལ་ཁབ་སྤྱི་ཡོངས་ཀྱི་	gya·kâb chi·yong·gi
ལུགས་སྲོལ་ཡིན་ནམ།	loog·söl yin·na

I'm sorry, it's not the custom in my country.

དགོངས་དག་དེ་འདྲར་	gong·ta te·da
ཚོ་ཡི་ལུང་པའི་ལུགས་	ngân·tsö loong·pay
སྲོལ་ལ་ཡོད་ཚ་རེད།	loog·sö·la yö·ma·ray

Thank you for your hospitality.

སྙེ་ལེན་ཡག་པོ་གནང་བའང་	nay·len yak·po nâng·wa
ཐུགས་རྗེ་ཆེ།	tu·jay·chay

local talk

Just a minute.	རྩེ་ཅིམ་སྒུག་ཅ།	teh·si gu·ah
I see.	ཨ་ལེ།	ah·leh
It's OK.	འགྲིག་གི་རེད།	di·gi ray
Sure.	ཡིན་དན་ཡིན།	yin·da·yin





Where are you from?
ཁྱོད་རང་ལུང་པ་གནས་ཡིན། kay·râng loong·pa ka·nay yin

I'm from …	ང་ … ནས་ཡིན།	nga …·nay yin
Australia	ཨོ་སི་ཊྲ་ལི་ཡ	o·ta·li·ya
Canada	ཀེ་ན་ད་	ka·na·da
England	དབྱིན་ཇི་ལུང་པ	in·ji loong·pa
New Zealand	ནིའུ་ཛི་ལན་ད	nu·zee·land
the USA	ཡུ་ཨེས་ཨེ་/ཨ་མི་རི་ཀ	yu·es·ay/ah·mi·ri·ka

What do you do (for a living)?
ཁྱོད་རང་ (བཟོ་ཐབས་ཚེད་) ལས་ཀ kay·râng (tso·tâb·che) lay·kâ
གཅེ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཨོ་ཡོ། kâ·ray chay·ki·yö

I'm a/an …	ང་ … ཡིན།	nga … yin
businessperson	ཚོང་པ	tsong·pa
office worker	ལས་ཁུངས་པས་ཀ	lay·koong lay·ka
	ཁྱེད་མཁན	chay·khen
teacher	དགེ་རྒན	gay·gan

How old are you?
ཁྱོད་ར་ལོ་གཅི་ཚོད་ཡིན། kay·râng lo kâ·tsay yin

I'm … years old.
ངས་ … ཡིན། nga lo … yin

How old is your …?	… ལོ་གཅི་ཚོད་རེད།	… lo kâ·tsay ray
daughter	ཁྱེད་རང་གི་བུ་མོ	kay·râng·gi bu·mo
son	ཁྱེད་རང་གི་བུ	kay·râng·gi bu

Are you married?
ཁྱེད་རང་ཚང་མར་བཟོས་ཚར་བམ། kay·râng chàng·sa kyön tsa·bay

We live together, but we're not married.
ང་གཉིས་ཨ་ཉམ་དུ་སྡོད་ཀྱི་ཡོད་དེ་ nga·nyi nyàm·tu dö·ki yö·te
འཚང་མ་བརྒྱབ་མེད། chàng·sa gyâb·may

I'm …	ང་…	nga …
single	མི་རྙེད་ཡིན།	mi·hreng yin
married	འཚང་མ་བརྒྱབ་ཚར།	chàng·sa gyâb·tsah

Do you like …?
ཁྱེད་རང་ … ལ་དགའ་རོགས་དམ། kay·râng …·la ka·bo yö·bay

I don't like …
ང་ …ལ་དགའ་མེད། nga …·la ka·bo may

I like reading.
ངའི་ཀློག་ཡག་ལ་དགའ་རོགས། nga teb lo·ya·la ka·bo yö

I like music.
ངའི་ལྷབ་གོ་དཔྱད་ལ་དགའ་རོགས། nga rö·ja tong·ya ka·bo yö

I like playing sport.
ངའི་རྩལ་རྩེ་ལ་དགའ་རོགས། nga tsay·mo tsi·ya ka·bo yö

feelings & opinions

I'm …	ང་…གི་འདུག	nga …·gi du
Are you …?	ཁྱེད་རང་ … གི་འདུག་གམ།	kay·râng …·gi du·gay
cold	གྲང་	khya
hot	ཚ་བཚིག	tsa·wa tsi
hungry	རྒོད་རྟག་སྐོམ་	drö·kog tog
sad	སེམས་སྐྱོ་	sem kyo
thirsty	ཀ་སྐོམ་	ka kom
tired	དཀའ་ལས་ཀ	kâ·lay ka
worried	སེམས་འཁལ་ལང་	sem·tel lâng

I'm happy.
ངར་སྐྱིད་པོ་འདུག nga kyi·po du

I'm well.
ངའདེ་པོ་ཡིན། nga de·po yin

I'm in a hurry.

ངའི་ལས་ཡོད། — nga te·wa yö

What do you think about …?

ཁྱོད་རང་ … ཏོག་ལ་བསམ་རྩིས་ཀ་རེ་དཔོད། — kay·râng … tog·la sâm·tsü kâ·ray·yö

I thought it was … — ངའི་བསམ་པར་དེ་ … ཞེས་རེད་ཅེས། — ngay sâm·pâh te … ·chi ray·sha

boring	སྐྱོ་ཏོ།	nyob·to
great	དཔེ་ཡག་པོ།	pay yâg·po
horrible	དཔེ་སྡུག་ཆགས།	pay doog·châg
OK	འཐོག་ཙམ།	dig·tsâm
too expensive	འཚོང་ཁེ་ཆེན་པོ།	doh·song chen·po





farewells

Tomorrow is my last day here.

ཟླ་ཉིན་འདིར་སྡོད་ཡག་ཉིན་མ། — sa·nyin nga day dö·ya nyin

ཐ་མ་ཏེ་ཡིན། — ta·ma·te yin

If you come to (Scotland) you must come and visit us.

ཁྱོད་རང་གལ་ཏེ། — kay·râng gay·si

(སི་ཀོ་ཏ་ལེན་) ལ་ཕེབས་ན་ང་ཚོ་ཞང་དེས་བལྟས་གནང་། — (so·kot·land)·la pheb·na nga·tsö·sah ngay·pa·du

What's your address?

ཁྱོད་རང་གི་ཁ་བྱང་ག་རེ་རེད། — kay·râng·gi ka·châng kâ·ray ray

What's your (email address)?

ཁྱོད་རང་གི་ (ཨི་མེལ་ཁ་བྱང་) ག་རེ་རེད། — kay·râng·gi (ee·mel ka·châng) kâ·ray ray

Here's my (address).

ངའི་ (ཁ་བྱང་) འདི་རེད། — ngay (ka·châng) di·ray

Keep in touch!

ལུས་ཤུད་ནས་འབྲེལ་བ་གནང་ཆ།། — mu·tü·nay day·wa nâng·ah

well-wishing

Congratulations!
བཀྲ་ཤིས་བདེ་ལེགས་ — ta·shi de·lek

Happy birthday!
སྐྱེས་སྐར་ཉིན་བཀྲ་ཤིས་བདེ་ལེགས། — kye·kah·nyin ta·shi de·lek

Happy New Year!
ལོ་གསར་བཀྲ་ཤིས་བདེ་ལེགས། — lo·sar ta·shi de·lek

eating out

I'm looking for a restaurant.
ཟ་ཁང་གཅིག་ཙམ་འཚོལ་བྱ་གི་ཡོད། — sa·khâng ka·bah yö·may ta·gi yö

A table for …, please.
མི་ … ལ་ཅོག་ཙེ་གཅིག་གནང་རོགས། — mi …·la chog·tse·chig nang·ro

Can I see the menu, please?
དཔར་ཁ་ལ་གི་ཐོ་ཡིན་གནང་དང་། — ngah kha·la·gi·tho tön nang·da

What do you recommend?
ཁྱོད་རང་ཅིའི་ནས་ཡག་གི་རེད། — kay·râng chay·na kâ·ray yâ·gi·ray

What's the local speciality?
ས་གནས་ཀྱི་བཟའ་ཚས་དམིགས་བསལ་གཅེས་གཅེར་ཡག་ཡོད་རེད། — sa·nay·ki sa·chay mig·say kâ·ray kâ·ray tsong·ya yö·ray

I'll have …
ང་ … དགོས། — nga … gö

I'll have what they're having.
ཁོང་རྩོལ་མཚོད་ཡག་རེ་ནའབའ་ཞིག་ང་ལ་དགོས། — khong·tsö chö·ya·te na·shin nga·la gö

What's in that dish?
ཁ་ལ་ཕག་ལ་གི་དང་ག་རེ་ཡོད་རེད། — kha·la pha·gi·nâng kâ·ray yö·ray

I love this dish.
ང་ཁ་ལ་ཕག་འདི་ལ་དགའ་རོ་ཡོད། — nga kha·la di·la ka·bo yö

We love the local cuisine.
ངཚོ་ས་གནས་ཀྱི་ཁ་ལ་ཕག་ལ་དགའ་རོ་ཡོད། — ngân·tso sa·nay·ki kha·la·la ka·bo yö

street eats		
fried meat dumplings	མོག་མོག་བརྩེས་པ་	mo·mo ngö·pa
fried rice	འདྲ་ས་བརྩེས་པ་	day ngö·pa
noodle soup	རྒྱ་ཐུག	gya·thuk
pork spare ribs	རྩིབ་ཤ	tsib·sha
rice soup	འདྲ་ས་ཐུག	day·thuk
roasted pancake (bread)	ཨཱམདོ་བསྐོ་ལེབ	ahm·dho bâk·lay
soup with meat, vegetables and noodles	ཏེན་ཐུག	ten·thuk
steamed meat dumplings	མོག་མོག	mo·mo
vegetable dumplings	ཚའུ་མོག་མོག	tsay mo·mo

The meal was delicious!

ཁ་ལས་ཞིམ་པོ་ཞེ་རྟག་སྡུར། kha·la shim·bu shay·ta choong

Please bring the (bill).

(ཁ་ལས་གི་འཛིན་) ཅིག་གནང་དང་། (kha·la·gi zihn)·chig nâng·da

breakfast	ཞོག་སྐད་ཁ་ལས	shog·kay kha·la
lunch	ཉིན་གུང་ཁ་ལས	nyin·goong kha·la
dinner	དགོང་དག་ཁ་ལས	gong·da kha·la
a bottle of …	… ཤེལ་དམ་གཅིག	… shay·tâm·chig
(boiled) water	ཆུ་ (འཐོལ་མ་)	chu (khö·ma)
(mineral) water	(བུ་ལོག་) ཆུ	(bu·tog)·chu
(orange) juice	(ཚའུ་ལུ་མའི་) ཁུ་བ	(tsâ·lu·may) khu·wa
soda	ཆུ་ངར་མོ	chu nga·mo
coffee (without milk)	ཇ་ཀ་ཕི་ (དེར་མ་མེད་པ་)	cha ka·bi (oh·ma may·pa)
black tea	ཇ་ཐང་	cha·tâng
tea	ཇ	cha
tea with sugar	ཇ་ངར་མོ	cha nga·mo

I'll buy you a drink.
ལག་ཡག་ཏིག་རས་ཆེ་གོ། toong·ya·chig ngay nyo·go

What would you like?
ཁྱེད་རང་ག་རེ་དགོས། kay·râng kâ·ray gö

You can get the next one.
རྗེས་མ་དེ་མངགས་ཆོག་གི་རེད། je·ma·te ngâg cho·gi ray

beer (home-brew)	ཆང་	châng
beer (bottled)	སི་ཇུ་	bee·yar
Chinese brandy	རྒྱ་མི་ཨ་རག	gya·mee ah·râk
liquor	ཨ་རག	ah·râk
wine	རྒྱུན་འཐུམ་ཆང་རག	gün·doom châng·râk

special diets & allergies

I'm vegetarian.
ང་ཤ་མི་ཟ་མཁན་ཡིན། nga sha mi·sa·ken yin

Not too spicy, please.
སྨན་སྨ་ཞེད་གས་ men·na shay·ta
མ་རྒྱ་རོ་གས་གནང་། ma·gyâ·ro·nâng

I'm allergic to …	ངར་ … རོགས་ཀྱི་ཡོད།	ngah … pho·gi·yö
eggs	སྒོང་	go·nga
dairy products	དཀར་ཆུ་	kar·chu
fish	ཉ་ཤ་	nya·sha
meat	ཤ་	sha
peanuts	བ་དམ་	ba·tâm

emergencies & health

Help!	རོགས་གནང་དང་།	rog nâng·da
Stop!	ཁ་བཀག་དང་།	kha kâg·dâng
Go away!	ཕར་རྒྱུག	phâh gyook
Thief!	རྐུ་མ་དུ།	ku·ma du
Fire!	མེ་འབར་ཡིན།	may bâh·gee
Watch out!	གཟབ་གཟབ་གནང་།	sâb sâb nâng

Call …!	… སྐད་གཏོང་དང།	… kay tong·da
a doctor	ཨཱམ་ཆི	ahm·chi
an ambulance	ནད་པ་དབེན་མགན་མོ་ཏ	nay·pa or·khen mo·ta
the police	སྐོར་སྲུང་	kor·soong·wa

Please help me.

ངཱ་རོ་ནཱང་དཱ། ngah ro nâng·dâ

Could I please use the telephone?

ཁཱ་པ་བེ་ཇོ་ཅེ་ན་ད kha·pah bay·chö chay·na

དི་གི་རེ་བཱ། di·gi re·bay

I'm lost.

ངཱ་ལཱམ་ག་ལ་ཏུ་ག་ཤ་ཤཱ nga lâm·ga la·sha

Where are the toilets?

གཱང་ཇོ་ཀ་བ་ཡོ་རེ་ད། sâng·chö ka·bah yö·ray

Where's the police station?

སྐོར་སྲུང་ཝི་ལེ་ཀུང་ kor·soong·way le·koong

ཀ་བ་ཡོ་རེ་ད། ka·bah yö·ray

english–tibetan dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), m (masculine), f (feminine), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

A

accident (collision) གཏོར་རྒྱག་འཐུལ་ dhong-tu gyâb-pa
accommodation སྡོད་གནས་ dhö-nay
adaptor ཚྭོག་ཤུགས་གཏོག་པའ་ log-shoog cho-ya
address ཁ་བྱང་ ka-châng
after རྗེས་པ་ je-la
air-conditioned གྲང་ཚྭོག་ dâng-log
airplane གནམ་གྲུ་ nâm-du
airport གནམ་ཐང་ nâm-tâng
all ཚང་མ་ tshâng-ma
allergy རོག་ནད་ phog-nay
ambulance ནད་དངོས་མགལ་མོ་གྲུ་ nay-pa dön or-khen mo-ta
and དང་ dâng
ankle རུང་ཙིག་ kâng-tsig
antibiotics ནད་ཀྱི་བཙོག་སྨན་ཁེའི་སྐྱེལ་ཚོད་ཀྱི་ nay-bu gok-men an-ti-ba-ye-ot-ik
arm གཡས་ lâg-pa

B

baby ཕུ་གུ་ pu-gu
back (of body) རྒྱབ་ gyâb
backpack རྒྱབ་ཐེག་ gya-phay
bad སྡུག་ཆགས་ dhuk-cha
bag ཐེག་ཆག་ bag-la
baggage claim རྟོག་ཐུལ་ཁེན་ས་ tog-tay len-sa
bank དངུལ་ཁང་ ngü-khâng
bar ཚར་ཁང་ chang-khâng
bathroom གཙུག་ཁང་ trü-khâng
battery བྱེ་རི་ bay-ti-ri
beautiful སྙིང་རྗེ་པོ་ nying je-po
bed ཉལ་ཐི་ nye-ti
beer (bottled) སྦྱར་ཡ་/ཁེག་ bee-yar
beer (home-brew) ཚང་ chang
before སྔོན་ལ་ ngön-la
behind རྒྱབ་ gyâb-la
bicycle རྐང་རྒྱུད་ཀྱི་ཤིང་ kâng-ga-ri shing
big ཆེན་པོ་ chen-po
bill (account) དངུལ་རྩིས་ ngü-tsi
blanket ཉལ་ཆས་ nye-chay
blood group ཁྲག་རིགས་ tâg-rig
boat གྲུ་གཟིངས་ dru-zing
book (make a reservation) སྔོན་མངགས་བྱེད་པ་ ngön-ngâg chay-pa
bottle ཤེལ་བདམ་ shay-tâm
boy བུ་ bu
breakfast ཟོག་གྲུངས་ཀྱི་ཁ་ལས་ shog-kay kha-la
broken ཆག་པ་ châg-pa
bus སྐྱི་སྤྱོད་འབྲུང་སྐྱེལ་ chi-chö lâng-kho
business རྩོང་ tsong
buy v ཉོ་བ་ nyo-wa

C

camera པར་ཆས་ par-chay
cancel ཕྱིར་འཁེན་བྱེད་པ་ chi-ten chay-pa
car སྐད་ mo-ta
cell phone ལག་པར་གཡོག་པའི་ཁ་པ་ lâg-pa kye-ya kha-pa
centre (city) རྩོང་ཁྱེར་དཀྱིལ་ drong-kay-kyil
change v འཕྲེལ་ je-wa
cheap ཚེབ་ kay-po
chest (body) དྲུང་ཐོག་ bâng-go
child/children ཕུ་གུ་ pu-gu
cigarettes ཐ་མཁན་ tha-ma
city རྩོང་ཁྱེར་ dong-kay
clean གཙང་མ་ tsâng-ma
closed སྒོ་བརྒྱབ་པ་ go gyâb-pa
cold a གྲང་མོ་ dâng-mo
come འོང་བ་ yong-wa
computer ཀམ་པུ་ཏར་ câm-pu-tah
condoms རྒྱུ་གཤུབས་ lig-shoob
cook v ཀ་ཁས་བཙོད་པ་ kha-la so-wa
cost n གོང་ gong
credit card ངར་དེབ་ཚོགས་བུང་ bu-lön shog-jâng
customs (at border) གཞིས་སོལ་སྒོང་ gom-söl

D

dangerous ཉེན་ཁ་ nyan-ga
date (time) རྩེས་པ་ tshe-pa
day ཉིན་ nyin-ma
delay འགུག་པ་ gyâng-wa
dentist སོ་ཨཧཾཙི་ so ahm-chi
depart ཕྱིར་ཐོན་པ་ chi thön-pa
diaper ཕུ་གུའི་རྐུབ་ཁེབས་ pu-gü chu-den
dinner དགོང་དཀར་གསུམ་ gong-da kha-la
direct ཁ་ཐུག་ ka-thoog
dirty འཚོག་པ་ཅན་ tsog-ba-chen
disabled དབང་པོ་རྐྱོན་ཅན་ wâng-po kyön-chen

discount ཅོད་བཟལ་ gong chåg-pa
doctor ཨཱམ་ཇི་ ahm-chi
double bed མི་གཉིས་ཀ་ཨོད་ཁའི་ཉལ་ས་ mi-nyi shong-say nye-ti
double room མི་གཉིས་སྡོད་གཡིས་མིག་ mi-nyi dö-say khång-mi
drink n འཐུང་ས་ toong-ya
drive v མོ་ཏ་གཏོང་བ་ mo-ta tong-wa
driving licence མོ་ཏ་གཏོང་ས་གཤམ་ mo-ta tong-ya låg-kay
drug བཙན་ཤུགས་ si-men

E

ear ཨཱམ་ཆོག་ ahm-chog
east ཤར་ shâr
eat ཟ་བ་ sa-wa
electricity གློག་ log
email ཨི་མེལ་ ee-mel
embassy གཞུང་ཚབ་ shoong-tsab
emergency ཅ་དྲག་ za-dåg
English (language) དབྱིན་ཇི་ in-ji
evening དགོང་དག་ gong-da
exit ཕྱིན་སྐ་ dön-sa
expensive གོང་ཆེན་པོ་ gong chen-po
eye མིག་ mig

F

far ཐག་རིང་པོ་ ta ring-po
fast མྱོག་གསལ་པོ་ gyok-po
father པ་པ་ pa-pha
film (camera) ཕིང་ཤོག་ phing-sho
finger མཛུབ་གུ་ zu-gu
first-aid kit ཏཱ་གྱབ་བཅའ་སྒྲིག་བཅོས་པའི་ཐུང་ཀ་ ka-toog bay-chö chay-ya-men-chö yo-chay
fish (alive) ཉ་ nya
fish (as food) ཉ་ཤ་ nya-sha
food ཁ་ལ་ kha-la
foot རྐང་པ་ kâng-pa
free (of charge) རིན་མེད་པ་ rin may-pa
friend གྲོགས་པོ་/གྲོགས་མོ་ tok-po/tok-mo m/f
fruit ཤིང་ཏོག་ shing-tog
full ཁྱེངས་པ་ kheng-pa

G

gift ལག་རྟགས་ låg-tâg
girl ཀུང་མོ་ bu-mo
glass གི་ལས་ ge-la-si
go འགྲོ་བ་ doh-wa
good ཡག་པོ་ yâg-po
guide (person) ལམ་སྟོན་པ་ lâm-tön-pa

H

half ཕྱེད་ཀ་ chay-ka
hand ལག་པ་ lâg-pa
happy ཕྱི་དཔོ་ kyi-po
have ཡོད་པ་ yö-pa
he ཁོ་ kho
head མགོ་ go
heart ཉིང་ nying
heavy ཇི་ཀྱེལ་ ji-kog
help v རོགས་གནང་བ་ rog nång-wa
here འདིར་ day
high མཐོ་པོ་ tho-po
hike v རྐང་འགྲོས་རྩུབ་པ་ kâng-drö gyâk-pa
holiday (vacation) ཞྭ་གཞིང་ goong-seng
homosexual རོགས་པ་ཆུང་གཡང་བྱེད་པ་ phö pho-la chåg-pa chay-pa
hospital སྨན་ཁང་ men-khâng
hot ཚ་པོ་ tsha-po
hotel ཁྲག་ཁང་ drü-khâng
hungry ཞོ་རྐོག་གྲོགས་པ་ drö-kog tog-pa
husband ཁྱོ་ཀ་ kyo-ka

I

I ང་ nga
identification (card) རྟགས་ལག་རྒྱུན་ ngo-trö lâg-kay
ill ནད་ na-wa
important གལ་ཆེན་པོ་ kay-chen-po
injury སྨད་རྩོལ་ may-kyön
insurance ཨིན་ཤུ་རན་གཏན་རྒྱུ་ in-shu-ren gan-gya
internet ཨིན་ཊ་ནེཊ་ in-ta-net

J

jewellery རྒྱན་ཆ་ gyen-jâ
job ལས་ཀ་ lay-ka

K

key ལྡེ་མིག་ di-mig
kilogram ཀི་ལོ་གཱ་རཱམ་ ki-lo-ga-râm
kitchen བཐབ་ཚང་ thâb-tsang
knife གྲི་ ti

L

laundry བླུ་གཙོ་གཏུག་ཁང་ tu-log trü-khâng
lawyer ཁྲིམས་སྟོན་པ་ tim-tsö-pa
left (direction) གཡོན་ yön
leg (body) རྐང་པ་ kâng-pa

lesbian མོལ་མོ་ལ་ཆགས་པ་བྱེད་མཁན་
mö mo-la châg-pa chay-khen
less ཉུང་བ nyoong-wa
letter ཡི་ཀ yi-ge
light (sun/lamp) འོད་ wö
like དགའ་པོ་བྱེད་ ga-po chay
lock སྒྲུག་གོང་ gon-châg
long རིང་པོ ring-po
love v དགའ་པོ་བྱེད་ ga-po chay
luggage དོག་ཐེབས་ tog-tay
lunch ཉིན་གུང་ཀྱི་ཁ་ལ nyin-goong kha-la

M

mail ཐུག dâg
man པོ pho
map ས་ཁྲ sâp-ta
market ཁྲོམ trom
matches མེ་ཏག tsâg-ta
meat ཤ sha
medicine སྨན men
message ཁ་ལེན kha-len
milk ཨོ་མ oh-ma
minute སྐར་མ་ཆིག ka-ma-chig
mobile phone ལག་པར་གཏོང་བཏབ་ lâg-pa kye-ya kha-pa
money དངུལ་ ngü
month ཟླ་བ da-wa
morning ནུབ་ nga-toh
mother ཨ་མ ah-ma
motorcycle སྒྲག་སྒྲག་ bâhg-bâhg
mouth ཁ kha

N

name མིང་ ming
near ཉེས་པ་ tih-la
new གསར་བ sar-ba
newspaper རྩོམ་པར་ tsâg-ba
night དགོང་དག gong-da
no མིན་/མེད་/མ་རེད་/མིན་ལུགས་ min/may/ma-ray/min-du
noisy སྐད་ཅོར་ kay-choh
north བྱང་ chàng
nose སྣ་ཁྲུས་ na-khoog
now དཔྱ་ tân-da

O

old ཉིན་པ nying-pa
one-way ticket ཨང་ལམ་གཅིག་པོའི་འགྲུལ་རྟའི་ཤོག་
ya-lâm chig-po do-ya ti-ka-śî
open a ཁ་ཕྱེ kha-chay
outside ཕྱི་རོལ་གྱི་ chi-log

P

passport པ་སེ་པོཊ་ pa-se-pot
pay v རིན་སྤྲོད་པ rin trö-pa
pharmacy སྨན་ཚོང་ཁང men tsong-khâng
phonecard ཁ་པར་གཏོང་ཐག་གཅོད་ kha-pah tong-ya lâg-kye
photo པར par
police སྐོར་སྲུང kor-soong-wa
postcard ཡིག་ཤོག dâg-shog
post office ཐུགས་ཁང da-khâng
pregnant ཁུ་གུ་སྐྱེ་ཡོད་པོད་ pu-gu kye-ya yö-pa
price n གོང་ gong

Q

quiet a ཁ་ཤུ་མེད་ kha-khu sim-bu

R

rain འཁྲུ་པ chah-pa
razor སྐྲ་གྱི tа-di
receipt ཐུན་འཛིན་ choong-zin
refund n ཕྱིར་འོག chi-log
registered mail དེབ་སྐྱེལ་ཐུག teb-kyel-dâg
rent v གཡར་བ yâr-wa
repair v བཅོ་འཇོམ་རྒྱག so-chö gyâk-pa
reservation སྔོན་ངེས་ངག ngön-ngâg
reserve v སྔོན་ངེས་ཁག་བྱེད་ ngön-ngâg chay-pa
restaurant ཟ་ཁང sa-khàng
return v ཕྱིར་འོག་ chih log-pa
return ticket ཨང་ལམ་མར་ཡང་འགྲོ་ཡི་ཤོག
ya-lâm ma-lâm do-ya ti-ka-si
right (direction) གཡས yeh
road (main) ལམ་ཆེན་ lâm-chen
room ཁང་མིག khâng-mi

S

safe a ཉེན་ཁ་མེད་པ nyen-ga may-pa
sanitary napkins གཙང་སྦྲའི་ཚོགས་ tsâng-day shu-gu
seat སྟན་གྱག koob-kya
send གཏོང་བ tong-wa
sex ཚོམ་རྟགས་ pho-mo tâg
shampoo སྐྲ་བཏུད་ཁུལ་ ta-trü-ya shâm-bu
share (a dorm) སྤྱི་ཁང་ནང་མཉམ་དུ་སྡོད་པ
chi-khâng-nâng nyâm-tu dhö-pa
she མོ mo
sheet (bed) ཅག་ཏེ་ cha-tah
shirt སྐོ་ཏུང་ tö-toong
shoes སྐྱམ་གོག lhâm-ko
shop n ཚོང་ཁང tsong-khâng

short (height) དམའ་པོ་ mâ-po
short (length) ཐུང་ཐུང toong-toong
shower གཙུག་ཁྱུད་པོ་ཆུ soog-po tru-ya tor-cho
single room ཁང་མིག་གཅིག khâng-mi-chig
skin པགས་པ pâg-pa
skirt སྐྱུ་གཡོག may-yog
sleep v གཉིད་ཉལ་བ nyi nyay-wa
slowly ཀ་ལེ་ཀ་ལེ ka-lee ka-lee
small ཆུང་ཆུང choong-choong
soap ཡི་རྩི yi-tsi
some ཀ་ཤས ka-shay
soon མྱོག་པོ་རེ gyok-po
south ལྷོ lho
souvenir shop དྲན་རྟེན་ངོ་ཚོང་ཁང dren-ten cha-lâg tsong-khâng
stamp ཐུག་རྟགས dâg-tâg
station འབས་ཆུས་ཁང bâb-tsoog
stomach གྲོད་ཁོག drö-kog
stop v འགག་པ kâg-pa
stop (bus) n འགག་སར kâg-sa
street ལམ་ཀ lâm-ga
student སློབ་ཕྲུག lob-toog
sun ཉི་མ nyi-ma
sunscreen ཉེ་འཚག་འཕོག nyib-ta gok
swim v ཆུ་རྩུབ་རྒྱག chu-kye gyâk-pa

T

tampons རླུང་འགོག་ཅིང་སྲིན་བསྣམ ma-kha gok-chay sin-bay
teeth སོ so
telephone n ཁ་པར kha-pah
temperature (weather) གནམ་གཤིས nâm-shi
that ཕ་གི pha-gi
they ཁོང་ཚོ khong-tso
thirsty ཀུམ་པོ་འདུག kha kom-po
this འདི di
throat མིད་པ mik-pa
ticket ཏི་ཀ་སི ti-ka-si
time དུས་ཚོད dü-tsö
tired བང་ཆུབ tâng chay-pa
tissues གཙང་སྦྲ་རྩོག་གུ tsâng-ta shu-gu
today དེ་རིང te-ring
toilet གཅང་སྤྱོད་ཚང་ཁ sâng-chö
tomorrow སང་ཉིན sa-nyin
tonight དོ་གོང toh-gong
toothbrush སོ་གྲྭས so-trü
toothpaste སོ་སྨན so-men
torch (flashlight) སྒྲོག་འཕྲུ log-shu
tour བཤུལ་རྐོར ta-kor
tourist information office ཡུལ་སྐོར་སྤྱིའུ་ལས་ཁུངས yu-kor to-chàm-pay lay-khoong
train རི་ལི ri-li
translate v སྐད་བསྒྱུར་བྱེད་པ phâb-gyur chay-pa
travel agency འགྲིམ་འགྲུལ་ལས་ཁུངས dim-drü lay-koong
travellers cheques འགྲུལ་པའི་བརྟན་དངུལ་ཁ་བཤུས drü-shü ngü-zin
trousers གོ་ཐུང go-toong
twin beds ཉལ་ཐིལ་ཅིག་ཅིག nye-ti cha-chig

U

underwear ནང་གཡོག་རྐང་པ nâng-gyön ha-pan
urgent གལ་ཆེན་རེད kay chen-po

V

vacant སྟོང་པ tong-pa
vegetable སྐྱོ་ཤུ ngo-tsay
vegetarian ཤ་མི་ཟ་མཁན sha mi-sa-khen
visa ཝི་ཟ vi-za

W

walk v སྐོར་རྒྱུག gom-pa gyâk-pa
wash (something) v ཁྲུས་རྒྱག trü gyâk-pa
watch n རྩུབ་དེད chu-tsö
water n ཆུ chu
we དངོ་ངན་ཚོ ngân-tso
weekend གཟའ་སྨིན་ནང་ཉིན sa pen-pa dâng nyin-ma
west ནུབ noob
wheelchair འཁོར་ལོ་ཐུབ་ཀྱི kho-lö koob-gya
when གང་ལ ka-dü
where གང་ར ka-bah
who ག su
why གང་ཞུབས་ kâ-ray chay-nay
wife སྐྱེས་མན kye-man
window སྒེའུ་ཁུང gay-koong
with མཉམ་དུ nyâm-tu
without མེད་པ་/མིན་ may-pa/min-pa
woman སྐྱེས་མན kye-man
write འཕྲི་བ ti-wa

Y

yes ཡིན་རེད་/ཡོད་/ཨེན yin/ray/yö/du
yesterday ཀ་ནང kay-sa
you sg/pl ཁྱེད་རང་/ཁྱེད་རང་ཚོ kay-râng/kay-râng-tso

Uighur

ALPHABET	336
ABOUT UIGHUR	337
PRONUNCIATION	338
LANGUAGE DIFFICULTIES	339
TIME & DATES	340
TRANSPORT & DIRECTIONS	342
ACCOMMODATION	343
BANKING & COMMUNICATIONS	344
SIGHTSEEING	344
SHOPPING	345
MEETING PEOPLE	346
MAKING CONVERSATION	347
FEELINGS & OPINIONS	350
FAREWELLS	351
EATING OUT	352
SPECIAL DIETS & ALLERGIES	355
EMERGENCIES & HEALTH	356
ENGLISH–UIGHUR DICTIONARY	357

uighur alphabet				
word-final	word-medial	word-initial	alone	sound
ـا		ئا	ئا	aa
ـە	ـئـ	ئە	ئە	a
ـب	ـبـ	بـ	ب	b
ـپ	ـپـ	پـ	پ	p
ـت	ـتـ	تـ	ت	t
ـج	ـجـ	جـ	ج	j
ـچ	ـچـ	چـ	چ	ch
ـخ	ـخـ	خـ	خ	h
ـد		د	د	d
ـر		ر	ر	r
ـز		ز	ز	z
ـژ		ژ	ژ	z
ـس	ـسـ	سـ	س	s
ـش	ـشـ	شـ	ش	sh
ـغ	ـغـ	غـ	غ	r
ـف	ـفـ	فـ	ف	f
ـق	ـقـ	قـ	ق	k
ـك	ـكـ	كـ	ك	k
ـگ	ـگـ	گـ	گ	g
ـڭ	ـڭـ	ڭـ	ڭ	ng
ـل	ـلـ	لـ	ل	l
ـم	ـمـ	مـ	م	m
ـن	ـنـ	نـ	ن	n
ـە	ـھـ	ھـ	ھ	ee
ـو		ئو	ئو	o
ـۇ		ئۇ	ئۇ	u
ـۆ		ئۆ	ئۆ	v
ـۈ		ئۈ	ئۈ	ü
ـۋ		ۋ	ۋ	v
ـې		ېـ	ې	e
ـى		ىـ	ى	i
ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي	y

about Uighur

The old language of the Central Asian steppe, Uighur (ooy·roor·cha ئۇيغۇرچە) is spoken by more than 10 million people in the oases, bazaars and mosques of China's Xīnjiāng Uighur Autonomous Region. True to its history as a language of the Silk Road, Uighur has absorbed elements of Arabic and Persian and can be heard in pockets of neighbouring Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, Uzbekistan and Russia. Buddhist texts from the 9th century were written in old Uighur script (read from bottom to top) and for much of the following 1000 years Uighur scribes dutifully recorded the history of Central Asia using a modified Arabic script. Since the 1970s some Uighur speakers have used the Roman alphabet, but the modified Arabic script (written from right to left) still predominates in China. Uighur is a Turkic language closely related to Uzbek and similar to modern Turkish. As the guardians of a venerable language, the Muslim Uighurs also enjoy a reputation for longevity, with over 25% of all centenarians in China being Uighur. It's not unusual for Uighur people to invite foreigners into their homes – with a few of the phrases in this chapter you're sure to impress your hosts.

uighur



pronunciation

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	**English sound**	**Symbol**	**English sound**
a	h**a**t	b	**b**ed
aa	f**a**ther	ch	**ch**eat
e	b**e**t	d	**d**og
ee	as the 'ee' in 'sleep', but produced from the throat	f	**f**at
i	h**i**t	g	**g**o
o	g**o**	h	**h**at (pronounced with a puff of air)
ö	as the 'e' in 'her', pronounced with rounded lips	j	**j**oke
oo	t**oo**l	k	**k**ing
u	p**u**t	l	**l**ive
ü	i pronounced with rounded lips	m	**m**an
In this chapter, Uighur pronunciation is given in purple after each phrase. Syllables are separated by a dot, and stressed syllables are indicated with italics. For example: كەچۈرۈڭ ka·chü·*rueng*		n	**n**ot
		ng	si**ng**
		p	**p**et
		r	**r**oom (produced from the throat)
		s	**s**un
		sh	**sh**ut
		t	**t**op
		v	**v**ery
		y	**y**es
		z	**z**oo

essentials

Yes./No.	ھەئە./ياق.	ee·a·*a*/yaak
Please …	مەرھەمەت …	ma·ree·am·*mat* …
Hello.	ياخشىمۇسىز.	yaah·shi·mu·*siz*
Goodbye.	خەير-خوش.	hayr·*hosh*
Thank you.	رەخمەت سىزگە.	rah·*mat* siz·ga
Excuse me. (to get past)	كۆرۈڭ ئۆتۈۋالاي.	ka·chü·*rüng* ö·tü·vaa·*laay*
Excuse me. (to get assistance)	كۆرۈڭ گە قانداق باردۇ؟	ka·chü·*rüng* ga kaan·*daak* baar·i·du
Sorry.	كۆرۈڭ.	ka·chü·*rüng*

language difficulties

Do you speak English?	سىز ئىنگلىزچە بىلەمسىز؟	siz ing·gi·lis·*ka* bi·*lam*·siz
Do you understand?	سىزچۈشەندىڭىزمۇ؟	siz chü·*shan*·di·ngiz·moo
I understand/don't understand.	مەن چۈشەندىم/چۈشەنمىدىم.	man chü·*shan*·dim/chu·*shan*·mi·dim
I speak/don't speak Mandarin.	مەن ئورتاق تىلدا سۆزلىيەلەيمەن/ سۆزلىيەلمەيمەن.	man or·*taak* til·*daa* söz·li·*ya*·lay·man/ söz·li·*yal*·may·man
Do you speak (Uighur)?	سىز (ئۇيغۇرچە) سۆزلىيەلەمسىز؟	siz (ooy·*roor*·cha) söz·li·ya·lam·*siz*
What do you call this in (Uighur)?	بۇنى (ئۇيغۇر تىلىدا) نىمە دەپ ئاتايسىلەر؟	bu·*ni* (ooy·*roor* ti·*li*·daa) ni·*ma* dap aa·taay·*si*·lar
Can we try to speak in (Uighur)?	مەن (ئۇيغۇرچە) سۆزلەپ سىناپ باقسام بولامدۇ؟	man (ooy·roor·*cha*) söz·*lap* si·*naap* baak·saam *bo*·laam·*doo*
Could you please …?	خاپابولماي … قىلىپ بىرەلەمسىز؟	haa·*paa* bol·*maay* … *ki*·lip bi·ra·lam·*siz*
repeat that	يەنەبىر دەڭ	ya·*na* bir da·*nga*
speak more slowly	ئاستىراق سۆزلەڭ	aas·*ti*·raak söz·*lang*

numbers					
0	نۆل	nöl	20	يگىرمە	yi·*gir*·ma
1	بىر	bir	30	ئوتتۇز	ot·*tuz*
2	ئىككى	ik·ki	40	قىرىق	ki·*rik*
3	ئۈچ	üch	50	ئەللىك	al·*lik*
4	تۆت	töt	60	ئاتمىش	at·*mish*
5	بەش	bash	70	يەتمىش	yat·*mish*
6	ئالتە	aal·*ta*	80	سەكسەن	sak·*san*
7	يەتتە	yat·*ta*	90	توقسان	tok·*saan*
8	سەككىز	sak·*kiz*	100	بىر يۈز	bir *yüz*
9	توققۇز	tok·*kuz*	1,000	بىر مىڭ	bir mng
10	ئون	on	1,000,000	بىر مىليۇن	bir mil·*yoon*

time & dates

What time is it?
ھازىر سائەت قانچە بولدى؟ ee·aa·*zir* saa·*at* kan·*cha* bol·*di*

It's (10) o'clock.
سائەت (ئون) بولدى. saa·*at* (on) bol·*di*

Quarter past (10).
(ئون)دىن بىرچارەك ئۆتتى. (on) din bir chaa·*rak* öt·*ti*

Half past (10).
(ئون) يېرىم بولدى. (on) ye·*rim* bol·*di*

Quarter to (11).
(ئونبىر)غا بىر چارەك قالدى. (oon·bir) raa bir kaa·*rak* üt·*ti*

At what time (does it start)?
سائەت قانچىدە (باشلايدۇ)؟ saa·*at* kaan·ki·*da* (baash·*laay*·doo)

(It starts) At 10.
سائەت ئوندا(باشلايدۇ). saa·*at* oon·*daa* (baash·laay·*doo*)

It's (18 October).
(ئونسەككىزىنچى ئاينىڭ ئونسەككىزىنچى كۈنى) بولدى. (o·nin·*chi* aay·*ning* on·sak·*ki*·zin·chi kü·*ni*) bol·*di*

now	ھازىر	ee·aa·*zir*
today	بۈگۈن	bü·*gün*
tonight	بۈگۈن ئاخشام	bü·*gün* aah·*shaam*

this …	بۇگۈن …	bü·*gün* …
afternoon	چۈشتىن كېيىن	chüsh·*tin* ke·*yin*
morning	ئەتتىگەن	a·ti·*gan*
(after breakfast)		
morning	چۈشتىن بۇرۇن	chüsh·*tin* bu·*run*
(before lunch)		

yesterday	تۈنۈگۈن	tü·nü·*gün*
tomorrow	ئەتە	a·*ta*
sunrise	كۈن چىكىش	kün chi·*kish*
sunset	كۈن ئولتۇرۇش	kün ol·tu·*roosh*
spring	باهار	baa·*ee*·*aar*
summer	يازا	yaaz
autumn	كۈز	küz
winter	قىش	kish





Monday	دۈشەنبە	dü·shan·*ba*
Tuesday	سەيشەنبە	say·shan·*ba*
Wednesday	چارشەنبە	chaar·shan·*ba*
Thursday	پەيشەنبە	pay·shan·*ba*
Friday	جۈمە	jü·*ma*
Saturday	شەنبە	shan·*ba*
Sunday	يەكشەنبە	yak·shan·*ba*
January	يانۋار	yaan·*vaar*
February	فېۋرال	fi·vi·*raal*
March	مارت	maart
April	ئاپرىل	aap·*ril*
May	مايى	maay
June	ئىيۇن	i·*yoon*
July	ئىيۇل	i·*yool*
August	ئاۋغۇست	aav·*roost*
September	سىنتەبىر	sin·ta·*bir*
October	ئۆكتەبىر	ök·ta·*bir*
November	نويابىر	no·yaa·*bir*
December	دېكابىر	de·kaa·*bir*

transport & directions

Is this the …	بۇ … (قەشقەر)گە	bu … (kash·*kar*)·ga
to (Kashgar)?	بارامدۇ؟	baa·raam·*du*
boat	كېمە	ki·*ma*
bus	ئاپتوبوس	aap·too·*boos*
train	پويىز	po·*yiz*
Where's a/the …?	… نەدە؟	… na·*da*
bank	بانكا	baan·*kaa*
place to change foreign money	چەتئەل پۇلى ئالماشتۇرىدىغان ئورۇن	chat·*al* poo·*li* aal·maash·too·ri·*di*·raan o·*roon*
post office	پوچتاخانا	*posh*·taa·haa·naa

Is this the road to (Kashgar)?
بۇ (قەشقەر)گە بارىدىغان يولمۇ؟ bo (kash·*kar*)·ga baa·ri·di·*haan* yol·*mo*

Can you show me where it is on the map?
ماڭا بۇ يەرنىڭ خەرىتىدىكى maa·*ngaa* bu *yar*·ning ha·ri·*ti*·di·*ki*
ئورنىنى كۆرسۈتىپ بېرەمسىز؟ or·ni·*ni* kör·si·*tip* bi·ram·*siz*

What's the address?
ئادرىس قەيەر؟ aa·di·*ri*·si ka·*yar*

How far is it?
قانچىلىك يىراق؟ kaan·chi·*lik* yi·*raak*

Can I get there on foot?
ئۇيەرگە پىيادى بارغىلى بولامدۇ؟ u yar·ga pi·*yaa*·da bar·*ri*·li boo·*laam*·du

How do I get there?	قانداق ماڭدۇ؟	kaan·*daak* maa·*ngi*·du
Turn right/left.	ئوڭغا/سولغا قايرىلىپ.	ong·*raa*/sol·*raa* kaay·ri·*lip*
It's straight ahead.	ئۇدۇل ئالدىغا مېڭىپ.	u·*dul* aal·*di*·raa me·*ngip*
It's …	… نېمە	… ning
behind …	… ئارقىدا	… aar·*ki*·daa
in front of …	… ئالدىدا	… aal·*di*·daa
near …	… ئەتراپىدا	… at·raa·*pi*·daa
on the corner	نېمە بولۇڭىدا	ning bu·lu·*ngi*·daa
opposite …	… نېمە قارشى	… ning kaar·*shi*
	تەرىپىدە	ta·ri·*pi*·da
there	ئۇيەر	u·*yar*

accommodation

Where's a guest house/hotel?
قەيەردە مېھمانخانا بار؟ ka·yar·*da* mee·maan·*haa*·naa baar

Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?
ياخشىراق/ئەزانراق yaah·*shi*·raak/*ar*·zaan·raak
ياتمدىغان يەردىن بىرنى yaa·ti·*di*·raan yar·din bir·*ni*
تەۋسىيە قىلىڭ؟ tav·si·*ya* ki·li·*nga*

I'd like to stay at a locally run hotel.
مىنىڭ يەرلىك مېھمانخانىدا mi·*ning* yar·*lik* mee·maan·haa·ni·*daa*
تۇرغۇم بار. toor·*room* baar

I'd like to book a room, please.
مەن ياتاق زاكاس قىلماقچى ئىدىم. man yaa·*taak* zaa·*kaas* kil·maak·*chi* i·*dim*

I have a reservation.
مەن ئالدىن تىزىملىتىپ قويغان. man aal·*din* ti·zim·*li*·*tip* koy·*raan*

Do you have a … room?	… ياتاق بارمۇ؟	… yaa·*taak* baar·*mu*
double (suite)	بىر يۇرۇش	*bir* yü·*rüsh*
single	يالغۇز كىشىلىك	yaal·*rooz* kish·*lik*
twin	قوش كىشىلىك	kosh kish·*lik*

How much is it per night/person?
ھەربىركۈنلۈكى/ئادەمگە ee·*ar* bir kün·li·*ki*/aa·*dam*·*gee*
نەچچە پۇل؟ nach·*cha* pool

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.
مەن (ئۈچ) كۈن ياتماقچى ئىدىم. man (üch) kün *yaat*·maak·chi i·*dim*

Could I have my key, please?
ياتاقنىڭ ئاچقۇچىنى بېرەمسىز؟ yaa·taak·*ning* aach·*ku*·chi·ni *bi*·ram·siz

Can I get an extra (blanket)?
مەن بىرتال (ئەدىيال) ئارتۇق man bir taal (a·*di*·yaal) *aar*·took
ئالسام بولامدۇ؟ aal·*saam* boo·laam·*doo*

The (air conditioning) doesn't work.
(ھاۋا تەڭشىگۈچ)نىڭ (ee·aa·*vaa* tang·shi·güch·*ning*)
چاتىقى بار كەن. *chaa*·ti·ki baar·*kan*

What time is checkout?
سائەت قانچىدە ياتاق قايتۇرىدۇ؟ saa·*at* kaan·*chi*·da yaa·*taak* kaay·too·ri·*du*

Could I have my …, please?	مەن ئۆزەمنىڭكى … نى ئېلىۋالسام بولامدۇ؟	man ö·züm·ning·*ki* … ni e·*li*·vaal·saam bo·laam·*doo*
deposit	زاكالەت پۇلى	zaa·*kaa*·lat pu·*li*
passport	پاسپورت	paas·*port*

banking & communications

Where's a/an …?	… نەدە؟	… na·*da*
ATM	ئاپتۇماتىك پۇل ئېلىش ماشىنىسى	aap·to·maa·*tik* pool e·*lish* maa·*shi*·ni·si
public phone	ئاممىۋى تېلېفون	aam·*mi*·vi te·li·*foon*

What's your phone number?
تېلېفون نۇمۇرىڭىز قانچە؟ te·li·*foon* nu·mu·ri·*ngiz* kaan·*cha*

The number is …
نۇمۇرى بولسا … nu·mu·*ri bol*·saa …

Where's the local internet cafe?
يېقىن ئەتراپىتا تورخانا بارمۇ؟ yi·*kin* at·raap·*taa* tor·haa·*naa* baar·*mu*

I'd like to …	مەن … قىلاي دېگەن	man … *ki*·laay *di*·gan
get internet access	تورغا چىقىش	tor·*raa chi*·kish
use a printer/scanner	پېرىنتېر/سكەنىر	pi·rin·*tir*/si·*ka*·nir

sightseeing

I'd like to see some local sights.
مەن يەرلىك مەنزىرىنى كۆرمەي دېگەن. man yar·*lik* man·zir·*ni kü*·ray *de*·gan

I'd like to see …
مەن … كۆرمەي دېگەن. man … *kü*·ray *de*·gan

What's that?
ئۇ نېمە؟ u *ni*·ma

Can I take a photo?
سۈرەتكە تارتىۋالسام بولامدۇ؟ sü·*rat*·ka taar·*ti*·vaal·saam bo·laam·*doo*

I'd like to go somewhere off the beaten track.
مېنىڭ بۇ يەرنىڭ mi·*ning* bu yar·*ning*
يەرلىك مەنزىرسىنى كۆرەي بار. yar·*lik* man·zir·*si*·ni *kör*·güm baar

How long is the tour?

بۇ يەرنى قانچىلىك ۋاقىتتا سايا‌ھەت قىلىپ بولغىلى بولىدۇ؟	bu yar·*ni* kaan·chi·*lik* vaa·*kit*·taa saa·*yaa*·ee·at ki·*lip* bol·*ri*·li bo·*li*·doo

sightseeing

Etgal Mosque	ھېيتكار جەمە مەسچىتى	eeyt·*kaar* ja·*ma* mas·*chi*·ti
Heaven Pool	بۇغدا كۆلى	boor·*daa* kü·*li*
Kanasi Lake	قاناس كۆلى	kaa·*naas* kü·*li*
Lake Sayram	سايرام كۆلى	say·*raam* kü·*li*
Mahmud's Tomb	مەخمۇت قەشقەرى قەبرىسى	mah·*moot* kash·*ki*·ri kab·*ri*·si
Thousand-Buddha Cave	مىڭ ئۆي	ming öy
Xiangfei Tomb	ئىپپارخان قەبرىسى	i·paar·*haan* kab·*ri*·si

shopping

Where's a …?	… نەدە؟	… na·*da*
camera shop	سۈرەتخانا	sü·*rat*·haa·naa
market	بازار	baa·*zaar*
souvenir shop	خاتىرە بۇيۇملىرى ماگزىنى	haa·*ti*·ra bo·yoom·*li*·ri maag·zi·ni
supermarket	تۆلۈك ماللار ماگزىنى	tür·*lük* maal·*laar* maag·zi·ni

I'd like to buy …

مەنىڭ … نى سېتىۋالغۇم بار. mi·*ning* … ni se·*ti*·vaal·room baar

Can I look at it?

كۆرۈپ باقسام بولامدۇ؟ kö·*rüp* baak·*saam* bo·laam·*doo*

How much is it?

قانچە پۇل؟ kaan·*cha* pool

Please write down the price.

باھاسىنى خاتىرلەپ قويۇڭ. baa·*ee*·aa·si·ni haa·*tir*·lap *ko*·yong

That's too expensive.

بەك قىممەتكەن. bak *kim*·mat·kan

I'll give you (five yuan).

سىزگە (بەش يۈەن) بېرەي. siz·*ga* (bash *yu*·an) *bi*·ray

Do you accept credit cards?

بۇيەردە ئىناۋەتلىك كارتوچكا ئىشلىتىشكە بولامدۇ؟ — bu yar·*da* i·*naa*·vat·*lik* kaar·tuch·*kaa* ish·li·tish·*ka* boo·laam·*doo*

There's a mistake in the bill.

ھىساۋات تالۇنىدا مەسلە بار ئىكەن. — eey·saa·vaat taa·*lu*·ni·*daa* *ma*·si·*la* baar i·*kan*

Where can I buy locally produced goods/souvenirs?

نەدىن يەرلىك مەھسۇلاتلىرىنى سېتىۋالغىلى بولىدۇ؟ — na·*din* yar·*lik* ma·ee·*soo*·laat·laar·*ni* se·*ti*·vaal·*ri*·li boo·li·*doo*

What's this made from?

بۇ نەدە ياسالغان؟ — bu na·*da* yaa·saal·*raan*

less	ئاز	aaz
enough	يېتەرلىك	yi·tar·*lik*
more	كۆپ	köp
bigger	چوڭراق	chong·*raak*
smaller	كىچىكرەك	ki·*chik*·rak

meeting people

Hello.	ئەسسالامۇ ئەلەيكۇم./ زەمزەمشخاي.	as·saa·laa·*mu* a·lay·*kom*/ yaah·shi·mu·*siz*
Good morning.	خەيرلىك سەھەر.	hayr·*lik* sa·*ee*·ar
Good afternoon.	چۈشتىن كېيىنلىكىڭىز خەيرلىك بولسۇن.	*chüsh*·tin ke·*yin*·li·ki·ngiz *hayr*·lik *bol*·soon
Good evening.	كەچلىكىڭىز خەيرلىك بولسۇن.	kach·*li*·ki·ngiz *hayr*·lik *bol*·soon
Goodbye.	خەير-خوش.	hayr·*hosh*
Good night.	خەيرلىك كەچ.	hayr·*lik* kach
Mr	ئەپەندىم	a·*pan*·dim
Mrs	خانىم	haa·*nim*
Ms/Miss	خېنىم	he·*nim*
How are you?	قانداق ئەھۋالىڭىز؟	kaan·*daak* a·ee·vaa·*li*·ngiz
Fine, and you?	ياخشى، سىزچۇ؟	yaah·*shi* siz·*chu*
What's your name?	سىزنىڭ ئىسمىڭىز نىمە؟	siz·*ning* is·mi·*ngiz* ni·*ma*
My name is …	مېنىڭ ئىسمىم …	mi·*ning* is·*mim* …
Pleased to meet you.	دىدار غەنىمەت.	di·*daar* ra·ni·*mat*

This is my…	بۇ مىنىڭ …	bu me·*ning* …
brother (older)	ئۇكا	u·*kaam*
brother (younger)	ئىنىم	i·*nim*
child	بالام	baa·*laam*
daughter	قىزىم	ki·*zim*
father	دادام/ئاتام	daa·*daam*/aa·*taam*
friend	دوستۇم	dos·*toom*
husband	ئەر	ar
mother	ئاپام/ئانام	aa·*paam*/aa·*naam*
partner (intimate)	لايىقىم	laa·*yi*·kim
sister (older)	ئاچام	aa·*cham*
sister (younger)	سىڭلىم	sing·*lim*
son	ئوغلۇم	or·*lum*
wife	ئايالىم	aa·yaa·*lim*

making conversation

Do you live here?	سىز بۇ يەردە تۇرامسىز؟	siz bu yar·*da* too·raam·*siz*
Where are you going?	نەگە بارىسىز؟	na·*ga* baa·*ri*·siz
Do you like it here?	بۇ يەرنى ياقتۇردىڭىزمۇ؟	bu yar·*ni* yaak·toor·di·ngiz·*mu*
I love it here.	بۇ يەرنى بەك ياقتۇردۇم.	bu yar·*ni* bak yaak·toor·*doom*
Have you eaten?	تاماق يىدىڭىزمۇ؟	taa·*maak* yi·di·ngiz·*mu*
Are you here on holidays?	بۇ يەرگە ساياھەت قىلغىلى كەلگەنمۇ؟	bu yar·*ga* saa·yaa·*ee*·at kil·ri·*li* kal·gan·*mu*
I'm here …	مەن بۇ يەرگە … كەلگەن.	man bu yar·*ga* … kal·*gan*
for a holiday	ساياھەت قىلىش	saa·*yaa*·ee·at ki·*lish*
on business	كوماندۇروۋېكىغا چىقىش	ko·maan·*do*·roop·*ki*·raa chi·*kish*
to study	ئوقۇش	o·*koosh*
How long are you here for?	سىز بۇيەردە قانچىلىك تۇرىسىز؟	siz·*bu* yar·*da* kaan·chi·*lik* too·*ri*·siz
I'm here for (four) weeks.	مەن (تۆت) ھەپتە تۇرىمەن.	man (töt) ee·ap·*ta* too·*ri*·man
Can I take a photo (of you)?	مەن (سىزنى) سۈرەتكە تارتىۋالسام بولامدۇ؟	man (siz·*ni*) sü·rat·*ka* taar·*ti*·vaal·saam boo·laam·*doo*

What language/dialect do you speak at home?

سىلەر يۇرتوڭلاردا قايسى تىلدا سۆزلىشىسىلەر؟ — si·*lar* yoor·toong·laar·*daa* kaay·*si* til·daa söz·li·shi·si·*lar*

Do most of the people here speak (Uighur)?

بۇيەردە كۆپۈنچە ئادەم (ئۇيغۇرچە) سۆزلىشەمدۇ؟ — bu yar·*da* kö·pün·*cha* aa·*dam* (ooy·rur·*cha*) söz·li·sham·*doo*

I'd like to learn some (Uighur).

مەنىڭ (ئۇيغۇرتىلى)نى ئۆگەنگىم بار. — mi·*ning* (ooy·*roor* ti·*li*)·ni ü·gan·*gim* baar

Would you like me to teach you some English?

ماڭا ئازراق ئىنگلىزچە ئۆگۈتۈپ قويۇشنى خالامسىز؟ — maa·*ngaa* aaz·*raak* ing·gi·lis·*cha* ü·gü·*tüp* ko·yoosh·*ni* haa·laam·*siz*

What's this called?

بۇنى نېمە دەيدۇ؟ — bu·*ni* ni·*ma* day·*doo*

local talk

Great!	قالتىس!	kaal·*tis*
Hey!	قاناق ئەھۋال.	kaan·*daak* aee·*vaal*
It's OK.	خېلى ياخشى.	he·*li* yaah·*shi*
Just a minute.	بىردەم ساقلاپ تۇرۇڭ.	bir·*dam* saak·*laap* too·*roong*
Just joking.	چاقچاق قىلىپ قويدۇم.	chaak·*chaak* ki·*lip* koy·*doom*
Maybe.	بەلكىم.	bal·*kim*
No problem.	ھېچقىسى يوق.	*eech*·ki·si yook
No way!	مۇمكىن ئەمەس.	moom·*kin* a·*mas*
Sure, whatever.	بولىدۇ،ماقۇل.	bo·li·doo maa·*kol*
That's enough!	بولدى،بېتەرلىك!	bol·*di* yi·tar·*lik*

Where are you from? سىز نەدىن كەلدىڭىز؟ — siz na·*din* kal·di·*ngiz*

I'm from … مەن … دىن كەلدىم. — man … din kal·*dim*

Australia	ئاۋستىرالىيە	aa·vis·*ti*·raa·*li*·ya
Canada	كانادا	kaa·*naa*·daa
England	ئەنگلىيە	an·gi·*li*·ya
New Zealand	يېڭى زېلاندىيە	ye·*ngi* zin·laan·di·*ya*
the USA	ئامېرىكا	aa·mri·*kaa*

What's your occupation? سىز نېمە ئىش بىلەن شوغۇللىنىسىز؟ — siz ni·*ma* ish bi·*lan* shoo·roon·li·*ni*·siz

I'm a/an …	مـنـىڭ كەسپىم …	mi·*ning* kas·*pim* …
businessperson	سودىگەر	soo·*di*·gar
office worker	ئىشخانا خىزمەت خادىمى	ish·*haa*·naa hiz·*mat* haa·di·*mi*
tradesperson	ئىشچى	ish·*chi*

How old …?	… قانچە ياشقاكىردىڭىز؟	… kaan·*cha* yaash·*kaa* kir·*di*·ngiz
are you	سىز/سەن	siz/san **pol/inf**
is your daughter	قىزىڭىز	ki·*zi*·ngiz
is your son	ئوغلىڭىز	or·*li*·ngiz

I'm … years old.
مەن … ياشقا كىردىم. man … yaash·*kaa* kir·*dim*

He/She is … years old.
ئۇ … ياشقا كىردى. oo … yaash·*kaa* kir·*di*

Too old!
بەك قېرى ئىكەن! bak ke·*ri* i·*kan*

I'm younger than I look.
مەن كىچىك كۆرۈنىمەن. man ki·*chik* kü·ru·ni·*man*

Are you married?
سىز توي قىلدىڭىز مۇ؟ siz toy kil·di·ngiz·*mu*

Do you have a family of your own?
سىز ياتلىق بولدىڭىزمۇ؟ siz yaat·*lik* bol·di·ngiz·*mu*

I live with someone.
مېنىڭ جۈپتىم بار. mi·*ning* jüp·*tim* baar

I'm …	مەن …	man …
single	بويتاق	boy·*taak*
married	توي قىلدىم	toy kil·*dim*

Do you like …?	سىز … نى ياخشى كۆرەمسىز؟	siz … ni yaah·*shi* kü·*ram*·siz
I like/don't like …	مەن … نى ياخشى كۆرىمەن/كۆرمەيمەن.	man … ni yaah·*shi* kü·*ri*·man/kör·may·*man*
art	سەنئەت	san·*at*
film	كىنو كۆرۈش	ki·*no* kü·*rüsh*
music	مۇزىكا ئاڭلاش	mu·zi·*kaa* aang·*laash*
reading	كىتاپ كۆرۈش	ki·*taap* kö·*rüsh*
sport	تەنتەربىيە	tan·tar·*bi*·ya

feelings & opinions

Are you …?	سىز … بولدىڭىزمۇ؟	siz … bol·di·ngiz·*mu*
cold	سوغۇق	so·*rook*
hot	ئىسسىق	is·*sik*
hungry	ئاچ	aach
thirsty	ئۇسساش	oos·*saash*
tired	ھېرىش	ee·*rish*
I feel …	مەن … ھېس قىلىمدىم.	man … ees kil·*dim*
I don't feel …	مەن … ھېس قىلمىمدىم.	man … ees kil·mi·*dim*
Do you feel …?	سىز … بولىۋاتامسىز؟	siz … bo·li·vaa·*taam*·siz
happy	خۇشال بولۇش	hoo·*shaal* bo·*loosh*
sad	خاپا بولۇش	haa·*paa* bo·*loosh*
worried	ئەنسىرەش	an·si·*rash*
What do you think of it?	سىزنىڭچە قانداقراق؟	siz·ning·*cha* kaan·daak·*raak*
It's …	ئۇ…	u …
awful	بەك ناچار	bak naa·*chaar*
beautiful	بەك گۈزەل	bak gü·*zal*
boring	بەك زېرىكىشلىك	bak ze·*ri*·kish·*lik*
great	بەك ياخشى	bak yaah·*shi*
interesting	بەك مەنىلىك	bak ma·ni·*lik*
OK	بوپ قالدۇ	bop kaa·li·*doo*
strange	غەلىتە	ra·*li*·ta

mixed emotions

a little	ئازراق	aaz·*raak*
very	بەك	bak
extremely	ئىنتايىن	in·*taa*·yin

I'm a little sad.
مەن ئازراق خاپا بولۇپ قالدىم. man aaz·*raak* haa·*paa* bo·*loop* kaal·*dim*

I'm very surprised.
مەن بەك ھەيران قالدىم. man bak ee·ay·*raan* kaal·*dim*

I'm extremely happy.
مەن ناھايىتى خۇشال. man naa·ee·aa·*ti* hoo·*shaal*

I didn't mean to do anything wrong.

مىنىڭ خاتا ئىش قىلغۇم يوق. mi·*ning* haa·*taa* ish kil·*room* yok

Is this a local custom?

بۇ يەرلىك ئۆرۈپ-ئادەت مۇ؟ bu yar·*lik* ö·*rüp* aa·dat·*mu*



farewells

Tomorrow I'm leaving.

مەن ئەتە ماڭىمەن. man a·*ta* maa·ngi·*man*

If you come to (Scotland) you can stay with me.

پۈرسەت بولۇپ قالسا poor·*sat* bo·*loop* kaal·*saa*

(شوتلاندىيە)گە بارسىڭىز (shot·laan·*di*·ya) ga baar·*si*·ngiz

مىنى ئىزدەڭ. me·*ni* iz·*dang*

Keep in touch!

ئالاقىلىشىپ تۇرايلى. aa·laa·ki·li·*ship* tu·raay·*li*

It's been great meeting you.

سىز بىلەن تونۇشقانلىقىمدىن siz bi·*lan* to·*nush*·kan·*li*·kim·*din*

ئىنتايىن خۇشال. in·*taa*·yin hoo·shaal·*man*

Here's my address.

ئادرىسىمنى سىزگەيبزىپ دەپ بېرەي. aa·dir·sim·*ni* siz·*ga* dap bi·*ray*

What's your email?

سىزنىڭ تور ئادرىسىڭىز چۇ؟ siz ning tor aa·dir·*si*·ngiz chu

well-wishing

Bon voyage!	سەپىرىڭىزگە	sa·pi·ri·ngiz·*ga*
	ئاقيول بولسۇن!	aak·*yol* bol·*soon*
Congratulations!	مۇبارەك بولسۇن!	mu·*baa*·rak bool·*soon*
Good luck!	سىزگە ئامەت تىلەيمەن!	sya·*ga* aa·*mat* ti·lay·*man*
Happy birthday!	تۇغۇلغان كۈنىڭىزگە	too·rool·*raan* kü·ni·ngiz·*ga*
	مۇبارەك بولسۇن!	moo·baa·*rak* bol·*soon*
Happy New Year!	يېڭى يىلىڭىزغا	*ye*·ngi yi·li·ngiz·*raa*
	مۇبارەك بولسۇن!	moo·*baa*·rak bol·*soon*

eating out

Where would you go for (a) …?	… ئۇچۇن نەگە بېرىش كېرەك؟	… u·*chun* na·*ga* be·*rish* ki·*rak*
banquet	مۇراسىم ئۆتكۈزۈش	mu·raa·*sim* öt·kü·*züsh*
celebration	تەبرىكلەش پائالىيىتى ئۆتكۈزۈش	tab·*rik*·lash paa·aa·li·yi·*ti* öt·kü·*züsh*
cheap meal	ئەرزانئاش يىمەكلىكەرنى يېيىش	ar·zaan·*rak* yi·mak·lik·lar·*ni* yi·*yish*
local specialities	يەرلىك يىمەكلىكلەر	yar·*lik* yi·mak·lik·*lar*
yum cha	چاي ئىچىش	chaay i·*chish*
Can you recommend a …?	ماڭا بىرەر … ئاق تىن بېرىنى تەۋسىيە قىلامسىز؟	maa·*ngaa* bi·*rar*… raak tin bir·*ni* tav·si·*ya* ki·laam·*siz*
bar	قاۋاقخانا	kaa·vaak·haa·*naa*
cafe	قەھۋەخانا	ka·ee·va·haa·*naa*
noodle house	ئۈگرەخانا	üg·ra·haa·*naa*
dish	تەخسە	tah·*sa*
restaurant	ئاشخانا	aash·ha·*naa*
snack shop	ئۇششاق يىمەكلىكلەر ماگزىنى	oosh·*shaak* yi·mak·*lik*·lar maag·*zi*·ni
(wonton) stall	چۆچۈرەخانا	chö·kü·ra·haa·*naa*
street vendor	كوچىدىكى ئۇششاق يىمەكلىكلەر	ko·chi·di·*ki* oosh·*shaak* yi·mak·lik·*lar*
teahouse	چايخانا	chaay·haa·*naa*
I'd like a/the …	مەن … قىلاي دېگەن.	man … ki·*laay* di·*gan*
table for (five)	(بەش) كىشىلىك ئۈستەل	(bash) kish·*lik* üs·*tal*
bill	ھېسابئات تالۇنى	hi·*saa*·vaat taa·loo·*ni*
drink list	ئىچىملىك تىزىملىكى	i·chim·*lik* ti·zim·*li*·ki
local speciality	يەرلىك ئالاھىدە قورۇما	yar·*lik* aa·laa·eey·*da* ko·ru·*maa*
menu	قورۇما تىزىملىكى	ko·ru·*maa* ti·zim·*li*·ki
(non)smoking table	تاماكا چېكىش (مەنئى قىلىنغان) ئۈستەل	taa·maa·*ka* chi·*kish* (*man*·i ki·lin·*raan*) üs·*tal*

Are you still serving food?
سلەر يەنە سودا قىلامسىلەر؟ si·*lar* ya·*na* so·*daa* ki·laam·*si*·lar

What would you recommend?
قانداق قورومنى تەۋسىيە قىلىسىز؟ kaan·*daak* ko·rum·*ni* tav·si·*ya* ki·*li*·siz

What do you normally eat for breakfast?
ئەتتىگەنلىك تاماقتا at·ti·gan·*lik* taa·maak·*taa*
ئادەتتە نىمە يەيدۇ؟ aa·dat·*ta ni*·ma yay·*doo*

What's that called?
ئۇنى نىمە دەيدۇ؟ oo·ni ni·*ma* day·*doo*

What's in that dish?
بۇ قورۇمىنىڭ خۇرۇچلىرى نىمە؟ bu ko·ro·mi·*ning* hu·ruch·*li*·ri ni·*ma*

I'll have that.
ماڭا بىر كىشىلىك بىرىڭ. maa·*ngaa* bir kish·*lik* be·*ring*

I'd like it with …	… نى كۆپرەك سېلىڭ.	… ni köp·*rak* se·*ling*
I'd like it without …	… بۇنى ئالاشتۇرماي.	… bu·*ni* aar·laash·toor·*maay*
chilli	قىزىل مۇچ	ki·*zil* mooch
garlic	سامساق	saam·*saak*
MSG	ئىسپىرت	is·*pirt*
nuts	مېغىز	me·*riz*
oil	مای	maay

I'd like …, please.	ماڭا … نى.	maa·*ngaa* … ni
one slice	بىر پارچە	bir paar·*cha*
a piece	بىر كىشىلىك	bir kish·*lik*
that one	ئاشۇ شۇ	aa·*shoo* shoo
two	ئىككى	ik·*ki*

This dish is …	بۇ … نىڭ قورىمىسى.	bu … ning ko·ru·*mi*·si
(too) spicy	(بەك) ئاچچىق	(bak) aach·*chik*
superb	بەك ياخشى	bak yaah·*shi*

I love this dish.
بۇ قورۇما شۇنداق مەزىلىك بوپتۇ. bu ko·ru·*maa* shoon·*daak* mi·*zi*·lik bop·*too*

I love the local cuisine.
بۇ يەرنىڭ قورۇملىرى شۇنداق ئوخشاپتۇ. bu yar·*ning* ko·ru·mi·li·*ri* shoon·*daak* oh·shaap·*too*

That was delicious!
شۇنداق يېمىشلىك بوپتۇ. shoon·*daak* yi·*yish*·lik bop·*too*

I'm full.
مەن توپدۇم. man toy·*doom*

breakfast	ئەتتىگەنلىك تاماق	a·ti·gan·*lik* taa·*maak*
lunch	چۈشلۈك تاماق	chüsh·*lük* taa·*maak*
dinner	كەچلىك تاماق	kach·*lik* taa·*maak*
drink (alcoholic)	ھاراق	ee·aa·*raak*
drink (nonalcoholic)	ئىچىملىكلەر	i·chim·*lik*·lar
… water	سۇ …	… soo
boiled	قاينىتىلغان	kaay·*naak*
cold	سوۋۇتۇلغان	soo·voo·tool·*raan*
sparkling mineral	مىنېرالنى	min·ral·*ni*
still mineral	بۇلاق	bu·*laak*
(cup of) coffee …	(بىر ئىستاكان) قەھۋە …	(bir is·taa·*kaan*) kaee·*va* …
(cup of) tea …	(بىر پىيالا) چاي …	(bir pi·yaa·*la*) chaay …
with milk	سۈت قوشقان	süt kosh·*kaan*
without sugar	شەكەر قوشمىغان	shi·*kar* kosh·*mi*·raan
fresh drinking yoghurt	قېتىق	ke·*tik*
(orange) juice	ئەپلىسىن (سۈيى)	ap·*li*·sin (sü·*yi*)
soft drink	گازسۈيى	gaaz sü·*yi*
black tea	قىزىل چاي	ki·*zil* chaay
chrysanthemum tea	جۈخاگۈل چېيى	jo·ee·aa·*gül* che·*yi*
green tea	كۆك چاي	kök chaay
jasmine tea	گۈل چېيى	gül che·*yi*
oolong tea	ۋۇلۇڭ چېيى	vu·*long* che·*yi*
a … of beer	بىر … پىۋا	bir … pi·*va*
glass	رۇمكا	rum·*kaa*
large bottle	چوڭ بوتۇلكا	chong bo·tool·*kaa*
small bottle	كىچىك بوتۇلكا	ki·*chik* bo·tool·*kaa*
a shot of (whisky)	بىر رومكا (ۋىسكى)	bir rum·*kaa* (vis·*ki*)
a bottle/glass of	بىر بوتۇلكا/رۇمكا	bir bo·tool·*kaa*/rum·*kaa*
… wine	… ئۈزۈم ھارىقى.	… ü·*züm* ee·aa·*ri*·ki
What are you drinking?		
	نىمە ئىچكىنىڭىز بار؟	ni·*ma* ich·*ki*·ngiz baar
I'll buy you one.		
	مەن مېھمان قىلىمەن.	man mee·*maan* ki·*li*·man

What would you like?

نىمىنى خالايسىز؟ — ne·mi·*ni* haa·*laay*·siz

Cheers!

خوشەھ! — ho·*sha* ee

This is hitting the spot.

تەمى تازا ياختى! — ta·*mi* taa·*zaa* yaah·*ti*

I think I've had one too many.

كۆپ ئىچىپ قويغاندەك — köp i·*chip* koy·raan·*dak*

قىلىمەن. — ki·*li*·man

I'm feeling drunk.

مەن ئازراق مەس بۇلۇپ — man aaz·*raak* mas bo·*loop*

قالدىم. — kaal·*dim*

street eats

cold clear bean-flour noodles	لەڭپۇڭ	lang·*poong*
corn on the cob	كۆكباش قوڭاق	kök·*baash* ku·*naak*
dumpling (boiled)	بەشىرە	ban·*shi*·ra
egg pancake	پوشلكال	posh·*kaal*
fried stuffed (meat) bun	سامسا	saam·*saa*
hand pilaf	پولو	po·*lo*
pork pie (large)	گۆشنان	gösh naan
pork pie (small)	قىيمىلىق پىرەنىك	key·*mi*·lik pi·ra·*nik*
pulled noodles	ئۆي لەغمىنى	öy lar·*mi*·ni
shish kebab	كاۋاپ	kaa·*vaap*
stuffed naan bread	نان	naan
wonton soup	چۆچۈرە	chö·chü·*ra*

special diets & allergies

Do you have vegetarian food?

كۆكتاتلىق يېمەكلىكلەر بارمۇ؟ — kök·taat·*lik* yi·mak·lik·*lar* baar·*mu*

Could you prepare a meal without …?

… نى ئارلاشتۇرماي — … ni aar·laash·toor·*maay*

بىر قورۇما قورىسا بوپتىكەن؟ — bir ko·ru·*maa* ko·*ri*·sa bop·*ti*·kan

I'm allergic to …	ماڭا ... رىئاكسىيە قىلىدۇ.	maa·*ngaa* … ri·*aak*·si·ya ki·li·*doo*
dairy produce	سۈتلۈك مەھسۇلاتلار	süt·*lük* mah·*soo*·laat·laar
eggs	تۇخۇم	tu·*hoom*
meat	گۆش	gösh
nuts	مېغىز	me·*riz*
seafood	دېڭىز مەھسۇلاتلىرى	de·*ngiz* mah·*soo*·laat·li·ri





emergencies & health

Help!	قۇتقۇزۇڭلار!	kut·ku·zung·*laar*
Go away!	يوقال!	yo·*kaal*
Fire!	ئوت كەتتى!	ot kat·*ti*
Watch out!	ئېھتىيات قىلىڭ!	ee·ti·*yaat* ki·*ling*

Could you please help?
ماڭا ياردەم قىلالامسىز؟ maa·*ngaa* yaar·*dam* ki·*laa*·laam·siz

Can I use your phone?
تېلىفۇنىڭىزنى ئىشلىتىپ تۇرسام بولامدۇ؟ te·*li*·fu·ni·ngiz·*ni* ish·li·*tip* toor·*sam* bo·laam·*doo*

I'm lost.
مەن ئېزىپ قالدىم. man e·*zip* kaal·*dim*

Where are the toilets?
تازلىق ئۆيى قەيەردە؟ taz·*lik* ü·*yi* ka·yar·*da*

Where's the police station?
ساقچىخانا قەيەردە؟ sak·chi·haa·*naa* ka·yar·*da*

Where's the nearest …?	ئەڭ يېقىن … قەيەردە؟	ang ye·*kin*… ka·yar·*da*
dentist	چىش دوختۇرى	chish doh·too·*ri*
doctor	دوختۇر	doh·*toor*
hospital	دوختۇرخانا	doh·toor·*haa*·naa
pharmacist	دورىخانا	do·ri·haa·*naa*

english–uighur dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

A

accident (mishap) كۆتۈلمىگەن بەختسىزلىك
kü-*tül*-mi-gan ba-*hit*-siz-lik

accommodation قۇنالغۇ koo-*naal*-ru

adaptor ماسلاشتۇرغۇچى maas-*laash*-koo-chi

address n لىكسىيە سۆزلەشۈ lik-*si*-ya süz-*lash*

after دىن كېيىن din *ki*-yin

air conditioning ھاۋا تەڭشىگۈچ
ee-aa-*vaa* tang-shi-*güch*

airplane ئايروپىلان aay-roo-pi-*laan*

airport ئايدۇرۇم aay-*doo*-room

alcohol ئىسپىرت is-*pirt*

all ھەممىسى ee-am-*mi*-si

allergy زىيان قىلىش zi-*yaan ki*-lish

ambulance جىددى قۇتقۇزۇش ماشىنىسى
jid-*di* koot-*koo*-zoosh maa-*shi*-ni-si

and بىلەن bi-*lan*

ankle ھوشۇق hoo-*shouk*

antibiotics ئانتى بىئوكتىپ aan-*ti* bi-*ok*-tip

arm بىلەك bi-*lak*

ATM ئايتوماتىك پۇل ئېلىش ماشىنىسى
aap-to-maa-*tik* pool e-*lish* maa-*shi*-ni-si

B

baby بوۋاق bo-*vak*

back (of body) دۈمبە düm-*ba*

backpack يۈك-تاق yük taak

bad ئەسكى as-*ki*

bag سومكا som-*kaa*

baggage سەيياھ لازىمەتلىكلىرى
sa-*par* laa-zi-mat-lik-*li*-ri

bank بانكا baan-*kaa*

bar قاۋاقخانا *kaa*-vaak-haa-*naa*

bathroom مۇنچا moon-*chaa*

battery باتارىيە baa-*taa*-ri-ya

beautiful چىرايلىق *chi*-raay-lik

bed كارۋات *kaar*-vaat

beer پىۋا pi-*va*

before بۇرۇن boo-*roon*

behind كەينىدە *kay*-ni-da

bicycle ۋەلىسىپىت val-si-*pit*

big چوڭ chong

bill تالۇن taa-*loon*

blanket ئەدىيال ad-*yaal*

blood group قان تىپى kaan ti-*pi*

boat كېمە ki-*ma*

bottle بوتۇلكا bo-tool-*kaa*

boy ئوغۇل بالا o-*rool* baa-*laa*

brakes (car) توزمۇش toor-*mooz*

breakfast ئەتتىگەنلىك تاماق at-*ti*-gan-lik taa-*maak*

broken (out of order) تەرتىپسىز tar-tip-*siz*

bus ئاپتوبۇس aap-too-*boos*

business سودا ساھەسى so-*daa* saa-ha-*si*

buy v سېتىۋېلىش *se*-ti-ve-lish

C

camera ئاپپارات aa-paa-*raat*

cancel ئەمەلدىن قالدۇرۇش a-mal-*din* kaal-doo-*roosh*

car كىچىك ماشىنا ki-*chik* maa-*shi*-naa

cash n نەق پۇل nak *pool*

cash (a cheque) v پۇل چىكى pool chi-*ki*

cell phone يان تېلىفۇن *yaan* te-li-*foon*

centre n مەركەز mar-*kaz*

change (money) v پۇل ئالماشتۇرۇش
pool aal-maash-too-*roosh*

cheap ئەرزان ar-*zaan*

check (bill) تالۇن taa-*loon*

check-in n يوقلۇمىغا ئۆتۈش yok-loo-mi-*raa* ö-*tüsh*

chest (body) مەيدە may-*da*

children بالىلار baa-li-*laar*

cigarette تاماكا taa-maa-*kaa*

city شەھەر sha-*har*

clean a پاكىز paa-*kiz*

closed تاقاق taa-*kaak*

cold a سوغۇق so-*rook*

come كېلىش ki-*lish*

computer كومپيۇتېر kom-poo-*yo-tir*

contact lenses مىكرو ئەينەك *mik*-ro ay-*nak*

cook v تاماق ئىتىش taa-*maak* i-*tish*

cost n چىقىم chi-*kim*

credit card ئىناۋەتلىك كارتوچكىسى
i-naa-*vat*-lik kaar-*toch*-ki-si

currency exchange پۇل ئالماشتۇرۇش
pool aal-*maash*-too-*roosh*

customs (immigration) چېتئەللىك كۆچمەنلەر
chat-al-*lik köch*-man-lar

D

dangerous خەتەرلىك ha-*tar*-lik
date (time) چىسلا chis-*laa*
day كۈن kün
delay v كېچىكتۈرۈش ki-chik-tü-*rüsh*
dentist چىش دوختۇرى chish doh-*too*-ri
depart ئايرىلىش aay-ri-*lish*
diaper زاكا zaa-*kaa*
dinner كەچلىك تاماق kach-*lik* taa-*maak*
direct a بىۋاسىتە bi-vaas-*ta*
dirty مەينەت may-*nat*
disabled مېيىپ mi-*yip*
discount v ئىتتىبار بېرىش i-ti-*baar* bi-*rish*
doctor دوختۇر doh-*toor*
double room قوش كىشىلىك ياتاق kosh kish-*lik* yaa-*taak*
drink n ئىچىملىك i-chim-*lik*
drive v ھەيدەش hay-*dash*
driving licence شوپۇرلۇق پراۋىسى sho-poor-look praa-*vi*-si
drug (illicit) زەھەرلىك چېكىملىك za-har-*lik* chi-*kim*-lik

E

ear قۇلاق koo-*laak*
east شەرق shark
eat يېمەك yi-*yish*
economy class ئادەتتىكى ئورۇن aa-*dat*-ti-*ki* o-*roon*
electricity توك tok
elevator لىفت li-*fit*
email ئىلخەت il-*hat*
embassy دۆلەت كونسۇلخانىسى dö-*lat* kon-sul-haa-ni-*si*
emergency جەددى ئەھۋال jid-*di* ah-*vaal*
English (language) ئىنگلىزچە تىلى ing-*gi*-liz *ti*-li
evening كەچ kach
exit n چىقىش ئېغىزى chi-*kish* e-*ri*-zi
expensive قىممەت kim-*mat*
eye كۆز köz

F

far يىراق yi-*raak*
fast تېز tiz
father دادا/ئاتا daa-*daa*/aa-*taa*
film (camera) نىگاتىپ ni-gaa-*tip*
finger بارماق baar-*maak*
first-aid kit قىددى قۇتقۇزۇش سادۇقى jid-*di* koot-*koo*-zoosh saan-*doo*-ki
first class بىرىنچى دەرىجىلىك bi-rin-*chi* da-ri-ji-*lik*
fish n بېلىق be-*lik*
food يېمەكلىك yi-mak-*lik*
foot پۇت poot
free (of charge) ھەقسىز hee-ak-*siz*
friend دوست dost
fruit مېۋە mi-*va*
full تويۇش to-*yoosh*

G

gift سوۋغات soo-*raat*
girl قىز بالا kiz baa-*laa*
glass (drinking) ئىستاكان is-taa-*kaan*
glasses كۆز ئەينەك köz ay-*nak*
go بېرىش be-*rish*
good ياخشى yaak-*shi*
guide n ساياھەت يېتەكچىسى saa-yaa-*hat* yi-tak-chi-*si*

H

half n يېرىم ye-*rim*
hand قول kol
happy خۇشال بولۇش hoo-*shaal* bo-*loosh*
he ئۇ oo
head n باش baash
heart يۈرەك yü-rak
heavy ئېغىر e-*rir*
help ياردەم yaar-*dam*
here بۇيەر boo-*yar*
high ئىگىز i-*giz*
highway تېز سۈرەتلىك تاشيول tiz sü-*rat*-lik taash-*yol*
hike v پىيادە مېڭىش pi-*yaa*-da me-*ngish*
holiday تەتىل ta-*til*
hospital دوختۇرخانا doh-toor-*haa*-naa
hot ئىسسىق is-*sik*
hotel مېھمانخانا mee-maan-*haa*-naa
(be) hungry قورسىقى ئېچىش kor-si-*ki* e-*chish*
husband ئېرى e-*ri*

I

I مەن man
identification (card) كىملىك kim-*lik*
ill كېسەل ki-*sal*
important مۇھىم moo-*eeim*
injury (wound) يارا yaa-*raa*
insurance ئىستىراخۇانىيە is-ti-raa-hoo-*aa*-ni-*ya*
internet تور tor
interpreter چۈشەندۈرۈش chü-*shan*-dü-rüsh

J

jewellery ئۈنچە-مەرۋايىت ün-*cha* mar-*vaa*-yit
job خىزمەت hiz-*mat*

K

key ئاچقۇچ aach-*kooch*
kitchen ئاشخانا aash-*haa*-naa
knife پىچاق pi-*chaak*

L

laundry (place) كىر-خانا kir-*haa*-naa
lawyer ئادۋكات aa-doo-*kaat*
left (direction) سول sol
leg (body) پاچاق paa-*chaak*
less ئازراق aaz-*raak*
letter (mail) تور خەت-چەكلىرى tor hat-*chak*-li-ri
light n چىراغ chi-*raar*
like v ئامراق aam-*raak*
lock n قۇلۇپ koo-*loop*
long oo-*zoon* ئۇزۇن
lost ئېزىپ قېلىش e-*zip ke*-lish
love v ياخشى كۆرۈش yaah-*shi* kö-*rüsh*
luggage يۈك-تاق yük-*taak*
lunch چۈشلۈك تاماق chüsh-*lük* taa-*maak*

M

mail n خەت hat
man ئەر ar
map خەرىتە ha-ri-*ta*
market بازار baa-*zaar*
matches سەرەڭگە sa-*rang*-ga
meat گۆش gösh
medicine دورا *do*-raa
message ئۇچۇر oo-*choor*
milk سۈت süt
minute مىنۇت mi-*noot*
mobile phone يان تېلىفۇن *yaan* te-li-*foon*
money پۇل pool
month ئاي aay
morning ئەتتىگەن at-*ti*-gan
mother ئانا/تاياق aa-*naa*/aa-*paa*
motorcycle موتوسىكلىت mo-to-si-ki-*lit*
mouth ئېغىز e-*riz*

N

name ئىسىم i-*sim*
near يېقىن ئەتراپ ye-*kin* at-*raap*
neck n بويان bo-*yaan*
new يېڭى ye-*ngi*
newspaper گېزىت ge-*zit*
night ئاخشام aah-*shaam*
no (not at all) ھېچقىسى يوق eech-*ki*-si yok
noisy ۋاراڭ-چۇرۇق vaa-*raang* choo-*roong*
north شىمال shi-*maal*
nose بۇرۇن boo-*roon*
now ھازىر ee-aa-*zir*
number نومۇر noo-*moor*

O

old (people) ياشانغانلار yaa-*shaan*-raan-*laar*
old (things) كونا ko-*naa* نەرسىلەر nar-si-*lar*
one-way ticket بىر يوللۇق بىلەت bir yol-*look* bi-*lat*
open a ئوچۇق o-*chook*
outside سىرت sirt

P

passport پاسپورت paas-*port*
pay v تۆلەش tö-*lash*
pharmacy دورىخانا do-ri-ee-aa-*naa*
phonecard تېلىفۇن كارتىسى te-li-*foon* kaar-*ti*-si
photo سۈرەت sü-*rat*
police ساقچى saak-*chi*
postcard ئاتكىرتكا aat-*kirt*-kaa
post office پوچتىخانا *posh*-taa-haa-naa
pregnant ھامىلدار ee-aa-mil-*daar*
price n باھا baa-*ee*-aa

Q

quiet a جىمجىت jim-*jit*

R

rain n يامغۇر yaam-*roor*
razor ئۇستۇرە oos-*toor*
receipt n تالۇن taa-*loon*
refund n قايتۇرۇش kaay-too-*roosh*
registered (mail) رويخەتكە ئېلىنىش roy-*hat*-ka e-*lish*
rent v ئارىيەتكە ئېلىنىش aa-ri-yat-*ka* e-*lish*
repair v رېمونت قىلىش ri-*mot* ki-*lish*
reserve v ڕاكاس قىلىش zaa-*kaas* ki-*lish*
restaurant تاماقخانا taa-maak-haa-*naa*
return (go back) قايتىپ كېتىش kaay-*tip* ki-*tish*
return ticket قايتىپ كېلىدىغان بىلەت kaay-*tip* ki-*lish* be-li-*ti*
right (direction) ئوڭ ong
road يول yol
room n ئۆي öy

S

safe a بىخەتەر bi-ha-*tar*
sanitary napkin تازلىق قەغىزى taa-zi-*lik* ka-*ri*-zi

seat n ئورون *o-roon*
send يوللاش *yol-laash*
sex (gender) جىنسى *jin-si*
shampoo چاچ سۇيۇنى *chaach soo-poo-ni*
share (a dorm) تەڭ ئىشلىتىش *teng ish-li-tish*
she ئۇ *oo*
sheet (bed) كىرلىك *kir-lik*
shirt كۆينەك *köy-nak*
shoes ئاياغ *aa-yaar*
shop n ماگازىن *maag-zin*
short قىسقا *kis-kaa*
shower n يوۇيۇنۇش *yoo-yoo-noosh*
single room بىر كىشىلىك ياتاق *bir kish-lik yaa-taak*
skin n تېرە *ti-ra*
skirt n يوبكا *yop-kaa*
sleep v ئۇخلاش *ooh-laash*
slow ئاستا *aas-taa*
small كىچىك *ki-chik*
soap شورپا *shor-paa*
some بەزىن *ba-zan*
son ئوغۇل *o-rool*
south جەنۇب *ja-noop*
souvenir خاتىرە بويۇمى *haa-ti-ra bo-yoo-mi*
stamp پوچتا ماركىسى *poch-ta maar-ki-si*
station (train) بېكەت *bi-kat*
stomach ئاشقازان *aash-kaa-zaan*
stop v توختاش *toh-taash*
stop (bus) n ئايلانمىۋىش بېكىتى *aap-too-boos bi-ki-ti*
street كوچا *ko-chaa*
student ئوقۇقۇچى *o-koo-roo-chi*
sun قۇياش *koo-yaash*
sunscreen قۇياش نۇرىدىن ساقلىنىدىغان كرېم *koo-yaash noo-ri-din saak-li-ni-di-raan*
swim v سۇ ئۈزۈش *soo ü-züsh*

T

tampon قان توختۇتۇش ياختىسى *kaan toh-ti-tish paah-ti-si*
telephone n تېلېفون *te-li-foon*
temperature (weather) تېمپېراتۇرا *tim-poo-raa-too-raa*
that ئۇ *oo*
they ئۇلار *oo-laar*
(be) thirsty ئۇسسا *oos-saash*
this بۇ *boo*
throat بوغۇز *bo-rooz*
ticket بېلەت *bi-lat*
time ۋاقىت *vaa-kit*
tired ھېرىش *ee-rish*
tissues تالا *taa-laa*
today بۈگۈن *bü-gün*
toilet ئۆبورۇنى *o-boor-ni*
tomorrow ئەتە *a-ta*
tonight بۈگۈن ئاخشام *bü-gün aah-shaam*
tooth چىش *chish*
toothbrush چىش پاستىسى *chish paas-ti-si*
toothpaste چىش مەلھىمى *chish mal-hi-mi*
torch (flashlight) مەشئەل *mash-al*
tour n ساياھەت *saa-yaa-ee-at*
tourist office ساياھەت ئىدارىسى *saa-yaa-ee-at i-daa-ri-si*
towel لۆڭگە *löng-ga*
train n پويىز *po-yiz*
translate تەرجىمە قىلىش *tar-ji-ma ki-lish*
travel agency ساياھەت شىركىتى *saa-yaa-ee-at shir-ki-ti*
travellers cheque چېكى ساياھەت *saa-yaa-ee-at che-ki*
trousers ئىشتان *ish-taan*

U

underwear ئىچ كىيىم *ich ki-yim*
urgent جىددى *jid-di*

V

vacancy بىكار خىزمەت ئورنى *bi-kaar hiz-mat or-ni*
vegetable n كۆكتات *kök-taat*
vegetarian a گۆشسىز تاماق يەيدىغان كىشى *gösh-siz taa-maak yi-gü-chi-lar*
visa يۆتكەش رەسمىيىتى *yöt-kash ras-mi-yi-ti*

W

walk v مېڭىش *me-ngish*
wallet ھەميان *ee-am-yaan*
wash (something) يۇيۇش *yoo-yoosh*
watch n سائەت *saa-at*
water n سۇ *soo*
we بىز *biz*
weekend ھەپتە ئاخىرى *hap-ta aa-hi-ri*
west غەربىي *ra-rip*
wheelchair چاقلىق ئورۇندۇق *chaak-lik o-roon-dook*
when قاچان *kaa-chaan*
where قەيەر *ka-yar*
who كىم *kim*
why نىمە ئۈچۈن *ni-ma ü-chün*
wife ئايالى *aa-yaa-li*
window دەرىزە *da-ri-za*
with بىلەن *bi-lan*
without يوق *yok*
woman ئايال كىشى *aa-yaal ki-shi*
write يېزىش *ye-zish*

Y

yes ھەئە *ee-a-a*
yesterday تۈنۈگۈن *tü-nü-gün*
you sg inf/pol سەن/سىز *san/siz*
you pl سىلەر *si-lar*

Culture

The glory of China is the sheer diversity of its culture – from a rich **history** and regional **cuisines** to colourful **festivals**, China has it all.
Here we present you with a cultural snapshot of the country and give you the tools to travel in an exciting and respectful way.

history timeline

Take a wander through the rich history of China …

c 4000 BC	Early settlements established in modern-day Shaanxi and Hénán.
c 3000 BC	Emperor Fúxī ushers in the period of the legendary 'Three Emperors and Five Sovereigns'.
c 2200–1700 BC	Dynastic rule commences with the Xia.
1700–1100 BC	The Shang dynasty comes to power. Bronzeware production is perfected, and the consistent use of Chinese characters is documented.
1100–221 BC	The Western and Eastern Zhou dynasties rule.
600 BC	Laotzu, the founder of Taoism, is reputedly born.
551 BC	Confucius is born.
300 BC	Petroglyphs indicate the spread of Buddhism in Tibet at this time.
221 BC	The short-lived Qin dynasty is established.
221–206 BC	The Qin kingdom conquers the surrounding states to create the first unified China.
214 BC	Emperor Qin indentures thousands of labourers to link existing city walls into one Great Wall.
206 BC	The Han dynasty takes over.
c 100 BC	Chinese traders and explorers follow the Silk Road all the way to Rome.
c 50 BC	One of the first documented accounts of tea-drinking in China.
AD 220–581	An 'age of disunion', seeing a succession of rival kingdoms and a strong division between north and south China.
581–618	The Sui dynasty rules.
c 600	The Grand Canal, the world's longest artificial canal, is constructed.
608	The first mission is sent from the Tibetan court to the Chinese emperor.

618–907	The Tang dynasty holds sway.
635	The first Christian missionaries are believed to have arrived.
c 640	Pilgrim Xuan Zhuang sets out for India, returning 16 years later with countless Buddhist holy texts.
625–705	Wu Zetian is the first and only woman to become emperor.
960–1279	The Song dynasty is in power.
c 1000	The major inventions of the premodern world – paper, printing, gunpowder and the compass – are all commonly used in China.
1215	Genghis Khan conquers Běijīng.
1279–1368	Kublai Khan's vast Mongol empire includes all of China.
1286	The Grand Canal is extended to Běijīng, assuming its current form.
1368–1644	Chinese ethnic rule is restored with the Ming dynasty.
1385–1464	The life of Tangtong Gyelpo, Tibet's 'Renaissance man' – leader, medic, inventor of Tibetan opera and builder of 108 bridges in Tibet.
1406	Ming Emperor Yongle begins the construction of the Forbidden City.
1557	The Portuguese establish a permanent trade base in Macau.
1590s	The classic tale *Journey To The West* is published – made known to many by its incarnation as 1970s TV series *Monkey Magic*.
c 1640	The *qípáo* (cheongsam) becomes a fashionable frock for women.
1644–1911	Conquerors from Manchuria establish the Qing dynasty.
1720s	Emperor Kangxi declares Tibet a protectorate of China. Two Chinese representatives, known as Ambans, are installed at Lhasa, along with a garrison of Chinese troops.
1839	British traders at Guǎngzhōu hand over 20,000 chests of opium to Chinese officials, the pretext for the First Opium War.
1842	Hong Kong is ceded to the British in perpetuity.
1856–64	The Taiping uprising establishes army rule in parts of eastern China with Nánjīng as its capital, ultimately failing following civil war.

1894–95	First Sino-Japanese war.
1908	Two-year-old Puyi ascends the throne as China's last emperor.
1911–12	Revolution brings dynastic rule to an end with Sun Yatsen's republican government and abdication of the emperor.
1921–22	Lu Xun's *The Story of Ah Q,* the first work to be written entirely in Mandarin 'vernacular', is published in serial form.
1923–27	The remains of the Peking Man, between 500,000 and 230,000 years old, are unearthed at Zhōukǒudiàn, near Běijīng.
1927	Chiang Kaishek's Kuomintang rounds up and kills thousands of communists in Shànghǎi and Guǎngzhōu.
1934	The infamous Long March of communists from Jiāngxī province begins, travelling 6400km northwest.
1935	Mao Zedong is recognised as head of the Chinese Communist Party in a meeting at Zūnyi.
1937–45	Japanese invasion and occupation of China.
1946	Communists and the Kuomintang fail to form a coalition government, and plunge China back into civil war.
1949	The People's Republic of China (PRC) is established.
1950	China supports North Korea in the Korean War.
1957	A brief period of liberalisation under the 'Hundred Flowers Movement', but criticisms of the regime lead Mao to imprison or exile thousands.
1958	The Taiwan Straits crisis.
1958–62	The Great Leap Forward ultimately causes mass starvation.
1959	Widespread revolt in Tibet is suppressed. Amid mounting violence the 14th Dalai Lama flees to exile in India.
1965	The establishment of the Tibetan Autonomous Region.
1966	The birth of the Red Guards and the Cultural Revolution. Mao's 'Little Red Book' of quotations is published.

1971	The US national table tennis team becomes the first American delegation to set foot in China in 49 years; Nixon soon follows.
1973	Deng Xiaoping returns to power as Deputy Premier.
1976	Mao Zedong dies aged 83.
1979	Diplomatic relations are established with the US.
1980	The one-child policy is enforced. Mao's 'Gang of Four' is put on trial.
1987	*The Last Emperor* collects an Oscar for best picture.
1989	Hundreds of civilian demonstrators are killed by Chinese troops in the streets around Tiananmen Square. The 14th Dalai Lama, Tenzin Gyatso, wins the Nobel Peace Prize.
1997	Deng Xiaoping dies. Britain returns Hong Kong to the PRC.
1999	Falun Gong protest silently in Běijīng, prompting a crackdown. Macau is handed over from Portugal to the PRC.
2001	The Shanghai Cooperation Organisation is formed between China, Russia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Uzbekistan. China also joins the World Trade Organization.
2003	Hu Jintao becomes president. SARS hits Hong Kong and mainland China. China sends its first astronaut into space. The Golden Shield Project is put in place to control internet usage.
2007	Prime Minister Wen Jiabao addresses Japan's parliament. Jiang Rong wins the first Man Asia Literary Prize for his novel *Wolf Totem.*
2008	Tens of thousands are killed in the Sìchuān province earthquake. Běijīng hosts the 2008 Summer Olympic Games – topping the medal tally with 51 gold – amid pro-Tibet demonstrations.
2009	The global financial crisis sees a 10-year low in China's economic growth. A study finds China has 32 million more boys than girls.
2013	China's lunar lander Chang'e 3 touches down on the moon

food

the chinese & food

The Chinese live to eat – not just to eat, but to eat well, to eat indulgently and to eat flavoursome, interesting, well-cooked food at every meal.

Chinese cuisine can be divided into four main schools, summed up in the Mandarin saying *dōng suān, xī là, nán tián, běi xián* (meaning 'the east is sour, the west is spicy, the south is sweet and the north is salty'). Cantonese (southern) cuisine *(Yuècài)* is the nation's most varied and elaborate; we can also thank it for *yíncha* (yum cha). Shànghǎi's *Zhècài* (eastern) cuisine is generally richer, sweeter and oilier, relying on preserved vegetables, pickles and salted meats. *Lǔcai* (northern) food from Shāndōng uses wheat pancakes, spring onions and fermented bean paste, while *Chuāncài* (western or Sìchuān) style is renowned for red chillies and peppercorns firing up pork, poultry, legumes and soybeans. Finally, *Huáiyáng cài* (east coast cuisine) is relatively vegetarian-friendly and is home to meat simmered in dark soy sauce, sugar and spices. And there are many other influences, like Macau's Portuguese touches, Hong Kong's gift at importing the best and Tibet's *momos* (steamed dumplings) and *chang* (fermented barley beer).

eat by number

A Chinese saying talks of seven basic daily necessities: fuel, rice, oil, salt, soy sauce, vinegar and tea. Another 'seven' is the seven tastes incorporated in dishes: sweet, salty, sour, bitter, hot, *guō qì* (wok essence) and *xiān wèi* (a kind of savoury, moreish element sometimes created with MSG). Then there are five elements that must be attended to in cooking: colour, aroma, flavour, shape and texture. In addition, food is considered medicine for the *qì* (life energy). Accordingly, a meal must balance *yīn* (cool and moist) and *yáng* (warm and solid), the five elements (wood, earth, fire, water, metal) and the four states (moist, warm, cool, dry).

staples

If it walks, crawls, slithers, swims or flies, someone in China will probably eat it. In Guǎngdōng you can sample possum, elsewhere pangolin (anteater), steamed scorpions, cicadas, land and water beetles, snakes (the bile and blood is meant to help impotence) and turtle. The term for meat is *ròu*, which will generally mean 'pork' unless otherwise stated, and lard is laced in breads and sweets alike. From the water, sample *sānwén yú* (salmon) from Hēilóngjiāng, *niān yú* (catfish) in Sìchuān, and live

xiāzi (prawns) at Xiàmén. The best ocean fare comes from Qīngdǎo, where every self-respecting restaurant has live shellfish and fish on the front step. Eat all *hǎixiān* (seafood) hot from cooking, even the medicinally 'cold' *pángxiè* (crab), best steamed with ginger and spring onions and eaten with yellow rice wine.

Vegetables and fruit are diverse and readily available, but vegetarians will face *niúròu tāng* (beef stock) and *háoyóu* (oyster sauce) in nearly everything – don't be suckered by the term *shūcai* (vegetable dish), which is not usually vegetarian but rather features a particular vegetable. Meantime, try out the chillies of Húnán, the soft flavour of cabbage and the yammy taste of taro. In addition to *qīngcài (*green leafy vegetables), the Chinese make use of delicate, crisp turnips in salads, and fennel tops in dumplings across the north. Don't miss out on Yúnnán's coal-cooked sweet potato. Other delicacies are Běijīng's *biǎn táo* (flat peaches), the *záo* (jujube, also called Chinese date) and *lóngyǎn* ('dragon eyes', also called longan).

Although grains other than *fàn* (rice) play their part in Chinese cuisine – wheat, millet, sorghum, corn – rice is so important that *fàn* is a symbol for all meals. It is prepared as flour, noodles, porridge and more, and even the aroma from rice cooking is revered. Black rice is glutinous and used in sweets, jasmine rice dominates towards the southeast border, and red rice is used for alcohol and vinegar. In the northwest, noodles are more likely to be made from wheat, while in Inner Mongolia and Tibet millet is probably used. *Jiǎozi* (dumplings) are a must-eat, from Běijīng's pork-filled, fried or steamed wheat dough, to Guǎngdōng's yum cha. In the north, eat the big, soft dumpling called *mántou*. Breads include the famous *dà mianbāo* ('big' bread) of Hā'ěrbīn, as well as Shànghǎi's *yóutiáo* (deep-fried bread). And finally there's the versatile *huángdòu* (soy bean), which the Chinese have been fermenting, smoking, maturing and eating for over 3000 years – best known in *dòufu* (tofu) and *dòujiāng* (soy milk drink).

fishy business

An ingredient, its form and the manner of eating it may hold symbolic meaning in China. For example, serving a whole fish means prosperity, as it has a logical beginning and end. Yet you'd never turn it over once you've eaten the top side, as this is reminiscent of a boat capsizing at sea and therefore means death.

mystery ingredients

So what are China's secret herbs and spices? *Dàsuàn* (garlic) in Shāndōng and *chùng* (spring onion) in Guǎngdōng are easy to identify, while *bājiāo* (star anise) is used continent-wide in marinades and braised dishes. Look out for *huājiāo* (Sichuān pepper, a prickly ash bud that sends your tongue numb), as well as the ubiquitous *suī* (coriander), *zhīma* (sesame seeds) and *wǔxiāngfěn* (five spices mix, using cassia bark, star anise, fennel seeds, black pepper and cloves).

Soy sauce, *jiàngyóu,* comes in dark and thick or light varieties, and is used for dips as well as in cooking. Toasty-flavoured *zhī ma yóu* (sesame oil) is a finishing touch, while in Sichuān *zhīmá jiàng* (sesame paste) and *lajiāo jiàng* (chilli sauce) are ever-present. Fújiàn's Pacific oysters provide *háoyóu* (oyster sauce), and other flourishes come from *hóngcù* (red rice vinegar) and syrupy black Chinkiang vinegar.

A wealth of dried ingredients is available, with over 30 kinds of mushrooms, not to mention *gǒu qǐ zǐ* (wolfberries), *chóng cǎo* (caterpillar consumed from the inside by a rabid fungus) and dried *hǎishēn* (sea cucumber). *Xiāng gū (shiitake* mushroom) is the most common fungus, but also try *mù ěr* (wood-ear fungus) and *hóu tóu gū* (monkey-head mushrooms). Nuts and legumes abound, the more unusual ones being *xìng rén* (bitter apricot kernels) and *bái guǒ* (ginkgo nuts). Meat is also dried and the *ròu sōng* (dried beef) of Hángzhōu has a texture like fairy floss.

And then there's the outright exotic, such as bamboo worms, deer penis and wild cat. Other local treats are *sōng huā dàn* (preserved or 'thousand-year' eggs) and *yàn wō* (bird's nest – made from the saliva of swiftlets).

drinks

No true Chinese will miss out on their tea. There are at least 320 strains of the tea plant *Camellia sinensis*, processed according to six broad categories. In Xī'ān they prefer the heady, gutsy nature of *wūlongcha* (oolong) or *hóngchá* (black) teas, while the people around Hángzhōu on the eastern seaboard prefer *lǜchà* (green) tea. In Yúnnán they prefer Pu'erh tea *(pǔ-ěr chá)*, a fermented black tea. While most teas in China are drunk without milk or sugar, in Inner Mongolia they prefer to add cream or butter to their 'milk tea' *(soo tē chē)*, while Tibetans fancy it with rancid yak butter and salt *(bö cha)*. Also check out *tuóchá* (brick teas – made from tea that has been compressed into a brick shape) and *huāchá* (scented teas).

For other nonalcoholic options, try *lìzhī zhi* (lychee juice), *suānméi tāng* (sour plum drink) or *xìngrén niúnǎi* (almond milk) in the south. In the north, you'll find *suānnǎi* (yoghurt) as a breakfast item. You could also sample the near-nonalcoholic lemon beer and pineapple beer, or *kāfēi* (coffee), popular with the up-and-coming younger generation.

Alcohol definitions in China are a little slippery: *bái pútáo jiǔ* (white wine) actually means near-toxic firewater, containing 40% to 60% alcohol – try Yúnnán's Long Chuan rice liqueur and Chinese flowering quince wine. Other renowned wines include red rose liqueur, and *Shàoxīng jiǔ* (yellow rice wine), with a 2400-year history in the city of Shàoxīng. Beer *(píjiǔ),* is China's universal alternative to tea. Always ask for your beer *lěng* (cold). In Macau test the evocatively named Lágrima de Cristo (Tears of Christ), a Portuguese white port.

table manners

The word *rènào* (bustling) encapsulates the atmosphere of restaurants across China, where people value enthusiastic participation in conversation as well as the meal. Meals come not in individual servings but in *dàpán* (communal plates) – do get your hepatitis A shots but don't miss out on the fun. At the table, wait until your host picks up their chopsticks before you begin eating. When choosing your food, go for the dish closest to you or ask people to pass your choice – never reach over the table. Don't tap the side of your bowl with your chopsticks (the sign of beggars), nor stick the chopsticks upright in your rice as that resembles funerary incense. Finally, it's polite to offer to pay the bill, even if you're clearly the guest. Bluffing or not, say: *Shì ní qǐngde kè, wǒ buguò shì mǎidān de* (You were tonight's host, but I'll pay the bill). And should you need a night off the dreaded white spirits, a good escape is to turn your glass upside down and explain that your doctor won't let you drink.





street food

Be prepared: any Chinese with a gas bottle and a wok can become a *jiētóu xiǎochī* (street vendor). Eat only freshly made *xiǎochī* (snacks) and only where appreciative crowds are gathered, and you needn't miss out on local delicacies such as *zòngzi* (sticky rice in bamboo leaves), *húntun* (wonton soup) or *jiānbǐng* (egg and spring onion pancake). Ubiquitous *shuǐjiǎo* (meat- or vegetable-stuffed dumplings) are a treat – locals mix *làjiāo* (chilli), *cù* (vinegar) and *jiàngyóu* (soy sauce) according to taste in a little bowl, then dip. Postparty in Hong Kong, grab some *dím sàm* (dim sum) to soak up the beer – try *hàa gáau* (steamed shrimp dumplings) or *chéung fán* (steamed rice-flour rolls with shrimp, beef or pork). Some Chinese street-fare shows a Persian influence, like *shashlick* and kebab. While in Běijīng try *chòu dòufu* (astonishingly stinky tofu fermented in cabbage juice), in Shànghǎi go for the half-moon *xiǎolóng* dumplings, and in Macau don't miss the distinctive pastries on Rua da Felicidade. Hong Kong tempts with *ngàu zaap* (cow's organs), *yèw dáan* (fish balls), *cháau fùng léut* (roasted chestnuts) and *jèw chèung fán* (rice noodles). Tibetan markets offer the challenge of *chura kâmpo* (dried yak cheese), white balls eaten like a boiled sweet.

festivals

festivals in china

A-Ma Festival (A-Ma Temple, Inner Harbour, Macau) *The birth of the Taoist goddess of fisherfolk A-Ma is celebrated on the 23rd day of the third lunar month (March/April). One legend has it that a junk sailing across the South China Sea was embroiled in a storm, the passengers facing certain death. Behold, a beautiful young woman on the boat stood and ordered the sea be calm, saving all on board. A temple was built in her honour in 1488 – at the location of their safe return to land – and A-Ma is worshipped along the coast under the names Mazu, Tin Hau and Niangniang. On the festival day, seafarers and their families throng the Ming dynasty temple, leaving offerings, burning incense and praying for safe journeys. Enjoy the Chinese opera performances and take in the gorgeous poetry inscribed on the surrounding cliff walls.*

Cheung Chau Bun Festival (Cheung Chau, Hong Kong) *On the island of Cheung Chau the Buddha's birthday public holiday is marked by the construction of rocket-shaped towers, standing up to 20m high, covered with sacred bread rolls. At midnight on the eighth day of the fourth lunar month (April/May), competitors scramble up the towers, grabbing a bun for good luck – the higher the bun, the better the fortune. For 26 years the festivities were kept to ground level after a tower collapsed in 1978, but the bamboo structures have been replaced by metal and climbers now use safety ropes. Swirling around the towers is the greater festival, with processions featuring floats, stilt walkers and people dressed as characters from legend and opera. Most interesting are the 'floating children', carried through the streets atop long poles. Make the most of the vegetarian feast and check out the colourful fishing boats in the harbour.*

Chinese New Year (Shànghǎi) *There's something special about being in one of China's major cities for Lunar New Year (January/February), the 'real thing' after seeing it in your local Chinatown. Also known as Chūn Jié (Spring Festival), it's the high point of the Chinese year, and for the most part this is a family festival. Throughout the country, the weeks building up to the festival are an explosion of colour, with chūnlián (spring couplets) pasted on door posts, door gods brightening up alleys and streets, and shops glistening with red and gold decorations. Work colleagues and relatives present each other with hóng bāo (red envelopes) of money and the streets ring with cries of Gōngxi fācái! (Congratulations! May you make money!). Shànghǎi-side, check out the explosion of fireworks at midnight both to welcome in the New Year and ward off bad spirits, plus the special services held at Longhua and Jing'an Temples. Stay hungry for the eight- or nine-course banquet coming your way!*

Dragon Boat Festival (Mi Lo River, Húnán) *During the Dragon Boat Festival (fifth day of the fifth lunar month, May/June), the Mi Lo fills with colourful crafts decked out to imitate dragons, from fearsome snout to scaly tail. The China-wide festival commemorates Qu Yuan, a revered poet-statesman who drowned himself in 278 BC to protest the Qin state's invasion. Onlookers tried to keep fish and evil spirits from Qu Yuan's body by splashing their oars and beating drums. Today festival spectators snack on zòngzi (sticky rice in bamboo leaves) in memory of the rice scattered as an offering to the poet's ghost. Arrive waterside early to see the dragon-head prows blessed with incense and gongs. The race is won when a rower straddles his craft's dragon head and grabs the flag. The festival is also a tribute to the god of water, and homes fill with invocations of physical and spiritual well-*

being. The herbs calamus and moxa are hung from front doors and pictures of Chung Kuei, the demon slayer, are pinned up. Adults also enjoy hsiung huang (a type of rice wine) and the party continues after dark with firecrackers and dragon dances.

International Ice & Snow Festival (Zhaolin Park & Sun Island Park, Hā'ěrbīn) *China's northern Hēilóngjiāng province may be cursed with one of the coldest climates in Asia, but its capital Hā'ěrbīn has made the best of a bad thing with its International Ice and Snow Festival. Held in the depths of winter (5 January to 5 February), the festival revolves around over 1300 fanciful and elaborate ice sculptures built by teams from about 20 countries, including recreations of famous buildings and structures (such as a scaled-down Forbidden City, or a Great Wall of China that doubles as an ice slide). The bulk of the sculptures can be found in central Zhaolin Park and Sun Island Park, while the hardiest of festival-goers can join Hā'ěrbīn's winter swimmers for a dip in the frozen Songhua River. Attractions include ice lanterns, skiing, ice skating, outdoor swimming, hunting, dog-sled rides and art performances – not to mention whooshing down ice slides and the ice-axe free-for-all that marks the festival's end.*

Mid-Autumn Festival (West Lake, Hángzhōu) *Also known as the Moon Festival or the Moon Cake Festival, this festival on the full moon of the eighth lunar month (September/October) is a holiday for lovers, families and the homesick. Loved ones meet under the lunar symbol of unity to barbecue, eat pomelos (draping the rinds on their heads), do fire-dragon dances, and hang lanterns from towers. Incense is burnt for the lunar goddess Chang'e, who lives on the moon with a jade rabbit. The yuè bǐng (moon cakes) themselves are made of a thin dough shell containing fillings such as jelly, dates and nuts or red bean paste – during an uprising against the Mongols in the 14th century, revolutionary plans were secretly passed around in the cakes. A popular spot to moonbathe is Hángzhōu's West Lake, with its three candlelit towers.*

Nánníng International Folk Song Art Festival (Nánníng, Guǎngxī) *The Nánníng International Folk Song Art Festival has become a spectacular affair, held each November since 1999. Entertainment comes in the form of local and foreign folksingers showing off their modern and classical numbers, dancing galas and dramatic lighting displays. It's come a long way from its roots as a ge'wei (song gathering) for the Zhuang minority, whose omnipresent musical culture led to the province of Guǎngxī earning the name 'Ocean of Folk Songs'. The Zhuang sing their way through daily life, while working the fields, collecting firewood, attending funerals and, of course, courting. At a ge'wei, young people sing an impromptu antiphonal song cycle (a one-to-one song competition) telling of their love; women hand the successful swain xiuqiu, a ball made of 12 silk stripes like flower petals.*

Qīng Míng Jié (across China) *A celebration held around 5 April (or 4 April in leap years), Tomb-Sweeping Day, also called Clear and Bright Festival, sees families returning to their ancestors' graves. The dead are honoured by cleaning weeds from gravestones, touching up inscriptions, offering chrysanthemums and favourite foods, and burning paper goods and zhiqian ('Bank of Hell' money) so the ancestor will be wealthy in the afterlife. The particularly devout hang a willow branch in the doorway to their homes, preventing the dead from entering if they roam free of the cemetery. For most it's a spring celebration rather than a day of mourning, with families feasting on the offerings and flying kites. Traditionally, trees are planted to welcome the warmer weather, and tea leaves picked before this date are prized for their subtle aromas (and priced accordingly).*

Qurban Festival (Xīnjiāng Uighur AR) *Also known as Eid al-Adha, this major Islamic festival sees the faithful remember the story of Ibrahim, who offered his son as a sacrifice in order to show his obedience to Allah. Allah saved the boy and a lamb was sacrificed in his place, and today an important part of Qurban is the sacrifice of a goat or cow to commemorate this occasion. During the three-day festival, Muslims across China dress in their finest and head to the mosque for prayer and thanksgiving. It's not all prayer and sacrifice, though – this is also a time for entertaining family and friends, gift-giving and partaking in traditional festival foods, including sanzi, a deep-fried noodle-shaped dough. The festival begins on the tenth day of the final month of the Islamic calendar (falling in September until 2017, then August). This is a particularly interesting time for visitors to be in the Xīnjiāng Uighur region.*

Saga Dawa Festival (Lhasa & Mt Kailash, Tibet) *Buddha Sakyamuni's conception, enlightenment and entry into nirvana is marked on the 15th day of Tibet's fourth lunar month (May/June). It falls during the year's holiest month, when the karmic effect of all wholesome or unwholesome actions is multiplied by 100,000 – another good reason for most of Lhasa's population to walk the Lingkhor circuit. Prayer wheels are turned on the streets, Tibetan operas recount history and legend, and boats are paddled in the Dragon King Pool at the foot of the Potala Palace. Alternatively, you can trek to holy Mt Kailash to see the 25m Tarboche prayer-pole being raised in accordance with a Lama's instructions. Lung ta (prayer flags; literally 'wind horses') are hung to the tune of sacred horn-and-cymbal music, the faithful circle the pole, and if it's positioned correctly all bodes well for Tibet.*

Sister's Meal Festival (Shīdòng, Guìzhōu) *Love is in the air during this courtship ritual in eastern Guìzhōu when young Miao (or Hmong) people find partners through the medium of sticky rice. To a soundtrack of music from the lúshēng (a reed instrument), and amid dancing, paper-dragon fights and buffalo fighting, young women dress in exquisite embroidery and kilograms of silver jewellery shaped into neck rings, loin chains, and multiple headdresses. The suitors arrive, serenading the women and presenting a parcel of dyed rice to the ladies who have taken their fancy. In return, the damsels hand back rice parcels containing unspoken messages – two chopsticks indicate acceptance, one means 'no thank you', a leaf is a request for some satin before giving a decision, while a chilli is the most definite of rebukes. The celebration, held on the 15th day of the third lunar month (March/April), marks the time when married women return home and see their parents.*

Wéifáng International Kite Festival (Wéifáng, Shāndōng) *Tradition has it that the world's first kite – an eagle made out of wood – was held aloft from Mount Lu (in Wéifáng) more than 2000 years ago by philosopher Mozi. Thanks to his discovery, Wéifáng is now home to both the International Kite Festival (launched, pun intended, in 1984) and the Wéifáng World Kite Museum. Come April, international teams and thousands of enthusiasts arrive to display and compete over three days. Visitors will be awestruck by enormous structures being hauled aloft by jeeps, or dragon kites over 800m long. The creativity and presentation of the kites, which are often based on traditional folk designs, is the focus of the festival. Performances include an opening parade of participants, an impressive fireworks display to close and regional songs and dances. Be sure to take in the kite museum, whose peacock-blue roof is designed to resemble a dragon-head centipede kite.*

A	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
accommodation	19	44	68	92	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
addresses	17, 18	43,51	67, 76	92, 100	115, 123	140, 147	164, 171	188, 195	212, 219	236, 244	260, 268	295	316, 326	342, 351
addressing people	24	50	72	96	119	143	168	191	216	240	268	289	–	346
admission (sightseeing)	21	47	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	264	286	319	–
age	–	–	74	98	122	146	170	194	218	242, 243	266	293	324	349
alcoholic drinks	27	53	79	103	126	151	174	198, 199	223	247	271	299	329	354,
allergies	27, 30	54, 56	80	104	127	152	175	199	223	248	272	300	329	355
alphabet	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	278	310	336
ambulances	28	54	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	330	–
amounts	23	49	71	95	119	143	167	191	215	239	263	297	321	346
apologising	13	39	65	89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281, 292	313	339, 351
art & architecture	362-5													
B														
baggage	16, 29	42, 55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
banking	18, 20	43, 45	67, 69	92, 93	115, 117	139, 141	163, 165	187, 189	211, 213	235, 237	259, 261	283	316, 318	342, 344
bars	26	52	76	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	269	296	–	352
bargaining	23	49	71	95	118	143	167	191	215	239	263	289	321	345
basic phrases	13	39	65	89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281	313	339

	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
bill (restaurant)	26	52	77	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	269	297	328	352
bill (shopping)	23	49	71	95	119	143	167	–	–	–	263	–	321	346
boats	16	42	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	–	315	342
booking (accommodation)	19	44	68	93	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
booking (tickets)	15	41	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
border crossings	15	40	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
bus	16, 17	42	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	315, 316	342
C														
cameras	22, 24	48, 50	70	95	118	142	166	190	215	239	262	288	320	345
car	17	43	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	316	–
changing money	18, 20	43, 45	67	92	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	318	342
checking out	19	45	69	93	117	141	164	189	213	237	261	285	318	343
civilities	13	39	65	89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281	313	339
communications	20	45	69	93	117	141	165	189	213	237	261	286	318	344
complaints (shopping)	23	49	71	95	119	143	167	–	–	–	263	289	321	346
consonants	12	38	64	88	112	136	160	184	208	232	256	280	312	338
contact details	25	51	76	100	123	147	171	195	219	244	268	295	326	351
cost (accommodation)	19	45	68	93	116	141	164	188	213	237	261	285	317	343
cost (general)	23	49	71	95	118	143	167	191	215	239	263	288	321	345
cost (internet)	20	46	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	286	319	–
cost (phone)	21	46	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	286	319	–

	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
cost (sightseeing)	21	47	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	286	319	–
cost (taxi)	17	43	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
countries	25	51	74	98	121	146	170	193	218	242	266	292	324	348
credit cards	23, 29	49, 55	71	95	119	143	167	191	215	239	263	–	321	346
cuisine	366-9													
culture	362-73													
customs (local)	–	52	73	97	121	145	169	193	217	241	265	292, 301	323	351
D														
dates	14	40	66	90	114	138	162	186	210	234	258	282	314	340
days of the week	14	40	66	91	114	138	163	186	211	235	259	283	315	340
dentist	29	55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	304	–	356
dictionary	31	57	81	105	129	153	177	201	225	249	273	305	331	357
directions	18	43	67	91	115	139	163	187	212	236	260	283	315	342
doctor	28, 29	54, 55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	303, 304	330	356
drinks	26, 27	53	78, 79	102, 103	126	150, 151	174	198, 199	222, 223	246, 247	270, 271	298, 299	328, 329	354
drinks (China)	368													
E														
eating out	26	52	76	100	124	148	172	196	220	245	268	296	327	352
email	20, 25	46, 51	69, 76	94, 100	117, 123	141, 147	165, 171	189, 195	213, 219	237, 244	261, 268	286, 295	319, 326	344, 351
embassies	28	55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
emergencies	28	54	80	104	127	152	175	200	224	248	272	303	329	356
English, use of	13, 29	39, 52, 56	65, 73	89, 97	113, 121	137, 145	161, 169	185, 193	209, 217	233, 241	257, 265	281, 292	313, 323	339, 348
entertainment	370-3													

F	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
family	25	51	72	96	120	144	168	192	216	240	264	290	322	347
farewells	24	50	71, 75	96, 100	119, 123	143, 147	167, 171	191, 195	215, 219	240, 244	263, 268	289, 295	321, 326	346, 351
feelings	–	–	75	99	122	147	171	194	219	243	267	294	325	350
festivals	370-3													
food & drink	26	52	76	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	268	296	327	352
food (China)	366-9													
G														
goodbyes	24	50	71, 75	96, 100	119, 123	143, 147	167, 171	191, 195	215, 219	240, 244	263, 268	289, 295	321, 326	346, 351
greetings	24	50	71	96	119	143	167	191	215	240	263	289	321	346
guides	21	47	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	286, 302	320	–
H														
health	29	55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	303	329	356
hire (car)	17	43	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	316	–
history	362-5													
hospitals	29	55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	304	–	356
hotels	15, 19	41, 44	68	92	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
I														
illnesses	30	56	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	304	–	–
interests	25	52	74	99	122	146	170	194	218	243	267	294	325	349
internet	20	46	69	93, 94	117	141	165	189	213	237	261	286	318, 319	344
introductions	24	50	72	96	119	144	168	191	216	240	263	289	322	346
J														
jobs	25	51	74	98	122	146	170	193	218	242	266	293	324	348, 349

L	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
language difficulties	13	39	65	89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281	313	339
language history	11	37	63	87	111	135	159	183	207	231	255	279	311	337
language map	11	37	63	87	111	135	159	183	207	231	255	279	311	337
language speakers	11	37	63	87	111	135	159	183	207	231	255	279	311	337
literature	362-5													
local food	26	53	76, 77, 79	100, 101, 103	124, 127	148, 151	172, 175	196, 199	220, 223	245, 247	268, 269, 271	296, 298, 300	327, 328	352, 353, 355
lost	16, 29	42, 55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	–	330	356
luggage	16, 29	42, 55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
M														
mail	21	47	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
making conversation	24	50	72	96	120	144	168	192	216	241	264	290	322	347
map (language)	6-7													
maps	18, 21	43, 47	67	92	115	139	163	187	212	236	259	284, 286	316, 320	342
markets	22	48	70	95	118	142	166	190	215	239	262	288	320	345
marriage	–	–	74	99	122	146	170	194	218	243	266	293	325	349
meals	26	53	78	102	125	150	173	197	222	246	270	298	328	354
medicine	29	56	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
meeting people	24	50	71	96	119	143	167	191	215	240	263	289	321	346
menus	26	52	77	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	269	296	327	352
money	18, 20, 23, 29	43, 45, 49, 55	67	92	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	318	342
months			67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	–	315	341

N	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
nationalities	25	51	74	98	121	146	170	193	218	242	266	292	324	348
nonalcoholic drinks	26	53	78	102	126	150	174	198	222	246, 247	270, 271	298	328	354
numbers	13	39	65	90	113	137	162	185	209	233	257	281	313	340
O														
occupations	25	51	74	98	122	146	170	193	218	242	266	293	324	348, 349
opinions	–	–	75	99	122	147	171	194	219	243	267	294	325	350
ordering (restaurant)	26	52	77	101	124, 125	148, 149	172, 173	196, 197	220, 221	246	269, 270	296	327	352
ordering (taxi)	17	42	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
P														
pharmacies	29	55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	283, 304	–	356
phone	20, 21, 28	45, 46, 55	69, 80	93, 94, 104	117, 128	141, 142, 152	165, 176	189, 200	213, 214, 224	237, 238, 248	261, 272	286, 303	318, 319, 330	344, 356
photography	24	50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
photos, taking	22	47	70, 73	94, 97	117, 120	142, 145	166, 169	190, 192	214, 217	238, 241	262, 265	287, 291	319, 323	344, 347
plane	16	42	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	283	315	–
police	29	54, 55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	–	330	356
post office	18, 21	43, 47	67	92	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	316	342
pronunciation	12	38	64	88	112	136	160	184	208	232	256	280	312	338
Q														
quantities	23	49	71	95	119	143	167	191	215	239	263	297	321	346
R														
receipts	23	49	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	289	–	–
refunds	23	49	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	289	–	–

	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
religion	362-5													
repairs	23	49	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
reservations (accommodation)	19	44	68	93	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
reservations (tickets)	15	41	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
restaurants	26	52	76	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	269	283, 296	327	352
rooms (hotel)	19	44	68	93	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	285	317	343
S														
script (alphabet)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	278, 282	310	336
seasons	–	–	66	91	114	138	162	186	210	234	258	–	315	341
seating	16, 17, 26	41, 42, 52	77	101	124	148	172	196	220	245	269	296	327	352
shopping	22	48	70	95	118	142	166	190	215	239	262	288	320	345
sightseeing	21	47	70	94	117	142	166	190	214	238	262	286	319	344
souvenirs	22	48	70, 71	95	118	142	166, 167	190	215	239	262	288	320	345, 346
special diets	27	54	79	104	127	151	175	199	223	248	272	300	329	355
street food	369													
T														
taxis	17	42	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
telephone	20, 21, 28	45, 46, 55	69, 80	93, 94, 104	117, 128	141, 142, 152	165, 176	189, 200	213, 214, 224	237, 238, 248	261, 272	286, 303	318, 319, 330	344, 356
telling the time	14	40	66	90	114	138	161, 162	186	210	234	258	282	314	340
theft	16, 29	42, 55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	329	–
tickets	15	41	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

	Mandarin	Cantonese	Chaozhou	Dongbei Hua	Hakka	Hunanese	Shanghainese	Sichuan	Xi'an	Yunnan Hua	Zhuang	Mongolian	Tibetan	Uighur
timeline	362-5													
titles (addressing people)	24	50	72	96	119	143	168	191	216	240	264	289	–	346
toilets	28	55	80	104	128	152	176	200	224	248	272	–	330	356
tones (pronunciation)	10	36	62	86	110	134	158	182	206	230	254	–	–	–
tours	22	47	70	94	118	142	166	190	214	238	262	287, 301	319	345
trains	16	42	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	–	342
transport	16	42	67	91	115	139	163	187	211	235	259	283	315	342
travellers cheques	20, 23, 29	45, 49, 55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
V														
valuables	20, 29	45, 55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	318	–
vegetarian food	27	54	79	104	127	151	175	199	223	248	272	300	329	355
vowels	12	38	64	88	112	136	160	184	208	232	256	280	312	338
W														
water (drinkable)	27	53	78	102	126	150	174	197	222	246	270	298	328	354
well-wishing	–	–	76	100	123	148	172	195	220	244	268	296	327	351
women's health	29	56	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
work	25	51	74	98	122	146	170	193	218	242	266	293	324	348, 349